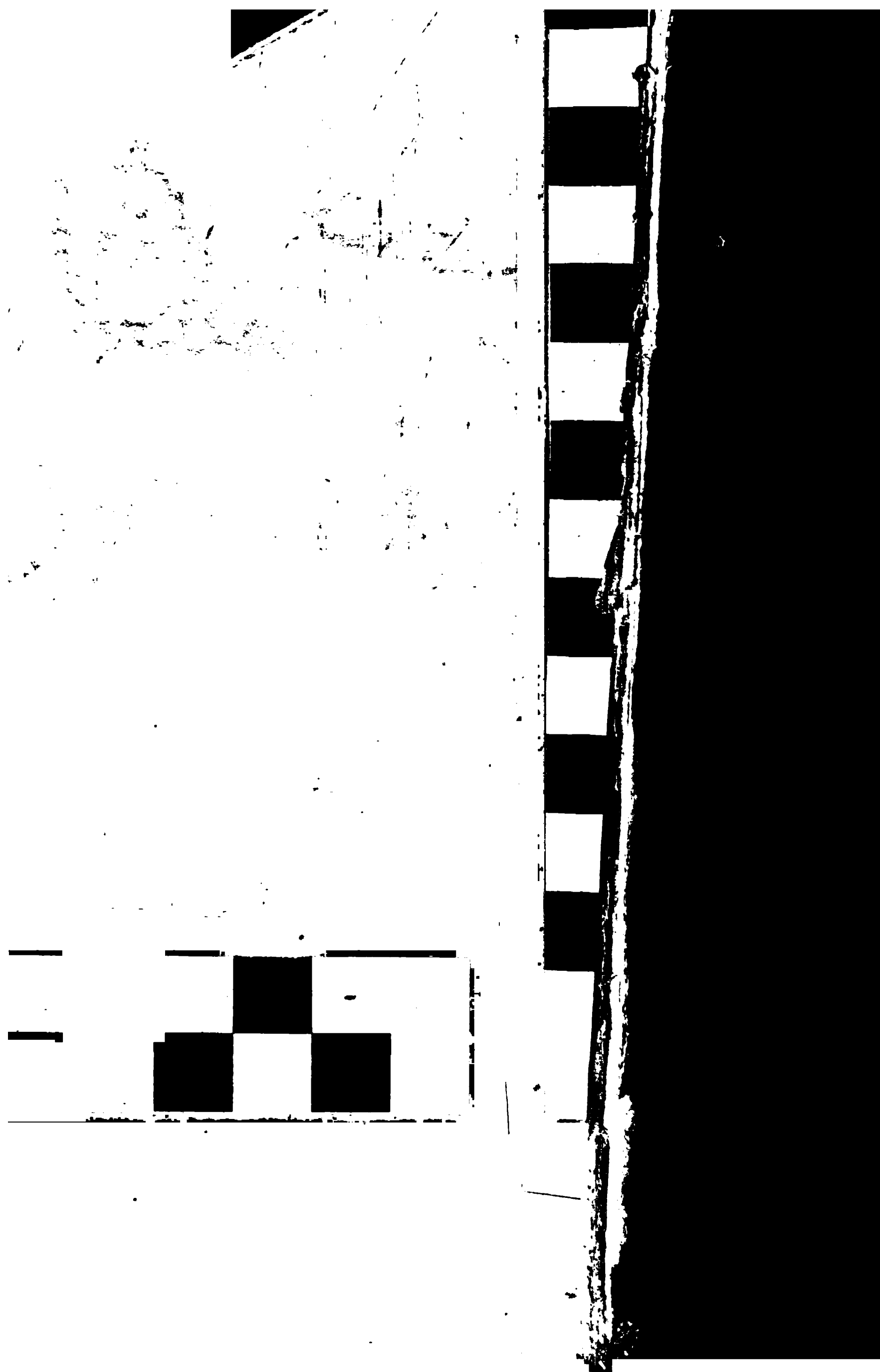
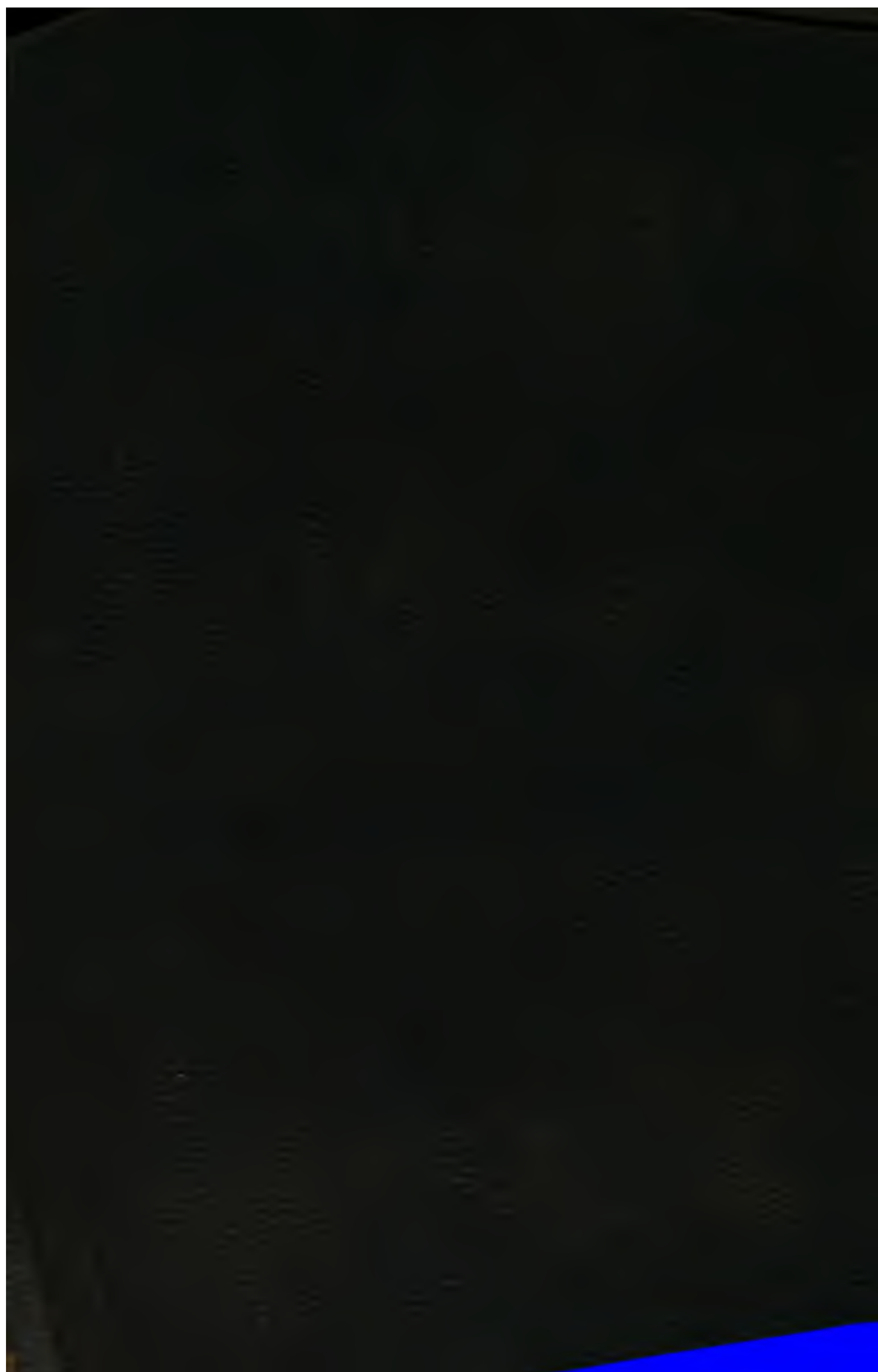




The Library Committee shall divide the books and other articles belonging to the Library into three classes, namely: (a) those which are not to be removed from the building; (b) those which may be taken from the halls only by written permission of three members of the committee, who shall take a receipt for the same and be responsible for their safe return; (c) those which may circulate under the following rules:—

Members shall be entitled to take from the Library one folio, or two quarto volumes, or four volumes of any lesser fold, with the plates belonging to the same, upon having them recorded by the Librarian, or Assistant Librarian, and promising to make good any damage they sustain, while in their possession, and to replace the same if lost, or pay the sum fixed by the Library Committee.

No person shall lend any book belonging to the Institute, excepting to a member, under a penalty of one dollar for every such offence.

The Library Committee may allow members to take more than the allotted number of books upon a written application, and may also permit other persons than members to use the Library, under such conditions as they may impose.

No person shall detain any book longer than four weeks from the time of its being taken from the Library, if notified that the same is wanted by another member, under a penalty of five cents per day, and no volume shall be detained longer than three months at one time under the same penalty.

The Librarian shall have power by order of the Library Committee to call in any volume after it has been retained by a member for ten days.

On or before the first Wednesday in May, all books shall be returned to the Library, and a penalty of five cents per day shall be imposed for each volume detained.

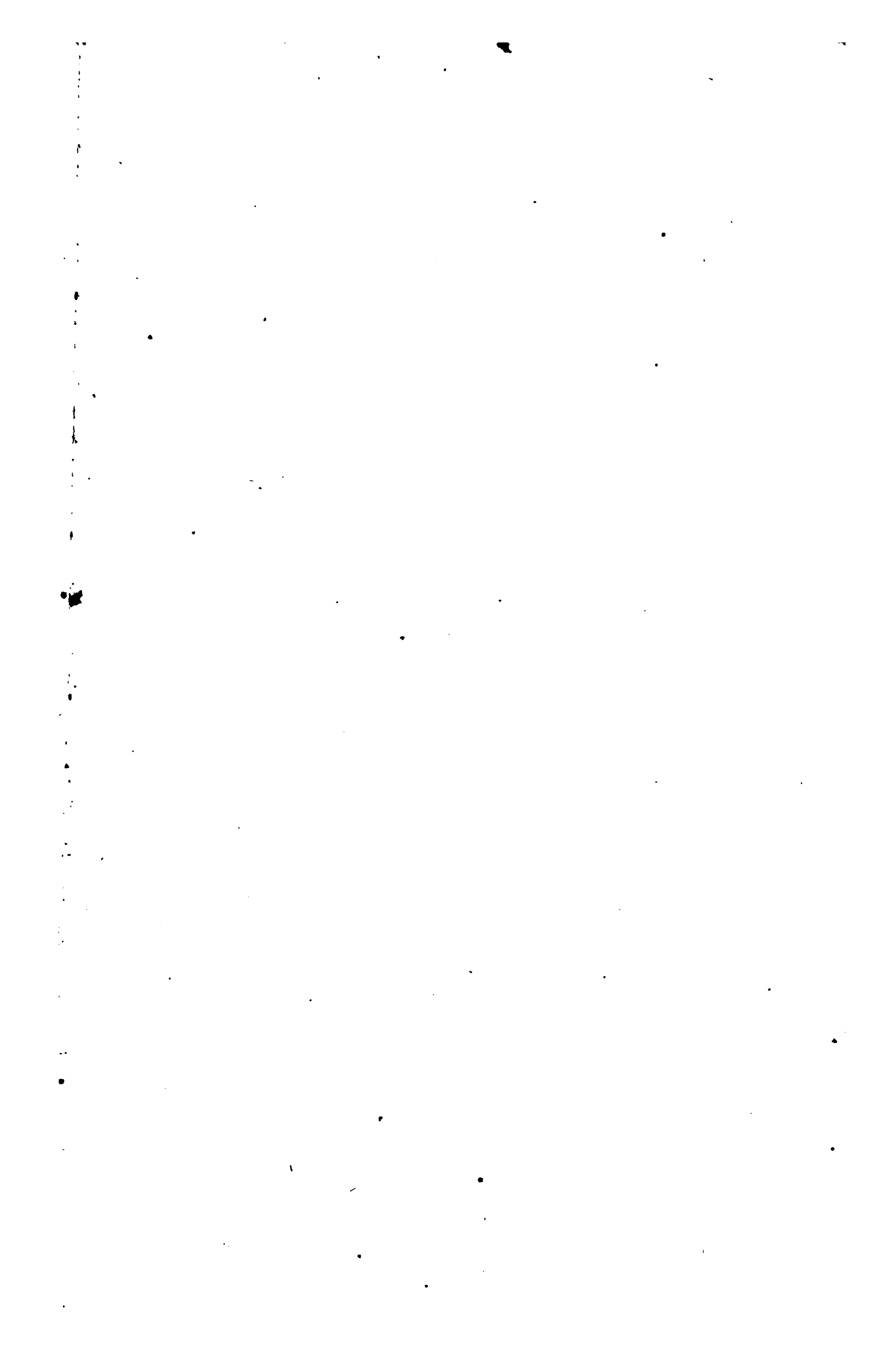
Labels designating the class to which each book belongs shall be placed upon its cover.

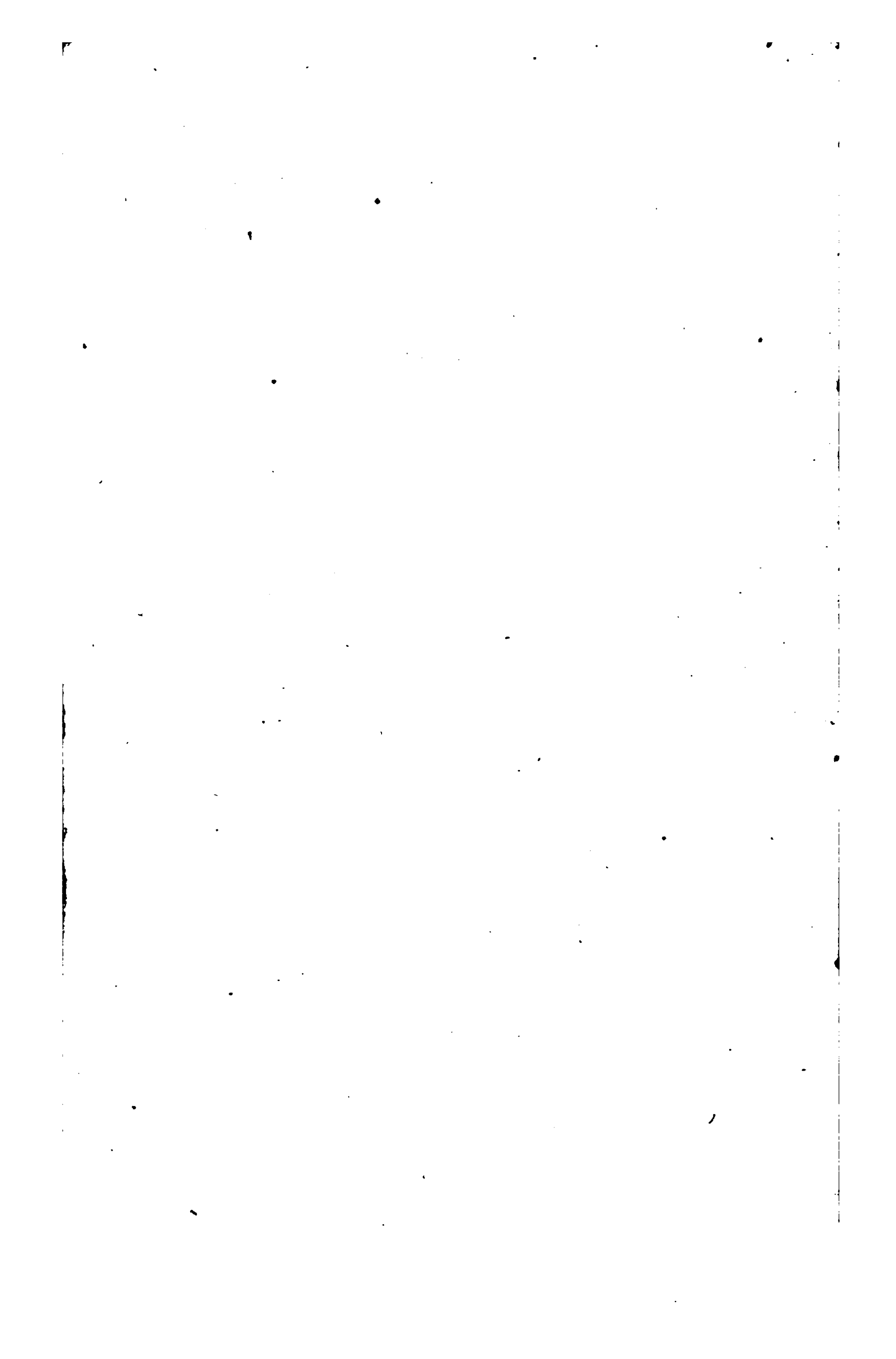
No book shall be allowed to circulate until one month after its reception.











ARNOLD'S

FIRST LATIN BOOK;

REMODELLED AND REWRITTEN,

AND ADAPTED TO THE

OLLENDORFF METHOD OF INSTRUCTION.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, P. D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

TWENTY-SECOND EDITION

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON & COMPANY, 443 & 445 BROADWAY.

1863.

ch being designed to illustrate the particular topic
bject of the lesson, and the second to
arious subjects already
a

PREFACE.

Arnold's *First and Second Latin Book* was introduced to the American public some five years since, under the editorial care of Professor Spencer. As the system was, at that time, quite new in this country, and comparatively so in England, the American editor did not think it best "to make any material alteration in the original work." The marked favor with which the volume was at once received, and the almost unprecedented success which has since attended it, are a sufficient proof of its excellence. The test of the class-room and the improved methods of instruction have, however, convinced teachers that, with many rare merits, and with a general plan most happily adapted to the wants of the beginner in Latin, it was still, in some important respects, quite incomplete in its execution and details. The present volume, undertaken at the request of the publishers, is the result of an attempt to remove these defects, and thus to render

... The entire ... important additions have ...

... Latin of the *First and Second Latin Book* has been retained, so far as consistent with our purpose; but as it has been found necessary to add many new selections, care has been taken to secure pure classic Latin, by resorting exclusively to the pages of Caesar and Cicero.

In the preparation of this book, it has been a leading object with the editor, so to classify and arrange the various topics as to *simplify*, and, as far as possible, to *remove* the disheartening difficulties too often encountered by the learner at the very outset in the study of an ancient language. He has accordingly endeavored so to present each new subject as to enable the beginner fully to master it, before he is called upon to perplex himself with its more difficult combinations. The lessons have been prepared with constant reference to the Ollendorff method of instruction, while, at the same time, special pains have been taken to present a complete and systematic outline, both of the grammatical forms and of the elementary principles of the language. An effort has thus been made to combine the respective advantages of two systems, distinct in themselves, but by no means inconsistent with each other.

In the earlier portions of the book, the exercises for translation consist of two paragraphs of Latin sentences and two of English,

the first of each being designed to illustrate the particular topic which chances to be the subject of the lesson, and the second to furnish miscellaneous examples on the various subjects already learned. Thus each lesson becomes at once an *advance* and a *review*.

For convenience of reference and for the purposes of general review, a summary of Paradigms and an outline of Syntax have been appended to the lessons. The Syntax will be found, it is hoped, to be an improvement, at least in oint of classification and arrangement, upon that ordinarily presented in Latin Grammars. In a Second Latin Book, now in preparation—being at once a Reader and an Exercise Book—the editor contemplates a fuller development and illustration of the Latin Syntax, in a series of exercises on the principle of *analysis* and *synthesis*.

The present volume, as already intimated, has been prepared *mainly* from Arnold's *First and Second Latin Book;* the editor has, however, had before him numerous other works of a kindred character, from some of which he has derived valuable aid. Among these may be mentioned, in addition to the various Latin Grammars in use in this country and in England, Allen's New Latin Delectus; Analysis of Latin Verbs, by the same author; and Pinnock's First Latin Grammar; together with numerous other elementary works, among which the editor is happy to specify the First Latin Book, by Professors M'Clintock and Crooks.

Professor Spencer's edition of Arnold's Latin Prose Compo-

sition, one of the volumes of the excellent Classical Series published by the Messrs. Appleton, has been consulted with much advantage.

For valuable assistance in the preparation of the Syntax, the editor is happy to acknowledge his indebtedness to Greene's Analysis of the English Language.

A. HARKNESS.

Providence, July 18, 1851.

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

LESSONS AND EXERCISES.

PARADIGMS, &c.

SYNTAX.

EXPLANATIONS.

The small numerals above the line in the Exercises refer to *Differences of Idiom*, page 275; the small letters to *Cautions*, page 277.

The numerals enclosed in parentheses refer to articles in the body of the work.

In the Exercises, words connected by hyphens are to be rendered into Latin by a single word; as, *natural-to-man*, hūmānŭs; *it-is*, est, &c.

INTRODUCTION.

PRONUNCIATION.

THE two Methods, the Continental and the English, which at present prevail in the pronunciation of Latin, differ from each other chiefly in the sounds of the vowels; we shall accordingly first state the settled principles in which they agree (as accent, quantity, &c.), and then present the vowel sounds of each separately, hoping, however, that, in this country, the Continental Method will soon commend itself to general favor. With the important merit of uniform consistency, it is, at the same time, the only pronunciation intelligible on the Continent of Europe, the very place where the American scholar will most need his Latin as a medium of communication.

I. LETTERS.

The Latin Language has six characters, or letters, representing vowel sounds, and nineteen representing consonant sounds.

REM. 1. The vowel sounds are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*; the consonants are the same as in English, with the omission of *w*, which is not used in Latin.

REM. 2. Two vowels sometimes unite in sound, and form a diphthong, as in English; e. g., *æ* in Cæsar.

REM. 3. *X* and *z** are called double consonants· *l*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, liquids, and the other consonants, with the exception of *h* and *s*, mutes.

---

* *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*.

II. SYLLABLES.

In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade*, are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo-re*, *vi-ce*, *a-cu-te*, *per-sua-de*.

III. QUANTITY.

Syllables are, in *quantity* or *length*, either *long*, *short*, or *common* (i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short).

1. A syllable is *long* in quantity:

1) When it contains a *diphthong*, as the first syllable of *cœdo*.

2) When its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any *two consonants*, except a *mute* followed by a *liquid;* as the second syllables of *erexit* and *magister*.

2. A syllable is *short*, when its vowel is followed by another vowel, or a diphthong, as the second syllable of *indies*.

Rem. The letter *h* does not affect the quantity of the preceding vowel.

The quantity of syllables, when not determined by these rules, will be indicated in the vocabularies (and, in some instances, in the exercises) by the dash ‒ when *long*, by the curve ˘ when *short*, and by the two together ˘̄ when *common*.

IV. ACCENTUATION.

1. The primary (or principal) accent, or stress of voice, is placed:

1) In words of two syllables, always on the first; as, *ho'mo*, a man.

2) In words of more than two syllables, on the *penult* (the last syllable but one), if that is *long* in quantity; otherwise on the *antepenult* (the last syllable but two); as, *rādī'cĭs, con'sŭlĭs.*

2. An additional accent is placed on each second syl lable preceding the *primary* accent; as, *dē'monstrātŭr*

V. SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

I. The Continental Method.*

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels.*

The Continental sounds of the vowels are as follows:—

a	ä in *father;*	e. g.,	ārĭs.
e	1. ā in *made;*	e. g.,	ēdĭt.
	2. ĕ in *met;*	e. g.,	ămĕt.
i	ē in *me;*	e. g.,	īrĕ.
o	1. ō in *no;*	e. g.,	ōră.
	2. ŏ in *nor;*	e. g.,	ămŏr.
u	ô in *do;*	e. g.,	ūnă.
y	ē in *me;*	e. g.,	nȳmphă.

Rem. *Y* is used only in words derived from the Greek.

These sounds are uniformly the same in all situations, except as modified by *quantity* and *accent*, (III. and IV.)

2. *The Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

æ and œ . . . *ā* in *made;* e. g., ætās, cœlŭm.
au . . . *ou* in *out;* e. g., aurŭm.

Rem. The vowels in *ei* and *eu* are generally pronounced separately.

---

* For the Continental Pronunciation the editor is indebted to the kindness of Mr. George W. Greene, Instructor in Modern Languages in Brown University.

I. SYLLABLES.

In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: thus the Latin words, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], and [illegible] are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, [illegible].

II. QUANTITY.

Syllables are, in quantity or length, either *long*, *short*, or *common* (i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short).

1. A syllable is long in quantity:

1) When it contains a diphthong, as the first syllable of [illegible].

2) When its vowel is followed by j, x, z, or any *two* consonants, except a mute followed by a *liquid*: as the second syllables of [illegible] and magister.

2. A syllable is short when its vowel is followed by another vowel, or a diphthong, as the second syllable of [illegible].

Note. The letter h does not affect the quantity of the preceding vowel.

The quantity of syllables, when not determined by these rules, will be indicated in the vocabularies (and, in some instances, in the exercises) by the dash ¯ when long, by the curve ˘ when short, and by the two [illegible]

III. ACCENTUATION.

[illegible] (or principal) accent, or stress of [illegible]

[illegible], always on the first; [illegible]

[illegible]

[illegible] ig.

[illegible] sepa-

as [illegible]

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The pronunciation of the consonants is nearly the same as in English, though it varies somewhat in different countries.

II. THE ENGLISH METHOD.

1. *The Sounds of the Vowels* *

In the English method, the vowels generally have the long or short English sounds: the length of the sound, however, is not dependent upon the quantity of the vowel, but must be determined by its situation or accent.

(*a*) In all *monosyllables*, vowels have

1) The *long* sound if at the end of the word; as, *si*, *re*.

2) The *short* sound if followed by a consonant; as, *sit*, *rem;* except *post*, *monosyllables* in *es*, and *plural cases* in *os;* as, *hos* (a plural case).

(*b*) In an *accented penult*, vowels have

1) The *long* sound before a vowel, diphthong, single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h;* as, *deus*, *pater*, *patres;* except *tibi* and *sibi*.

2) The *short* sound before a double consonant, or any two single consonants except a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h;* as, *bellum*, *rexit*.

(*c*) In any *accented syllable* except the penult, vowels have

1) The *long* sound before a vowel or diphthong; as *e* in *éadem*.

*** The system of vowel sounds here presented is the same as that given in Andrews and Stoddard's Latin Grammar, and, like that, is based upon Walker's Key to the Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names. The *rules*, however, unlike those of Andrews and Stoddard, are so prepared as to show the sounds of the vowels, in all their various situations, independently of the division of words into syllables. This, it is hoped, will facilitate their application.**

2) The *short* sound before a consonant, as *o* in *dóminus:* except,

a) *U* before a single consonant, or a mute followed by *r* or *h* (and perhaps *l*); as, *Púnicus, salúbritas.*

b) *A*, *e*, and *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute before *l*, *r*, or *h*), followed by *e* or *i* before another vowel; as, *dóceo, ácria.*

(*d*) In all *unaccented syllables*, vowels have the *short* sound; as, *cantámus, vígilat:* except,

1) Final *a* in words of more than one syllable. This has the sound of *ah*, as in the word *America;* e. g., *musa* (*musah*).

2) Final syllables in *i* (except *tibi* and *sibi*), *es*, and *os*, in *plural cases;* as, *hómini, dies, illos* (a plural case).

3) The first syllable of words accented on the second, when the first either begins with an *i* followed by a single consonant, or contains *i* before a vowel; as, *diébus, irátus.*

REM. *E*, *o*, and *u*, unaccented before a vowel, diphthong, a single consonant, or a mute followed by *l*, *r*, or *h*, are not quite as short in sound as the other vowels in the same situations.

2. *The Sounds of the Diphthongs.*

Æ and œ, like *e* in the same situation; e. g., *Cæsar, Daédalus.*

Au, as in the English, *author;* e. g., *aurum.*

Eu, " " *neuter;* e. g., *neuter* (both Eng. and Latin).

Ei, as in the English, *height;* e. g., *dein.*

Oi, " " *coin;* e. g., *proin.*

REM. 1. The vowels in *ei* and *oi* are generally pronounced separately.

REM. 2. A few other combinations seem sometimes to be used as

diphthongs. *U* is always the first element of these combinations, and has then the sound of *w*; as, *suade* = swade: except, *Ui* in *huic*, and *cui*, which has the sound of long *i*.

3. *The Sounds of the Consonants.*

The consonants are pronounced nearly as in English; *c* and *g*, however, are soft before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*, and hard in other situations: *ch* is always hard, like *k*; as, *charta* (*kartah*).

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

LESSON I.

Parts of Speech.—Proposition.—Subject.—Predicate.

1. In Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*, viz.: *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Pronouns*, *Verbs*, *Adverbs*, *Prepositions*, *Conjunctions*, and *Interjections*.

2. These parts of speech, either singly or combined, form *propositions* or *sentences;* as, *ămās*, thou lovest; *puĕr lūdĭt*, the boy plays.

3. Every proposition, however simple, consists of two parts: (1.) the *subject*, or the person or thing of which it speaks; and, (2.) the *predicate*, or that which is said of the subject: thus, in the proposition, *puĕr lūdĭt*, *puĕr* (the boy) is the subject of which the proposition speaks, and *lūdĭt* (plays) is the predicate which is affirmed of the subject.

4. In Latin the subject is often omitted, because the form of the predicate shows what subject is meant; thus the proposition *ămās*, thou lovest, consists in Latin of a single word, because the ending *ās*, of *ămās*, shows (as we shall see by and by) that the subject cannot be *I*, *he*, or *they*, but must be *thou*.

5. When a proposition thus consists of a single word, that word is always a *verb*; e. g., *ămăt*, he loves.

6. The *analysis* of a proposition consists in separating it into its elements.

EXAMPLE 1.—Proposition, *Puĕr* (the boy) *lūdĭt* (plays).

Puĕr (the boy) is the *subject*, because it is that of which the proposition speaks (3). *Lūdĭt* (plays) is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject (3).

EXAMPLE 2.—Proposition, *Amās* (thou lovest).

Amās is the *predicate*, because it is that which is said of the subject. *Thou*, the subject in English, is omitted in Latin, because the ending *ās*, of the predicate *ămās*, fully implies it.

7. *Exercise in Analysis.**

Puellă (*the girl*) cantăt (*sings*). Puĕr (*the boy*) lūdĕt (*will play*). Pătĕr (*the father*) vĭdēbĭt (*will see*). Mātĕr (*the mother*) rīdēbăt (*was laughing*). Currēbăt (*he was running*). Cantābĭt (*he will sing*). Lūdēbăt (*he was playing*). Arābăt (*he was ploughing*).

LESSON II.

Verbs.—First Conjugation.

8. A VERB expresses *existence*, *condition*, or *action* (generally the *existence*, *condition*, or *action* of some *person*

---

* These propositions are to be analyzed according to the examples just given. The object is twofold: first, to fix definitely the distinction between *subject* and *predicate;* and, secondly, to show the learner that when the subject is a personal pronoun (English, *I*, *thou*, *he*, &c.), it is generally omitted in Latin. The use of the pronoun to express *emphasis* or *contrast* will be considered in another place.

or *thing*, called its *subject*): as, *est*, he is; *dormĭt*, he sleeps (is sleeping, or is asleep); *ămăt*, he loves.

9. When a verb expresses simply its *meaning*, without reference to any person or thing, as *ămārĕ*, to love, it is said to be in the *Infinitive Mood.*

10. When a verb expresses its meaning in the form of an *assertion* or *question*, referring to its subject, as *ămăt*, he loves, it is said to be in the *Indicative Mood.**

11. A verb may represent its subject,

1) As acting in *present* time; as, *ămăt*, he loves. It is then said to be in the *Present Tense.*
2) As acting in *past* time; as, *ămābăt*, he was loving. It is then said to be in the *Imperfect Tense.*
3) As acting in *future* time (i. e., about to act); as, *ămābĭt*, he will love. It is then said to be in the *Future Tense.**

12. A verb may represent its subject,

1) As *speaking of himself;* as, *ămŏ*, I love, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *First Person.*
2) As *spoken to;* as, *ămās*, thou lovest, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Second Person.*
3) As *spoken of;* as, *ămăt*, he loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Third Person.*

13. A verb may represent its subject,

1) As consisting of *only one* person or thing; as, *ămăt*, he, she, or it loves, and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Singular Number.*

---

* The other *moods* and *tenses* will be noticed in another place.

2) As consisting of *more than one* person or thing; as, *ămant*, they love; and then both subject and verb are said to be in the *Plural Number*.

14. Every verb consists of two parts, viz.:

1) *The Root*, or that part of the verb which remains unchanged throughout the various moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; as, *ăm* in *ămārĕ*, *ămŏ*, *ămăt*, and *ămābĭt*.

2) *The Endings* which are added to this root, to form the moods, tenses, numbers, and persons; thus, in the forms just noticed—viz., ăm*ārĕ*, ăm*ŏ*, ăm*ăt*, and ăm*ābĭt*—the endings are, *ārĕ*, *ŏ*, *ăt*, and *ābĭt*.

15. Some verbs have the *infinitive* in *ārĕ;* as, *ămārĕ*, to love. These are said to be of

The First Conjugation.

16. In verbs of this conjugation,

1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ārĕ;* as, ăm*ārĕ;* root, *ăm*.

2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings:*

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Future.*
ăt,	ābăt,	ābĭt.

PARADIGM.

Amārĕ, to love: root, *ăm*.

Present.	Am-ăt,	he, she, *or* it loves (*or*, is loving).
Imperfect.	Am-ābăt,	" " " was loving.
Future.	Am-ābĭt,	" " " will love (will be loving).

17. VOCABULARY.

Latin.	*Meaning.*	*Key-words.**
Amārĕ,	to love	(*amorous*).
Arārĕ,	to plough	(*arable*).
Cantārĕ,	to sing	(*canto*).
Lăbōrārĕ,	to labor	(*labor*).
Vĭgĭlārĕ,	to watch	(*vigilant*).

18. *Exercise.*

1. Labōrat.† 2. Cantat. 3. Arat. 4. Arābat. 5. Amābat. 6. Vigilābat. 7. Vigilābit. 8. Cantābit. 9. Laborābit. 10. Vigĭlat. 11. Laborābat. 12. Amābit. 13. Amat. 14. Cantābat. 15. Arābit.

LESSON III.

First Conjugation—continued.

19. VOCABULARY.

Ambŭlārĕ,	to walk	(*ambulatory*).
Jūrārĕ,	to swear.	
Pūgnārĕ,	to fight	(*pugnacious*).
Saltārĕ,	to dance.	
Spērārĕ,	to hope.	
Vŏcārĕ,	to call	(*vocation*).

---

* These Key-words, derived from the Latin, are introduced partly as a key or help to the learner, in fixing the meaning of the Latin, and partly as specimens of English derivatives of Latin origin.

† The subject of each of these verbs may be, in English, either *he*, *she*, or *it*. The ending, *at*, shows the number and person of the subject, but not its gender (see Paradigm). When the subject is thus omitted in Latin, we can usually determine from the connection which subject to use, just as in English we determine the meaning of the pronoun *they*, which may represent either *things* or *persons*, and either *males* or *females*. In these exercises the pupil may use *he* as the subject.

20. In English, the *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons* of verbs are indicated by certain *words* or *signs*; as,

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Future.*
He loves,	*He was* loving,	*He will* love.

In Latin, however, no such *signs* are used; but their place is supplied by the *endings* of the verb. Hence, in translating English into Latin, omit these signs and express the *tense*, *number*, and *person* of the verb by the *proper endings*; e. g.:

	Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Future.*
Eng.	*He* loves,	*He was* lov*ing*,	*He will* love.
Lat.	Am*at*,	Am*ābat*,	Am*ābit*.

21. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Saltat. 2. Cantat. 3. Ambŭlat. 4. Ambulābat. 5. Jurābat. 6. Vocābat. 7. Sperābat. 8. Sperābit. 9. Ambulābit. 10. Saltābit. 11. Jurat. 12. Cantābat. 13. Vocat. 14. Laborābat. 15. Jurābit.

(*b*) 1. He calls. 2. He is ploughing. 3. He hopes. 4. He swears. 5. He is laboring. 6. He was laboring. 7. He was walking. 8. He was dancing. 9. He was singing. 10. He was ploughing. 11. He will plough. 12. He will call. 13. He will swear. 14. He will hope. 15. He will labor. 16. He is walking. 17. He was hoping. 18. He will walk. 19. He dances. 20. He was fighting. 21. He will sing.

LESSON IV.

Verbs.—Second Conjugation.

22. Some Verbs have the *infinitive* in *ērĕ*; as, ***mŏnērĕ***, **to advise.** These are said to be of

The Second Conjugation.

23. In verbs of this conjugation,

1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ērĕ;* as, mŏnērĕ; root, *mŏn.*

2) The *third persons singular* of the *present, imperfect,* and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings:*

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Future.*
ĕt,	ēbăt,	ēbĭt.

PARADIGM.

Mŏnērĕ, to advise: root, *mŏn.*

Present.	Mŏn-ĕt,	he, she, *or* it advises (is advising).
Imperfect.	Mŏn-ēbăt,	" " " was advising.
Future.	Mŏn-ēbĭt,	" " " will advise.

24. VOCABULARY.

Dŏcērĕ,	to teach	(*docile*).
Dŏlērĕ,	to grieve	(*doleful*).
Flērĕ,	to weep.	
Mănērĕ,	to remain.	
Mŏvērĕ,	to move	(*move*).
Nērĕ,	to spin.	
Respondērĕ,	to answer	(*respond*).
Rīdērĕ,	to laugh	(*ridicule*).
Tĭmērĕ,	to fear, to be afraid	(*timid*).

25. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Ridet. 2. Docet. 3. Respondet. 4. Dolet. 5. Dolēbat. 6. Nebat. 7. Flebat. 8. Manēbat. 9. Movēbat. 10. Movēbit. 11. Dolēbit. 12. Docēbit. 13. Respondēbit. 14. Ridēbit. 15. Movet. 16. Docēbat. 17. Manēbit. 18. Flet. 19. Ridēbat. 20. Nebit.

21. Pugnat. 22. Manet. 23. Pugnābat. 24. Manēbat. 25. Pugnābit. 26. Manēbit. 27. Cantat. 28. Timet. 29. Saltābat. 30. Respondēbat. 31. Ambulābit. 32. Timēbit. 33. Labōrat. 34. Movet. 35. Saltābat. 36. Docēbat. 37. Vocābit. 38. Dolēbit.

(*b*) 1. He remains. 2. He moves. 3. He weeps. 4. He spins. 5. He was spinning. 6. He was laughing. 7. He was teaching. 8. He was grieving. 9. He was answering. 10. He will answer. 11. He will weep. 12. He will remain. 13. He will spin. 14. He is laughing. 15. He was weeping. 16. He will teach. 17. He teaches. 18. He was moving. 19. He will laugh.

20. He dances. 21. He laughs. 22. He was calling. 23. He was weeping. 24. He walks. 25. He answers. 26. He was ploughing. 27. He was laughing. 28. He will sing. 29. He will move.

LESSON V.

Verbs.—Third Conjugation.

26. Some verbs have the *infinitive* in *ĕrĕ;* as, *rĕgĕrĕ*, to rule. These are said to be of

The Third Conjugation.

27. In verbs of this conjugation,

1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *ĕrĕ;* as, *rĕgĕrĕ;* root, *rĕg*.
2) The *third persons singular* of the *present, imperfect,* and *future tenses* of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings:*

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Future.*
ĭt,	ēbăt,	ĕt.

PARADIGM.

Rĕgĕrĕ, to rule: root, *rĕg.*

Present.	Rĕg-ĭt,	he, she, *or* it rules (is ruling).
Imperfect.	Rĕg-ēbăt,	" " " was ruling.
Future.	Rĕg-ĕt,	" " " will rule.

28. VOCABULARY.

Bĭbĕrĕ,	to drink	(*bibber; as, wine-bibber*).
Cădĕrĕ,	to fall	(*cadence*).
Currĕrĕ,	to run	(*current*).
Discĕrĕ,	to learn	(*disciple*).
Lĕgĕrĕ,	to read	(*legible*).
Lūdĕrĕ,	to play	(*ludicrous*).
Scrībĕrĕ,	to write	(*scribe, scribble*).

29. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Ludit. 2. Currit. 3. Discit. 4. Discēbat. 5. Scribēbat. 6. Bibēbat. 7. Bibet. 8. Cadet. 9. Leget. 10. Legit. 11. Currēbat. 12. Scribet. 13. Scribit. 14. Ludēbat. 15. Discet.

16. Labōrat. 17. Movet. 18. Cadit. 19. Vocābat. 20. Ridēbat. 21. Legēbat. 22. Sperat. 23. Dolet. 24. Bibit. 25. Jurābat. 26. Flebat. 27. Cadēbat. 28. Arābit. 29. Respondēbit. 30. Ludet.

(*b*) 1. He writes. 2. He drinks. 3. He falls. 4. He was falling. 5. He was reading. 6. He was playing. 7. He will play. 8. He will run. 9. He will learn. 10. He learns. 11. He was writing. 12. He will read. 13. He is playing. 14. He was running. 15. He will fall.

16. He is fighting. 17. He fears. 18. He reads. 19. He was singing. 20. He was spinning. 21. He was learning. 22. He will labor. 23. He will remain. 24. He will write.

LESSON VI.

Verbs.—Fourth Conjugation.

30. SOME verbs have the infinitive in *īrĕ;* as, *audīrĕ*, to hear. These are said to be of

The Fourth Conjugation.

31. In verbs of this conjugation,

1) The *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending *īrĕ;* as, *audīrĕ;* root, *aud.*
2) The *third persons singular* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to this root the following *endings:*

Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Future.*
ĭt,	iēbăt,	iĕt.

PARADIGM.

Audīrĕ, to hear: root, *aud.*

Present.	Aud-ĭt,	he, she, *or* it hears (is hearing).
Imperfect.	Aud-iēbăt,	" " " was hearing.
Future.	Aud-iĕt,	" " " will hear.

32. VOCABULARY.

Audīrĕ,	to hear	(*audible*).
Custōdīrĕ,	to guard	(*custody*).
Dormīrĕ,	to sleep	(*dormant*).
Erŭdīrĕ,	to instruct	(*erudition*).
Scīrĕ,	to know	(*science*).
Sĭtīrĕ,	to thirst.	
Vĕnīrĕ,	to come.	

33. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Custōdit. 2. Erŭdit. 3. Sitit. 4. Sitiēbat. 5. Veniēbat. 6. Sciēbat. 7. Sciet. 8. Audiet. 9. Dormiet. 10. Dormit. 11. Erudiēbat. 12. Custodiet. 13. Venit. 14. Audiēbat. 15. Erudiet.

16. Ambŭlat. 17. Docet. 18. Currit. 19. Audit. 20. Cantābat. 21. Ridēbat. 22. Ludēbat. 23. Dormiēbat. 24. Saltābit. 25. Nebit. 26. Discet. 27. Veniet.

(b) 1. He thirsts. 2. He knows. 3. He guards. 4. He was guarding. 5. He was instructing. 6. He was coming. 7. He will come. 8. He will hear. 9. He will thirst. 10. He will know. 11. He hears. 12. He was thirsting. 13. He will instruct. 14. He sleeps. 15. He was hearing. 16. He will guard.

17. He walks. 18. He spins. 19. He runs. 20. He comes. 21. He was dancing. 22. He was teaching. 23. He was writing. 24. He was sleeping. 25. He will sing. 26. He will laugh. 27. He will play. 28. He will instruct. 29. He labors. 30. He was weeping. 31. He will learn. 32. He will sleep.

LESSON VII.

Verbs.—Four Conjugations.—Plural Number.

34. THE *Four Conjugations* already noticed contain all the *regular* verbs of the Latin language: hence,

1) In any *regular* verb, the *root* is found by dropping the infinitive ending of the conjugation to which it belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows:

Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
ārĕ,	ērĕ,	ĕrĕ,	īrĕ.

a) These endings, it must be observed, differ from each other only in the vowel before *rĕ*, which is called the *characteristic* vowel of the conjugation. The characteristic vowels in the four conjugations are as follows:

Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
ā,	ē,	ĕ,	ī.

REM.—These vowels occur so frequently in their respective conjugations, that they are called *favorite* vowels of the conjugations. The third conjugation has also ĭ as a *favorite* vowel, as in the present ending, ĭt; e. g., *rĕgĭt*, he rules.

2) In any *regular* verb, the *third persons singular* of the *present, imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *indicative* are formed by adding to the root the endings of the conjugation to which the verb belongs. These endings in the four conjugations are as follows:

	Pres.	*Imperf.*	*Fut.*
Conj. I.	ăt,	ābăt,	ābĭt.
II.	ĕt,	ēbăt,	ēbĭt.
III.	ĭt,	ēbăt,	ĕt.
IV.	ĭt,	iēbăt,	iĕt.

35. In any *regular* verb, the *third persons plural*, in the tenses already noticed, are formed by simply inserting *n* before *t* in the *endings* of the *third singular*.

EXC.—If ĭ immediately precedes *t*, it must be changed, in the fourth conjugation, into *iu*; as, *audĭt*, he hears; *audiunt*, they hear: and in the other conjugations into *u*; as, *ămābĭt*, he will love; *ămābunt*, they will love.

PARADIGM.

		Present.	*Imperfect.*	*Future.*
Conj. I.	Sing.	Am-ăt,	ăm-ābăt,	ăm-ābĭt.
	Plur.	Am-*ant*,	ăm-āb*ant*,	ăm-āb*unt*.
II.	Sing.	Mŏn-ĕt,	mŏn-ēbăt,	mŏn-ēbĭt.
	Plur.	Mŏn-*ent*,	mŏn-ēb*ant*,	mŏn-ēb*unt*.
III.	Sing.	Rĕg-ĭt,	rĕg-ēbăt,	rĕg-ĕt.
	Plur.	Rĕg-*unt*,	rĕg-ēb*ant*,	rĕg-*ent*.
IV.	Sing.	Aud-ĭt,	aud-iēbăt,	aud-iĕt.
	Plur.	Aud-*iunt*,	aud-iēb*ant*,	aud-i*ent*.

36. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Saltat. 2. Saltant. 3. Ambulābat. 4. Ambulābant. 5. Arābit. 6. Arābunt. 7. Docet. 8. Docent. 9. Timēbat. 10. Timēbant. 11. Ridēbit. 12. Ridēbunt. 13. Ludit. 14. Ludunt. 15. Scribēbat. 16. Scribēbant. 17. Curret. 18. Current. 19. Dormit. 20. Dormiunt. 21. Veniēbat. 22. Veniēbant. 23. Custodiet. 24. Custodient. 25. Vocant. 26. Dolent. 27. Discunt. 28. Sciunt. 29. Saltābunt. 30. Movēbant. 31. Legēbant. 32. Erudiēbant. 33. Jurābunt. 34. Manēbunt. 35. Cadent. 36. Sitient.

(*b*) 1. He sings. 2. They sing. 3. He was swearing. 4. They were swearing. 5. He will labor. 6. They will labor. 7. He laughs. 8. They laugh. 9. He was spinning. 10. They were spinning. 11. He will remain. 12. They will remain. 13. He runs. 14. They run. 15. He was playing. 16. They were playing. 17. He will drink. 18. They will drink. 19. He knows. 20. They know. 21. He was guarding. 22. They were guarding. 23. He will hear. 24. They will hear. 25. They walk. 26. They answer. 27. They write. 28. They sleep. 29. They were ploughing. 30. They were teaching. 31. They were learning. 32. They were instructing. 33. They will sing. 34. They will weep. 35. They will read. 36. They will come.

LESSON VIII.

Nouns.—Nominative Case.

37. In Latin, as in English, all names, whether of persons, places, or things, are called *Nouns;* as, *Cæsăr; puĕr*, a boy, &c.

REM. 1.—Names of *individual* persons or objects are called *proper nouns;* as, *Cæsăr; Rōmă*, Rome.

REM. 2.—Names applicable to persons or objects, not as *individuals*, but as *members of a class*, are called *common nouns;* as, *ĕquŭs*, a horse (a name applicable to all animals of this class).

38. All nouns have *gender*, *number*, *person*, and *case*.

39. The *Gender* of a noun is either *masculine*, *feminine*, *common*, or *neuter*.

40. In Latin, as in English, all nouns denoting objects which have sex, except such names of animals as are applicable to both sexes, are,

1) *Masculine*, when they denote *male* beings; as, *hŏmĭnēs*, men; *puĕr*, a boy; *leōnēs*, lions.
2) *Feminine*, when they denote *female* beings; as, *mŭlĭĕr*, a woman; *puellă*, a girl; *leænă*, a lioness.
3) *Common*, when they apply alike to both sexes; as, *părens*, a parent (either *male* or *female*); *testĭs*, a witness (either *male* or *female*).

41. When gender is employed to denote sex, as in the cases just noticed, it is called *natural* gender.

42. In nouns denoting objects without sex (*neuter in English*), and in most names applicable to animals of both sexes, the gender in Latin is entirely independent of sex, and is accordingly called *grammatical* gender.

Some of these nouns are grammatically masculine; some, grammatically feminine; and some, grammatically neuter.

43. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined *partly* by their *signification*, but *principally* by their *endings*.

44. The general rules for ascertaining the grammatical gender of nouns, independently of their endings, are:

1) Most names of *rivers, winds,* and *months* are masculine; as, *Rhēnŭs*, the Rhine; *austĕr*, the south wind; *Aprīlĭs*, April.

2) Most names of *countries, towns, islands,* and *trees* are feminine; as *Ægyptŭs*, Egypt; *Rōmă*, Rome; *Dēlŏs*, name of an island; *laurŭs*, the laurel-tree.

3) *Indeclinable nouns,** and *clauses used as nouns,* are neuter; as, *fās*, right; *nihĭl*, nothing.

Gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

45. The *Numbers* and *Persons* are the same in Latin as in English. The *first* person denotes the *speaker;* the *second*, the *person spoken to;* and the *third*, the person *spoken of.* The singular number denotes one; and the plural, more than one.

46. The *Cases* of Latin nouns are six in number, viz.: *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative,* and *Ablative.*

47. The case of a noun is indicated by its ending; and the formation of its several cases is called *Declension.*

48. The *Nominative Case* corresponds to the nominative in English, both in name and use; e. g.,

Puĕr lūdĭt, the boy plays.

49. Rule of Syntax.†—The subject of a finite (i. e. *not infinitive*) verb is put in the nominative.

Rem. 1.—Thus, in the example, *puĕr* is in the nominative by this rule.
Rem. 2.—The subject stands before the verb, as in English.

---

* Such as have but one form for all cases and both numbers.

† Rules for the government and agreement of words are called *Rules of Syntax.*

50. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A finite verb must agree with its subject in *number* and *person*.

REM.—Thus, in the above example, *lūdĭt* is in the third person singular, to agree with its subject *puĕr*.

☞ Determine which of the nouns in the following Vocabularies have *natural* gender, and which *grammatical*, and apply rules.

51. VOCABULARY.*

Caesăr, *m.*	Caesar, *a celebrated Roman general.*	
Fīlĭŭs, *m.*	son	(*filial*).
Pătĕr, *m.*	father	(*paternal*)
Puellă, *f.*	girl.	
Puĕr, *m.*	boy	(*puerile*).
Vincĕrĕ,	to conquer,	(*vincible*).

52. *Exercises*

(*a*) 1. Pater† docet. 2. Puer ludit. 3. Filius discēbat. 4. Caesar vincēbat. 5. Puer veniet. 6. Puella cantābat. 7. Pater scribēbat.

(*b*) 1. The girl will learn. 2. The father will conquer. 3. The boy dances. 4. The son was learning. 5. The father was ploughing. 6. The boy was playing. 7. The girl will sing. 8. Caesar was coming.

---

* Gender is indicated in the Vocabularies by *m.* for *masculine*, *f.* for *feminine*, *c.* for *common*, and *n.* for *neuter*.

† As the Latin has no article, a noun may be translated, (1) without the article; as, *pătĕr*, father: (2) with the indefinite article; as, *pătĕr, a* father: (3) with the definite article; as, *pătĕr, the* father.

LESSON IX.

Nouns.—Nominative Case—Continued.

53. VOCABULARY.*

Aquă, *f.*	water	(*aqueous*).
Aquĭlă, *f.*	eagle	(*aquiline*).
Avĭs, *f.*	bird.	
Cănĭs, *c.*	dog	(*canine*).
Equŭs, *m.*	horse	(*equestrian*).
Fīliă, *f.*	daughter	(*filial*).
Fluĕrĕ,	to flow	(*fluent*).
Hostĭs, *c*	enemy	(*hostile*).
Impĕrārĕ	to command	(*imperative*).
Măgistĕr,	master, teacher	(*magisterial*).
Mātĕr,	mother	(*maternal*).
Mors, *f.*	death	(*mortal*).
Nūbēs, *f.*	cloud.	
Rex,	king	(*regal*).
Servŭs, *m.*	slave	(*servant*).
Vŏlārĕ,	to fly	(*volatile*).

54. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Mors veniet. 2. Aquĭla volat. 3. Hostis veniēbat. 4. Nubes movet. 5. Aqua fluit. 6. Canis ludēbat. 7. Equus curret. 8. Magister erudiēbat. 9. Rex imperābat.

10. Avis volat. 11. Volant. 12. Servus pugnābit. 13. Pugnābant. 14. Puer timēbat. 15. Timēbant. 16. Puella discēbat. 17. Discēbant. 18. Filia dormiēbat. 19. Dormiēbant.

(*b*) 1. The bird will fly. 2. The eagle was flying. 3. The king will come. 4. The mother will teach. 5. The daughter will learn. 6. The dog will run. 7. The

* In this and the following Vocabularies, whenever the gender of a noun is not marked, the pupil is expected to determine it by the rules already given.

slave will swear. 8. Caesar was coming. 9. The slave is ploughing.

10. They were ploughing. 11. The king will conquer. 12. They are conquering. 13. The dog will come. 14. They were coming. 15. The girl is weeping. 16. They will weep. 17. The boy is singing. 18. They will laugh.

LESSON X.

Nouns.—Vocative Case.

55. THE same form* of the noun which is called the *nominative*, when *spoken of*, is called the *vocative*, when *spoken to*. This corresponds to the *nominative independent* in English; e. g.

Voc.	*Nom.*
Pătĕr,	puĕr cădĕt.
Father (or, *O father*),	the boy will fall.

REM.—In very short sentences, like the above, the vocative may be placed either at the beginning or close; in other cases, however, it is generally preceded by one or more words in the sentence.

56. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative.

REM.—The interjection *O* is sometimes used before the name addressed, both in Latin and English.

57. VOCABULARY.

Agrĭcŏlă,	husbandman	(*agriculture*).
Balbŭs,	Balbus, *a man's name*.	
Caiŭs,	Caius, *a man's name*.	
Discĭpŭlŭs,	pupil	(*disciple*).
Mordĕrĕ,	to bite.	

---

* A single exception will be noticed in another place.

O (*interj.*),	O, *used in direct address.*	
Peccārĕ,	to sin	(*peccant*).
Rēgīnă,	queen.	
Sŏrŏr,	sister.	

58. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Puer jurat. 2. *O mater*, puer jurat. 3. Puer ludēbat. 4. Puer ludēbat, *magister*. 5. Rex saltābat. 6. *O regīna*, rex saltābat. 7. Mater dolēbit. 8. *Soror*, mater dolēbit. 9. Canis mordēbit. 10. *O puer*, canis mordēbit.

11. Mors veniet. 12. Balbus jurābat. 13. Jurābunt. 14. Agricŏla arābit. 15. Arant. 16. Servus peccat. 17. Peccābant. 18. Magister erudiet. 19. Hostis vincet. 20. Vincēbant. 21. Scient. 22. Discēbant. 23. Puella legēbat. 24. Rex imperābat. 25. Nubes movet. 26. Pugnābant. 27. Vincunt.

(*b*) 1. The king will conquer. 2. *O queen*, the king will conquer. 3. The slave was weeping. 4. *Father*, the slave was weeping. 5. The boy is swearing (*swears*). 6. *Master*, the boy is swearing (*swears*). 7. The dog will bite. 8. *Brother*, the dog will bite. 9. They will dance. 10. *Mother*, they will dance. 11. The master will hear. 12. *Sister*, the master will hear. 13. The horse will run. 14. *Daughter*, the horse will run. 15. Death will come. 16. Death will come, *O king*.

17. Caius is ploughing. 18. They will plough. 19. Balbus was fighting. 20. They are fighting. 21. The girl was writing. 22. They will learn. 23. The pupil will learn. 24. The master is teaching. 25. The queen is weeping. 26. They will weep. 27. They were reading. 28. The eagle was flying. 29. The king will command. 30. The mother will teach. 31. The king is conquering. 32. The father will come.

LESSON XI.

Nouns.—Apposition.—Modified Subject.

59. The subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting the same person or thing connected with it to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by the limiting noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.	*Subject modified.*
1. Lătīnŭs rēgnābăt.	2. Lătīnŭs *rex* rēgnābăt.
Latinus was reigning.	Latinus *the king* was reigning.

Rem. 1.—*Rex,* in the above example, limits Lătīnŭs; i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābăt* is not affirmed of every one who may have borne the name Latinus, but only of Latinus *the king*. *Rex* is in the same case as the subject, i. e. *nominative,* and is said to be in *apposition* with it.

Rem. 2.—The noun in apposition is generally placed after the noun which it limits, as in the above example; if, however, it is *emphatic,* it is placed before that noun.

60. Vocabulary.

Aurŭm,	gold.	
Crescĕrĕ,	to grow, to wax (as moon)	(*crescent*).
Faustŭlŭs,	Faustulus, *an Italian shepherd.*	
Lătīnŭs,	Latinus, *a king of Latium.*	
Lavīniă,	Lavinia, *daughter of Latinus.*	
Lūnă,	moon	(*lunar*).
Mīcārĕ,	to glitter, to shine.	
Mīlĕs,	soldier	(*military*).
Nŭmă,	Numa, *second king of Rome.*	
Pastŏr,	shepherd	(*pastor, pastoral*).

Rēgnārĕ,	to reign	(*regnant, reign*).
Tulliă,	Tullia, *a queen of Rome.*	
Victōriă,	Victoria, *queen of England.*	

61. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Balbus dormiēbat. 2. Balbus *servus* dormit. 3. Latīnus regnābat. 4. Latīnus *rex* vincēbat. 5. Tullia cantābat. 6. Tullia *regīna* saltābit. 7. Caius *pastor* cantābit.

8. Luna crescit. 9. Aurum micat. 10. Lavinia *regīna* regnābat. 11. Currēbant. 12. Current. 13. Pastor ridēbit. 14. Ridēbant. 15. Canis mordēbit. 16. Mordēbunt. 17. Puella nebit. 18. Nebunt.

(*b*) 1. Numa was reigning. 2. *King* Numa was reigning. 3. Faustulus *a shepherd* was singing. 4. *Queen* Victoria was reigning.

5. The boy was ploughing. 6. They were playing. 7. They will write. 8. The queen was weeping. 9. They are weeping. 10. The soldier will fight. 11. The girl will learn. 12. The daughter is spinning. 13. They will spin 14. The boy will fight. 15. They will fight.

LESSON XII.

Nouns.—Genitive Case.—Modified Subject.

62. NOUNS in Latin are declined in five different ways, and are accordingly divided into five classes, called *Declensions*, distinguished from each other by the following

GENITIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	*Dec.* II.	*Dec.* III.	*Dec.* IV.	*Dec.* V.
ae,	ī,	ĭs,	ūs,	ēī.*

EXAMPLES.

	Nominative.	*Genitive.*
Dec. I.	Mūsă, *a muse,*	mūsae, *of a muse.*
II.	Servŭs, *a slave,*	servī, *of a slave.*
III.	Hŏnŏr, *an honor,*	hŏnōrĭs, *of an honor.*
IV.	Fructŭs, *a fruit,*	fructūs, *of a fruit.*
V.	Diēs, *a day,*	diēī, *of a day.*

Rem.—The genitive endings are usually added to the word after the ending of the nominative is dropped; but, as this is not always the case, it becomes necessary, in order to decline a noun correctly, to know both the *nominative* and the *genitive:* accordingly, both these forms are given in the Vocabularies.

63. The *Genitive Case* expresses *possession,* and the *various relations* denoted by the preposition *of,* and accordingly corresponds both to the *English Possessive,* and the *English Objective* with *of;* as, *rēgĭs cŏrōnă,* the king's crown (or the crown of the king); *ămŏr glōriae,* the love of glory.

64. The subject of a proposition may have a noun denoting a *different person* or *thing* connected with it, to explain or limit its meaning. The subject is then said to be *modified* by such noun; e. g.

Subject not modified.	*Subject modified.*
1. Fīliŭs rēgnābĭt.	2. *Rēgĭs* fīliŭs rēgnābĭt.
The son will reign.	The son *of the king* will reign.

Rem.—The genitive *rēgĭs* (of the king), in the above example, modifies *fīliŭs* (the son); i. e. it shows that the predicate *rēgnābĭt*

* In this ending *e* is long except in spĕī, fĭdĕī, and rĕī.

(will reign) is not affirmed of *every* son, but only of the son *of the king*.

a) In the example, the limiting genitive stands before the noun which it limits. This seems to be the more common order, when no *emphasis* is intended, though we often find it reversed.

b) If the noun which is limited by the genitive is *emphatic*, or is a *monosyllable*, it generally stands before the genitive; e. g.

1. Cĭcĕrŏ, *pătĕr* pătriae.
   Cicero, *the father* of (his) country.
2. Lex nātūrae.
   The law of nature.

Rem.—In the first example, *pătĕr* is emphatic, and in the second, *lex* is a monosyllable; they accordingly stand before their genitives.

65. Rule of Syntax.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

1) In the *same* case as that noun, when it denotes the *same* person or thing; e. g. *Lătīnŭs rex*, Latinus the king (59, Rem. 1).
2) In the *genitive*, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g. *Rēgĭs fīlĭŭs*, the son of the king.

66. Vocabulary.*

Agrĭcŏlă,	*Gen.*	ăgrĭcŏlae,	husbandman	(*agriculture*).
Amīcŭs,	"	ămīcī,	friend	(*amicable*).
Balbŭs,	"	Balbī;	Balbus, *a man's name.*	
Caiŭs,	"	Caiī,	Caius, *a man's name.*	
Cănĭs,	"	cănĭs,	dog	(*canine*).
Fīliă,	"	fīliae,	daughter.	

*** The genitive is given in the Vocabulary; and the pupil may determine from the genitive ending to which declension the noun belongs.**

Fīliŭs,	*Gen.* fīlī,	son	(*filial*).
Frātĕr,	" frātrĭs,	brother	(*fraternal*).
Lătīnŭs,	" Lătīnī,	Latinus, *a king of Latium.*	
Mīlĕs,	" mīlĭtĭs,	soldier	(*military*).
Pătĕr,	" pătrĭs,	father	(*paternal*).
Puĕr,	" puĕrī,	boy	(*puerile*).
Rēgīnă,	" rēgīnae,	queen.	
Rex,	" rēgĭs,	king	(*regal*).
Servŭs,	" servī,	slave	(*servant*).
Tulliă,	" Tulliae,	Tullia, *a queen of Rome.*	

67. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Servus dormit. 2. *Balbi* servus dormiet. 3. Filius ludit. 4. *Regis* filius ludēbat. 5. *Regīnae* pater docēbat. 6. Filia ridēbat. 7. Filia *regīnae* ridēbat. 8. Amīcus *regis* cadet.

9. Balbus servus veniēbat. 10. *Balbi* servus dormit. 11. Pastor cantābit. 12. Canis *pastōris* mordēbit. 13. Mordēbunt. 14. Filia *pastōris* nebit. 15. *Regis* amīcus timēbit. 16. Caius, *regis* amīcus, timēbit. 17. Tullia, *regis* filia, cantābat.

(*b*) 1. The brother will conquer. 2. The king will conquer. 3. The brother *of the king* will conquer. 4. The daughter *of the king* is singing. 5. The queen will read. 6. The daughter *of the queen* will read. 7. The father *of Balbus* was laughing.

8. The *shepherd's* dog (the dog *of the shepherd*) will bite. 9. The *boy's* dog will bite. 10. The *husbandman's* dog will play. 11. The soldier will fight. 12. The son *of the soldier* will fight. 13. Latinus the king was conquering. 14. The *shepherd's* daughter (the daughter *of the shepherd*) is spinning.

LESSON XIII.

Nouns.—Accusative Case.—Direct Object of Predicate.

68. EVERY noun consists of two distinct parts, viz:—

1) The *Root*, or that part which remains *unchanged* throughout the various cases of both numbers; as *mūs* in *mūsă*, *mūsae*, and *mūsăm*.
2) The *Endings*, which are added to the root to form these cases; thus, in the forms just noticed, viz., mūsă, mūsae, and mūsăm, the endings are *ă*, *ae*, and *ăm*.

69. In any noun, of whatever declension,

1) The *root* may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular (62); as, *mūsă*, Gen. *mūsae;* root, *mūs: servŭs*, Gen. *servī;* root, *serv: hŏnŏr*, Gen. *hŏnōrĭs;* root, *hŏnōr*, &c.
2) Any *case* may be formed (with a few exceptions) by adding to this root the proper ending.

70. 1) The *Accusative Singular* of *neuter* nouns is the same as the *Nominative;* e. g., Nom. *sceptrŭm*, a sceptre; Accus. *sceptrŭm*.

2) The *Accusative Singular* of *masculine* and *feminine* nouns is formed from the root, by adding one* of the following

ACCUSATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	*Dec.* II.	*Dec.* III.	*Dec.* IV.	*Dec.* V.
ăm,	ŭm,	ĕm,	ŭm,	ĕm.

* If the noun is of the first declension, the learner will, of course, add the ending given for the first declension; if of the second, the ending given for the second; and so on.

EXAMPLES.

	Genitive.	Root. Ending.	Accusative.
Dec. I.	Mūsae, *of a muse;*	mūs -ăm;	mūsăm, *a muse.*
II.	Servī, *of a slave;*	serv -ŭm;	servŭm, *a slave.*
III.	Hŏnōris, *of an honor;*	hŏnōr-ĕm;	hŏnōrĕm, *an honor.*
IV.	Fructūs, *of a fruit;*	fruct -ŭm;	fructŭm, *a fruit.*
V.	Diēī, *of a day;*	di -ĕm;	diĕm, *a day.*

71. The accusative case corresponds very *nearly* to the English objective, and is used after *transitive verbs* and *certain prepositions.*

72. When a verb represents its subject as acting upon some other person or thing, it is said to be *transitive;* and the person or thing upon which the action is exerted, is called its *direct object;* e. g.

Serviŭs *impĕriŭm* admĭnistrăt.
(*Servius the government administers.*)
Servius administers *the government.*

73. In English the object is placed after the verb; thus, *government* is placed after *administers;* but in Latin the object precedes the verb; thus, *impĕriŭm* precedes *admĭnistrăt.*

74. Rule of Syntax.—The *Direct Object* of an action is put in the *accusative.*

75. Vocabulary.

Aedĭfĭcārĕ,		to build	(*edifice*).
Diēs,	*Gen.* diēī,	day.	
Dŏmĭnŭs,	" dŏmĭnī,	master, as owner	(*domineer*).
Epistŏlă,	" epistŏlae, *f.*	letter	(*epistle*).
Laudārĕ,		to praise	(*laud*).
Monstrārĕ,		to show.	
Mors,	" mortĭs, *f.*	death	(*mortal*).

Mūrŭs,	*Gen.* mūrī, *m.*	wall	(*mural*).
Occīdĕrĕ,		to kill.	
Puellă,	" puellae,	girl.	
Sĕnātŭs,	" sĕnātūs, *m.*	senate	(*senate*).
Spērārĕ,		to hope for.	
Terrērĕ,		to terrify.	
Tĭmērĕ,		to fear	(*timid*).
Viă,	" viae, *f.*	way, road.	
Vĭdērĕ,		to see.	
Vītārĕ,		to shun.	

76. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Caius *puellam* laudat. 2. Puer *murum* aedificābat. 3. Rex *puĕrum* ridet. 4. Puer *mortem* vitat. 5. Puella *diem* sperābat. 6. Puella *viam* monstrābit. 7. Servus *domĭnum* occīdit.

8. Puella puĕrum laudat. 9. Rex senātum timet. 10. Puer canem timēbit. 11. Epistŏlam scribit. 12. Puer canem occidēbat. 13. Mortem vitant. 14. Mortem timent. 15. Balbus servus domĭnum timēbit. 16. Balbum servum docent. 17. Balbi filius puĕrum laudābat.

(*b*) 1. The boy will show *the road.* 2. Balbus is building *a wall.* 3. Caius was praising *the boy.* 4. The slave is showing *the way.* 5. The king hopes for *the day.* 6. The girl will shun *the dog.*

7. The dog will bite the girl. 8. Father is writing a letter. 9. The father will praise the daughter. 10. They are building a wall. 11. They are killing the slave. 12. The king's son will play. 13. The king fears death. 14. The death of the father will terrify the son.

LESSON XIV.

Nouns.—Accusative, continued.—Adverbial Modifiers.

77. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Certain qualifying words, called *adverbs*, are often connected with verbs, merely to modify their meaning; e. g.,

1. Mīlĕs *fortĭtĕr* pūgnăt. 2. Mīlĕs *nōn* pūgnăt.
(*The soldier bravely fights.*) (*The soldier not fights.*)
The soldier fights *bravely*. The soldier *does not* fight.

REM.—In these examples, *fortĭtĕr* (bravely) and *nōn* (not) are adverbs modifying *pūgnăt.* In Latin the adverb generally precedes the verb, as in these instances.

78. VOCABULARY.*

Anguĭs, anguĭs, *c.*	snake, serpent.	
Christiānŭs, ī, *m.*	Christian	(*Christian*).
Fortĭtĕr,	bravely.	
Lex, lēgĭs, *f.*	law	(*legal*).
Matĕr, matrĭs,	mother	(*maternal*).
Nēglĭgĕrĕ,	to disregard	(*neglect*).
Nōn,	not.	
Pastŏr, pastōrĭs,	shepherd	(*pastor*).
Pĕcūniă, ae, *f.*	money	(*pecuniary*).
Serviŭs, ī,	Servius, *a man's name.*	
Vox, vōcĭs, *f.*	voice	(*vocal*).

79. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Servius pugnat. 2. Servius *fortĭter* pugnat. 3. Mors Christiānum *non*† terret. 4. Agricŏla anguem timēbit. 5. Agricŏla anguem *non* timēbit. 6. Pater

---

* In this and the following Vocabularies, either the genitive or its ending is given immediately after each substantive.

† In translating *nōn* before a verb, place 'not' after the English tense-sign; thus, nōn terrĕt, *does not terrify*, or *is not terrifying.*

filiam audiēbat. 7. Pater filii vocem audiēbat. 8. Mater vocem neglĭget. 9. Mater filiae vocem *non* neglĭget.

10. Caius legem negligēbat. 11. Christiānus pecuniam neglĭget. 12. Pecuniam neglĭgent. 13. Puĕrum docent. 14. Christiānus mortem non timet.

(*b*) 1. The husbandman will fight. 2. The husbandman will *not* fight. 3. Servius fears death. 4. Servius does *not* fear death. 5. The slave hears the voice of (his) master. 6. The boy was killing the dog. 7. The boy was killing the shepherd's dog. 8. The dog will *not* bite. 9. Servius will avenge the death of the king.

10. They do not fear death. 11. They will fight bravely. 12. Caius is teaching the boy. 13. The daughter of the queen is singing. 14. They did not hear (were not hearing). 15. They will not disregard the law.

LESSON XV.

Nouns.—Dative Case.—Indirect Object of Predicate.

80. THE *Dative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *to* or *for* in English; as, *mūsă*, a muse; Dat. *mūsae*, *to* or *for* a muse.

81. The *Dative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

DATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	*Dec.* II.	*Dec.* III.	*Dec.* IV.	*Dec.* V.
ae,	ō,	ī,	uī,*	ēī.†

* Neuter nouns of the fourth declension are exceptions, as they have the *dative singular* like the *nominative*.

† In this ending *e* is long except in spĕī, fĭdĕī, and rĕī.

EXAMPLES.

	Genitive.	Root.	Ending.	Dative.
Dec. I.	Mūsae, *of a muse;*	mūs	-ae;	mūsae, *to* or *for a muse.*
II.	Servī, *of a slave;*	serv	-ō;	servō, " " *a slave.*
III.	Hŏnōrĭs, *of honor;*	hŏnōr	-ī;	hŏnōrī, " " *an honor.*
IV.	Fructūs, *of fruit;*	fruct	-uī;	fructuī, " " *a fruit.*
V.	Diēī, *of day;*	di	-ēī;	diēī, " " *a day.*

82. The person or thing *to* or *for which* any thing is, or is done, is called an *indirect object;* e. g.,

Balbŭs *puĕrō* viăm monstrăt.
(*Balbus to the boy the way shows.*)
Balbus shows the way *to the boy.*

REM.—In the example it will be observed that the *indirect object* precedes the *direct.* This is the more common order, though not unfrequently reversed.

83. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Any transitive verb may take the *accusative* of the *direct* object and the *dative* of the *indirect* object.

84. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārĕ,	to accuse.	
Bellŭm, ī, *n.*	war.	
Claudĕrĕ,	to shut	(*close*).
Condĕrĕ,	to found, to build.	
Dărĕ,*	to give.	
Dŏmŭs, *dŏmūs,* or *dŏmi, f.*	house	(*domestic*).
Evertĕrĕ,	to pull down, to overthrow.	
Indīcĕrĕ,	to declare (as war).	
Leō, leōnĭs, *m.*	lion.	
Mīlĕs, ĭtĭs, *m.* (rarely *f.*),	soldier	(*military*).

* *Dărĕ* is of the first conjugation, with ă short, contrary to the general rule.

Portă, ae, *f.*	gate	{ (*portal*). (*porter*).
Rĕpĕrīrĕ,	to find.	
Rōmŭlŭs, ī,	Romulus, *the founder of Rome.*	
Sceptrŭm, ī, *n.*	sceptre.	
Urbs, ĭs, *f.*	city	(*urbane*).

85. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Pastor viam monstrat. 2. Pastor *puĕro* viam monstrat. 3. Puer viam monstrābit. 4. Puer *pastōri* viam monstrābit. 5. Servus portam claudet. 6. Servus *regi* portam claudet.

7. Romŭlus urbem condēbat. 8. Agricŏla anguem repĕrit. 9. Miles agricŏlae domum evertet. 10. Regis sceptrum vidēbant. 11. Milĭti viam monstrant. 12. Leōnem timēbant.

(*b*) 1. The slave is building a wall. 2. The slave is building a wall *for the king*. 3. The boy was showing the road. 4. The boy was showing the road *to the husbandman.* 5. The husbandman is showing the road *to the boy.* 6. They will declare war *against the city.*

7. They are founding a city for the queen. 8. They will not disregard the law. 9. They were writing for the king. 10. They will accuse the boy. 11. They were praising the queen. 12. They will praise the queen's daughter. 13. The king will declare war against the senate. 14. The king will give the city to (his) son.

LESSON XVI.

Nouns.—Ablative Case.—Modified Predicate.

86. THE *Ablative Case* in Latin corresponds to the *objective* with *from*, *by*, *in*, or *with* in English; as, *mūsă*, a muse; Abl. *mūsā*, from a muse, or *by*, *in*, or *with* a muse.*

87. The *Ablative Singular* of a noun may be formed by adding to its root one of the following

ABLATIVE ENDINGS.

Dec. I.	*Dec.* II.	*Dec.* III.	*Dec.* IV.	*Dec.* V.
ā,	ō,	ĕ,†	ū,	ē.

EXAMPLES.

	Genitive.	*Root.*	*Ending.*	*Ablative.*
Dec. I.	Mūsae, *of a muse;*	mūs	- ā;	mūsā, *from, in, &c., a muse.*
II.	Servī, *of a slave;*	serv	- ō;	servō, " " " *a slave.*
III.	Hŏnōrĭs, *of honor;*	hŏnōr	- ĕ;	hŏnōrĕ, " " " *honor.*
IV.	Fructūs, *of fruit;*	fruct	- ū;	fructū, " " " *fruit.*
V.	Diēī, *of day;*	di	- ē;	diē, " " " *day.*

88. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *time* of an action; e. g.,

Hiĕmĕ ursŭs dormĭt.
(*In winter the bear sleeps.*)
The bear sleeps (when?) *in winter.*

89. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The time *when* is put in the

* The preposition is, however, often expressed before the ablative, as it is before the objective in English.

† As an exception to this, a few nouns of the third declension form the ablative in ī, as we shall see by-and-by.

ablative without a preposition (i. e., without any word for the English *at*, *in*, &c.)

REM.—The ablative of time often stands first in a sentence, as in the example.

90. The predicate may be modified by a noun denoting the *place* of its action; e. g.,

Ursŭs *in antrō* dormit.
(*The bear in a cave sleeps.*)
The bear sleeps (where?) *in a cave.*

91. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town (227), is generally put in the ablative with a preposition.

☞ The pupil, in preparing his exercises, should imitate the *order* in the examples, whenever nothing is said on the point.

92. VOCABULARY.

Aestās, ātis, *f.*	summer.	
Agĕr, ăgrī, *m.*	field	(*agriculture*).
Antrŭm, ī, *n.*	cave.	
Asĭnŭs, ī, *m.*	ass.	
Avĭs, ĭs, *f.*	bird	(*aviary*).
Dīlăniārĕ,	to tear in pieces.	
Equŭs, ī, *m.*	horse	(*equestrian*).
Hiems, ĕmĭs, *f.*	winter.	
Hortŭs, ī, *m.*	garden	(*horticulture*).
In (*prep. with abl.*),	in.	
Lūcŭs, ī, *m.*	grove.	
Mons, tĭs, *m.*	mountain.	
Prātŭm, ī, *n.*	meadow.	
Ursŭs, ī, *m.*	bear.	

93. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Ursus dormit. 2. Ursus *in antro* dormit. 3. Canis currit. 4. Canis *in horto* currit. 5. Puer ludēbat. 6. Puer *in agro* ludēbat. 7. Hiĕme ursus *in*

antro dormiet. 8. Romŭlus urbem condēbat. 9. Romŭlus urbem *in monte* condēbat. 10. *Hiĕme* ursus *in antro* dormit.

11. Servus regem occīdet. 12. Leo asĭnum dilaniat. 13. Rex regīnam accusābat. 14. Regīna filiam docēbit. 15. In luco ludunt. 16. Leo equum dilaniābit.

(*b*) 1. The boy is playing. 2. The boy is playing *in the garden.* 3. The dog is running. 4. The dog is running *in the meadow.* 5. The bird will not sing. 6. The bird will not sing *in winter.* 7. The daughter was singing *in the grove.* 8. They will walk *in the field.* 9. They will play *in summer.*

10. Balbus will fear Caius. 11. They will fear the queen. 12. He was building a wall. 13. They are building a wall. 14. The queen is walking in the field. 15. The queen's mother was weeping. 16. The slave is showing the boy (to the boy) the way. 17. The slave was shutting the gate. 18. The boy will shut the gate.

LESSON XVII.

*Nouns.—First Declension.**

94. To the *First Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive in *ae* (62). They all end in *ă* (except a few *Greek* nouns. See 174).

95. Latin nouns of this declension are grammatically feminine; unless their gender is determined by their *signification*, according to previous rules (40, 44).

* Having learned in the previous Lessons the *use* of the *several cases* of the Latin language, the pupil will now find little difficulty in mastering the *five declensions* (62) in all the cases of *both numbers*.

96. We have already learned that the root of a noun may always be found from the genitive singular (69, 1), but, as it may *also* be formed without much difficulty from the nominative, it will be well for us to notice, in connection with the different declensions, the manner in which this may be done.

97. In the First Declension,

1) The *root* may be found by dropping the nominative ending *ă*, as *mūsă;* root, *mūs* (69, 1).
2) Any noun *may be declined* (i. e., all the cases of both numbers may be formed) by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Accus.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing.	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ā,
Plur.	ae,	ārŭm,	īs,	ās,	ae,	īs.

PARADIGM.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	Mūs-ă, *a muse.*	Nom.	Mūs-ae, *muses.*
Gen.	Mūs-ae, *of a muse.*	Gen.	Mūs-ārŭm, *of muses.*
Dat.	Mūs-ae, *to, for a muse.*	Dat.	Mūs-īs, *to, for muses.*
Acc.	Mūs-ăm, *a muse.*	Acc.	Mūs-ās, *muses.*
Voc.	Mūs-ă, *O muse.*	Voc.	Mūs-ae, *O muses.*
Abl.	Mūs-ā, *from, &c. a muse.*	Abl.	Mūs-īs, *from, &c. muses.*

98. VOCABULARY.*

Apĕrīrĕ,	to open, to uncover	(*aperture*).
Aquĭlă, ae,	eagle	(*aquiline*).
Căpŭt, ĭtĭs, *n.*	head	(*capital*).
Cŏlumbă, ae,	dove.	

* The pupil must apply rules for gender

Cŏrōnă, ae,	**garland, crown**	***(coronation).***
Dŏlŏr, ōrĭs, *m.*	**pain, grief, sorrow**	***(dolorous).***
Luscĭniă, ae,	**nightingale.**	
Rīdērĕ,	**{ to laugh, to laugh at }**	***(ridicule).***
Sentīrĕ,	**{ to feel, to perceive by the senses.**	
Vincīrĕ,	**{ to bind, to bind up.**	

99. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Puellae saltant. 2. Aquĭlae volant. 3. Regīna puellas docēbit. 4. Tulliae filiae ridēbunt. 5. Tulliae filias ridēbit. 6. Aquĭla columbas occīdet. 7. Lusciniae cantābant.

8. Balbus vocem audit. 9. Caius dolōrem vitābit. 10. Puellae dolōrem sentiunt. 11. Servus epistŏlas scribit. 12. Puer caput vinciēbat. 13. Regīna puellae corōnam dabit. 14. Regīna puellis corōnas dabit.

(*b*) 1. The girl was writing a letter. 2. The girls are writing letters. 3. The queen will call (her) daughter. 4. The queen is calling (her) daughters. 5. Tullia will give a garland to her daughter.

6. They will give garlands to (their) daughters. 7. He is reading the queen's letter. 8. They are reading the girls' letters (the letters of the girls). 9. They will show the way to the queen. 10. The husbandman will shut the gate. 11. The doves will fly. 12. The nightingales are singing. 13. The boy hears (his) father's voice. 14. The boy is opening the letters. 15. The slave will open (his) master's letters.

LESSON XVIII.

Nouns.—Second Declension.—Nouns in ŭs *and* ŭm.

100. To the *Second Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *ī* (62). They end in *ŭs*, *ŭm*, *ĕr*, and *ĭr* (except a few Greek nouns. See 174).

101. In this declension nouns in *ŭm* are grammatically *neuter;* and the *rest* (with a few exceptions*) are grammatically *masculine;* unless their gender is determined by their signification, according to previous rules (40, 44).

102. In nouns in *ŭs* and *ŭm*, of this declension, the *root* is found by dropping the *nominative ending;* as, *serv-ŭs*, a slave; root, *serv: rēgn-ŭm*, a kingdom; root, *rēgn*.

103. Nouns in *ŭs* are declined by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Accus.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing.	ŭs,	ī,	ō,	ŭm,	ĕ,†	ō,
Plur.	ī,	ōrŭm,	īs,	ōs,	ī,	īs.

* It has not been thought best to burden the memory of the learner with *lists* of exceptions, at this early stage of his study. Accordingly, *general rules*, covering the great majority of cases, are given for *immediate* and *constant use*, thus the pupil may fix the general principles of the language, and become better prepared to understand and recollect the exceptions as they occur in his lessons. Such exceptions, whether pertaining to gender or other subjects, will be marked in the Vocabularies.

† The vocative singular, in nouns in *ŭs* of this declension, is not like the nominative (see 55 and note). Proper nouns in *iŭs* drop the ending *ĕ* in the vocative singular; as, *Tullius* (proper name), Voc. *Tullī*. *Fīliŭs*, a son, and *gĕnīŭs*, a guardian angel, also drop the ending *ĕ* in the vocative singular.

PARADIGM.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	Serv-ŭs, *a slave.*	Nom.	Serv-ī, *slaves.*
Gen.	Serv-ī, *of a slave.*	Gen.	Serv-ōrŭm, *of slaves.*
Dat.	Serv-ō, *to, for a slave.*	Dat.	Serv-īs, *to, for slaves.*
Acc.	Serv-ŭm, *a slave.*	Acc.	Serv-ōs, *slaves.*
Voc.	Serv-ĕ, *O slave.*	Voc.	Serv-ī, *O slaves.*
Abl.	Serv-ō, *from, by a slave.*	Abl.	Serv-īs, *from, by slaves.*

REM.—It will be well for the pupil to accustom himself to compare the several cases with each other, and to associate together such as are alike, or nearly so.

104. Nouns in *ŭm* are declined by adding to the root the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Accus.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing.	ŭm,	ī,	ō,	ŭm,	ŭm,	ō,
Plur.	ă,	ōrŭm,	īs,	ă,	ă,	īs.

PARADIGM.

Singular.		*Plural.*	
Nom.	Rēgn-ŭm, *a kingdom.*	Nom.	Rēgn-ă, *kingdoms.*
Gen.	Rēgn-ī, *of a kingdom.*	Gen.	Rēgn-ōrŭm, *of kingdoms.*
Dat.	Rēgn-ō, *to, for a kingdom.*	Dat.	Rēgn-īs, *to, for kingdoms.*
Acc.	Rēgn-ŭm, *a kingdom.*	Acc.	Rēgn-ă, *kingdoms.*
Voc.	Rēgn-ŭm, *O kingdom.*	Voc.	Rēgn-ă, *O kingdoms.*
Abl.	Rēgn-ō, *from, by a kingdom.*	Abl.	Rēgn-īs, *from, by kingdoms.*

REM. 1.—In neuters of all declensions, the *nom., acc.,* and *voc.* are alike in each number, and in the plural end in *ă*, as in the paradigm just given.

REM. 2.—Neuters in *ŭm* are declined like masculines in *ŭs* of this declension, except in the cases just mentioned (*nom., acc.,* and *voc.*). Compare paradigms.

105. Vocabulary.

Agnŭs, ī,	lamb.	
Discĭpŭlŭs, ī,	pupil	(*disciple*).
Dŏmĭnŭs, ī,	master, as owner	(*domineer*).
Gĕrĕrĕ,	to carry on, to wage (as war).	
Haedŭs, ī,	kid.	
Lŭpŭs, ī,	wolf.	
Măgistĕr, trī,	master, as teacher	(*magisterial*).

106. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Caius Balbum docēbat. 2. Balbus Caium docēbat. 3. Servus domĭnum occīdet. 4. Servi domĭnos timent. 5. Balbus filios laudābit. 6. Servus domĭni filios timet. 7. Servi dominōrum filios timēbunt.

8. Puellae dolōrem sentiēbant. 9. Servi muros aedificābunt. 10. Pastor filiis canem dabit. 11. Pastor filiābus* haedum dabit.

(*b*) 1. Balbus will instruct the slave. 2. Caius will punish the pupil. 3. They will instruct (their) pupils. 4. The slaves will fear Balbus. 5. The master was punishing (his) slaves. 6. Caius will kill the wolf. 7. Wolves will kill lambs. 8. The wolves do not see (see not) the kids.

9. Caius was waging war. 10. They are waging wars. 11. Balbus will fight. 12. The sons of Balbus will fight. 13. The master is teaching the boys. 14. The master is teaching his pupils in the garden. 15. The girls were walking in the garden. 16. He was playing in the meadow. 17. They will play in the fields. 18. The slaves were reading (their) master's letters.

---

* Fīliă has the dative and ablative plur. in *ābŭs*, to distinguish it from the same cases of *fīlĭŭs*.

LESSON XIX.

Nouns.—Second Declension, continued.—Nouns in ĕr *and* ĭr.

107. NOUNS in *ĕr* and *ĭr*, of the second declension, have the *nominative* and *vocative singular* alike, and in all the other cases are declined like *servŭs* (103), with the single exception that most nouns in *ĕr* drop *ĕ* in the root.

PARADIGMS.

1. Gĕnĕr, a son-in-law: root, *gĕnĕr* (ĕ not dropped).

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	Gĕnĕr, *a son-in-law.*	Nom.	Gĕnĕr-ī, *sons-in-law.*
Gen.	Gĕnĕr-ī, *of son-in-law.*	Gen.	Gĕnĕr-ōrum, *of sons-in-law.*
Dat.	Gĕnĕr-ō, *to son-in-law.*	Dat.	Gĕnĕr-īs, *to sons-in-law.*
Acc.	Gĕnĕr-ŭm, *son-in-law.*	Acc.	Gĕnĕr-ōs, *sons-in-law.*
Voc.	Gĕnĕr, *O son-in-law.*	Voc.	Gĕnĕr-ī, *O sons-in-law.*
Abl.	Gĕnĕr-ō, *from son-in-law.*	Abl.	Gĕnĕr-īs, *from sons-in-law.*

2. Agĕr, a field: root, *ăgr* (ĕ dropped).

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	Agĕr, *a field.*	Nom.	Agr-ī, *fields.*
Gen.	Agr-ī, *of a field.*	Gen.	Agr-ōrŭm, *of fields.*
Dat.	Agr-ō, *to a field.*	Dat.	Agr-īs, *to fields.*
Acc.	Agr-ŭm, *a field.*	Acc.	Agr-ōs, *fields.*
Voc.	Agĕr, *O field.*	Voc.	Agr-ī, *O fields.*
Abl.	Agr-ō, *from a field.*	Abl.	Agr-īs, *from fields.*

☞ Vĭr (*a man*) and its compounds are the only nouns in *ĭr*, and are declined like *gĕnĕr*.

108. VOCABULARY.

Armĭgĕr, ī,	armor-bearer.
Dīlĭgentiă, ae,	diligence.
Gĕnĕr, ī,	son-in-law.
Lĭbĕr, lĭbrī,	book.
Vulpēs, īs, *f.*	fox.

109. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Puer in agro ludit. 2. Pueri in agris ludēbant. 3. Magister puĕros docēbit. 4. Magistri discipŭlos docēbunt. 5. Magister puĕris libros dabit. 6. Armigĕrum occidēbant.

7. Pater diligentiam (64, *b*) filiōrum laudābat. 8. Regīnae filia in luco ambulābat. 9. Lusciniae in lucis cantant. 10. Magistri legem non neglĭgent. 11. Puĕri vulpem non occīdent.

(*b*) 1. The boy was running in the fields. 2. The boys will run in the fields. 3. The boys saw the master's book. 4. The pupils will give the master a book (a book to the master). 5. They will give books to (their) masters. 6. He will punish the armor-bearer. 7. He will accuse (his) son-in-law. 8. They will accuse (their) sons-in-law.

9. The master was praising (his) pupils. 10. The master was praising the diligence of (his) pupils. 11. The pupils do not hear the master. 12. The slaves will shut the gates of the city. 13. The boys were reading in the garden. 14. The girls are reading in the meadow.

LESSON XX.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.

110. THE *Adjective* is that part of speech which is used to qualify substantives; as, *bŏnŭs*, good; *māgnŭs*, great.

111. The form of the adjective often depends, in part, upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies;

e. g., Bŏnŭs puĕr, *a good boy;* Bŏnă puellă, *a good girl;* and Bŏnŭm rēgnum, *a good kingdom.* Thus, *bŏnŭs* is the form of the adjective when used with *masc.* nouns, *bŏnă* with *fem.*, and *bŏnŭm* with *neuter.*

112. These three forms of the adjective are declined like nouns of the same endings. Thus, the masculine is declined like *servŭs* (103), and is accordingly of the *second* declension; the feminine like *mūsă* (97), and is of the *first* declension; and the neuter like *rēgnŭm* (104), and is of the *second* declension.

PARADIGM.

Bŏnŭs, good.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
	SINGULAR.		
Nom.	Bŏn-ŭs,	bŏn-ă,	bŏn-ŭm.
Gen.	Bŏn-ī,	bŏn-ae,	bŏn-ī.
Dat.	Bŏn-ō,	bŏn-ae,	bŏn-ō.
Acc.	Bŏn-ŭm,	bŏn-ăm,	bŏn-ŭm.
Voc.	Bŏn-ĕ,	bŏn-ă,	bŏn-ŭm.
Abl.	Bŏn-ō,	bŏn-ā,	bŏn-ō.
	PLURAL.		
Nom.	Bŏn-ī,	bŏn-ae,	bŏn-ă.
Gen.	Bŏn-ōrŭm,	bŏn-ārŭm,	bŏn-ōrŭm.
Dat.	Bŏn-īs,	bŏn-īs,	bŏn-īs.
Acc.	Bon-ōs,	bŏn-ās,	bŏn-ă.
Voc.	Bŏn-ī,	bŏn-ae,	bŏn-ă.
Abl.	Bŏn-īs,	bŏn-īs,	bŏn-īs.

Rem.—Adjectives like the above are called adjectives of the *First* and *Second Declension,* because they are declined like nouns of these declensions; the masc. and neut. being declined like nouns of the second declension, and the fem. like those of the first.

113. Some adjectives of this declension have the *nom.* and *voc. sing.* in *ĕr*, like nouns in *ĕr* of the second declension. These, in all their other forms, are de-

clined like *bŏnŭs* in the Paradigm above, with the exception, that most of them drop ĕ before *r* of the *root* in all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. Tĕnĕr, tender: root, *tĕnĕr* (ĕ not dropped).

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	Tĕnĕr,	tĕnĕr-ă,	tĕnĕr-ŭm.
Gen.	Tĕnĕr-ī,	tĕnĕr-ae,	tĕnĕr-ī.
Dat.	Tĕnĕr-ō,	tĕnĕr-ae,	tĕnĕr-ō.
Acc.	Tĕnĕr-ŭm,	tĕnĕr-ăm,	tĕnĕr-ŭm.
Voc.	Tĕnĕr,	tĕnĕr-ă,	tĕnĕr-ŭm.
Abl.	Tĕnĕr-ō,	tĕnĕr-ā,	tĕnĕr-ō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	Tĕnĕr-ī,	tĕnĕr-ae,	tĕnĕr-ă.
Gen.	Tĕnĕr-ōrŭm,	tĕnĕr-ārŭm,	tĕnĕr-ōrum.
Dat.	Tĕnĕr-īs,	tĕnĕr-īs,	tĕnĕr-īs.
Acc.	Tĕnĕr-ōs,	tĕnĕr-ās,	tĕnĕr-ă.
Voc.	Tĕnĕr-ī,	tĕnĕr-ae,	tĕnĕr-ă.
Abl.	Tĕnĕr-īs,	tĕnĕr-īs,	tĕnĕr-īs.

2. Aegĕr, sick: root, *aegr* (ĕ dropped).

SINGULAR.

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	Aegĕr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ŭm.
Gen.	Aegr-ī,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ī.
Dat.	Aegr-ō,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ō.
Acc.	Aegr-ŭm,	aegr-ăm,	aegr-ŭm.
Voc.	Aegĕr,	aegr-ă,	aegr-ŭm.
Abl.	Aegr-ō,	aegr-ā,	aegr-ō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	Aegr-ī,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Gen.	Aegr-ōrŭm,	aegr-ārŭm,	aegr-ōrŭm.
Dat.	Aegr-īs,	aegr-īs,	aegr-īs.
Acc.	Aegr-ōs,	aegr-ās,	aegr-ă.
Voc.	Aegr-ī,	aegr-ae,	aegr-ă.
Abl.	Aegr-īs,	aegr-īs,	aegr-īs.

REM.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *īŭs* (the *i* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *ī* in all genders, viz.: *ălīŭs*, another; *nullŭs*, no one; *sōlŭs*, alone; *tōtŭs*, the whole; *ullŭs*, any; *ūnŭs*, one; *altĕr*, the other; *neutĕr*, neither · and *ŭtĕr*, which (of the two).

114. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Adjectives agree with the nouns which they qualify, in *gender*, *number*, and *case;* e. g.,

> Mātĕr *bŏnăm* fīliăm laudăt.
> (*The mother* (*her*) *good daughter praises*).
> The mother praises her *good* daughter.

REM. 1.—The adjective *bŏnăm* is in the *feminine accusative singular*, to agree with its noun *fīliăm*.

REM. 2.—The position of the adjective seems to depend principally upon *emphasis;* and accordingly the adjective *precedes* or *follows* its noun, according as it is or is not emphatic. In the example, *bŏnăm* is emphatic.

REM. 3.—*Meŭs*, my; *tuŭs*, your (or thy); *suŭs*, his, her, &c., though called *adjective pronouns* (273 and 295), are in declension and agreement really adjectives. They usually follow their nouns: e. g.,

> Mŭliĕr ancillăm suăm excĭtăt.
> (*The woman maid her awakens.*)
> The woman awakens her maid.

115. VOCABULARY.

Bĕnīgnŭs, ă, ŭm,	kind	(*benign*).
Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm,	good.	
Magnŭs, ă, ŭm,	large, great	(*magnitude*).
Meŭs,* ă, ŭm,	my.	
Pulchĕr, chră, chrŭm,	beautiful.	
Sĕpĕlīrĕ,	to bury.	
Stŭdiōsŭs, ă, ŭm,	studious.	
Suŭs,† ă, um,	his, her, its, their.	
Tuŭs, ă, ŭm,	your, thy.	

---

* Voc. sing. masc. is *mī*.

† The meaning of this word depends in part upon the *gender* and *number* of the subject of the proposition in which it is used. Thus, in the

116. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Regīna puĕros laudābat. 2. Regīna puĕros bonos laudābat. 3. Pater filium *suum*[a] docēbat. 4. Mater filias *suas* amābit. 5. Bona mater filias *suas* amābit.

6. Magister puĕros docēbit. 7. Bonus magister studiōsos puĕros docēbit. 8. Agricŏlae anguem non timēbunt. 9. Caius bonam legem non neglĭget. 10. Christiāni legem bonam non neglĭgunt. 11. Pater meus in prato ambŭlat.

(*b*) 1. The father was burying *his*[a] son. 2. They are burying *their*[a] sons. 3. My friend does not hear my voice. 4. The daughters love (their) kind mother. 5. The mother will instruct her beautiful daughters.

6. Caius disregards the law. 7. They disregard the good laws. 8. The boys are killing your dog. 9. Good boys will not kill dogs. 10. Your dog will kill the wolf 11. Dogs will kill large wolves.

LESSON XXI.

Adjectives of the First and Second Declension, continued.

117. The noun which the adjective qualifies is often omitted in Latin; and then in translating into English the word *man* must be supplied, if the adjective is masc. sing.; *woman*, if fem. sing.; and *thing*, if neuter sing.; e. g.,

---

above example (Mŭliĕr ancillăm suăm excĭtăt), *suăm* means *her*, because the subject *mŭliĕr* is *fem. sing.*; with a masculine subject it would mean *his*, and with a plural subject, *their*, &c.

Avārŭs pĕcūniăm ămăt.
(*The avaricious (man) money loves.*)
The avaricious man loves money.

Rem.—After a plur. adjec. the noun is sometimes expressed and sometimes omitted in the Eng. translation; thus, *ăvārī* may be translated *avaricious men*, or simply *the avaricious*.

118. When a noun is limited by a genitive, one or both nouns may be qualified by an adjective; e. g.,

1. Māgnă rēgĭs cŏrōnă.
(*The great of the king crown.*)
The king's great crown.

2. Māgnă bŏnī rēgĭs cŏrōnă.
(*The great of the good king crown.*)
The good king's great crown.

119. Vocabulary.

Aureŭs, ă, ŭm,	**golden.**
Avārĭtiă, ae,	**avarice.**
Avārŭs, ă, ŭm,	**avaricious.**
Impiŭs, ă, ŭm,	**impious.**
Indoctŭs, ă, ŭm,	**unlearned.**
Lăbŏr, ōrĭs, *m.*	**labor.**
Poētă, ae, *m.*	**poet.**
Săpientiă, ae,	**wisdom.**
Vindĭcārĕ	**to avenge.**

120. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Auream regis corōnam vidēbant. 2. Servi magnam regis corōnam vidēbunt. 3. Balbi domum evertent. 4. Impii domum evertēbant. 5. Indoctus sapientiam laudābat.

6. Magnum boni regis sceptrum timēbunt. 7. Amīci sapientiam tuam laudant. 8. Christiāni avaritiam vitābunt. 9. Mater bonas filias laudābat.

(*b*) 1. He disregards his slave's labor. 2. He disre-

gards his slave's great labor. 3. The beautiful daughters of the queen will dance. 4. The poet was holding the beautiful crown. 5. The poet was holding the good queen's beautiful crown. 6. The good (man) will not disregard the law. 7. The poet will *laugh at*[f] the unlearned (man). 8. The good will not fear death.

9. They will avenge the death of their father. 10. They were avenging the death of the good (woman). 11. The impious (man) will fear death. 12. The poet will build a beautiful house.

LESSON XXII.

Nouns and Adjectives.—First and Second Declension, continued.—Price, Value, and Degree of Estimation.

121. THE predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun or adjective denoting *price*, *value*, or *degree of estimation*; e. g.,

1. Avārŭs pătriăm aurō vendĕt.

(*The avaricious* (*man*) (*his*) *country for gold will sell.*)

The avaricious man will sell his country for gold.

2. Avārŭs pĕcūniăm māgnī aestĭmăt.

(*The avaricious* (*man*) *money at a great* (*price*) *values.*)

The avaricious man values money at a great price (*or* highly).

122. RULE OF SYNTAX.—*Price*, when expressed by nouns, is generally put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, generally in the genitive.

REM. 1.—The genitive of a few nouns and the ablative of a few adjectives sometimes occur in expressions of price and value.

REM. 2.—In example 1. the noun *aurō* is in the ablative, and in example 2. the adjective *māgnī* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

123. VOCABULARY.

Aestĭmārĕ,	to value	(*estimate*).
Aurŭm, ī,	gold.	
Magnī,	at a great price, at a high price.	
Magnī aestĭmārĕ,	to prize highly, to think highly of.	
Parvī,	at a little price, at a low price.	
Parvī aestĭmārĕ,	to think little of.	
Pătriă, ae,	native country	(*patriotic*).
Prōdĭtŏr, ōrĭs,	traitor.	
Vendĕrĕ,	to sell	(*vend*).
Vērŭs, ă, ŭm,	true, real.	
Virtūs, ūtĭs, *f.*	virtue.	

124. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Impius patriam auro vendēbat. 2. Prodĭtor patriam *parvi*[3] aestimābit. 3. Caius amīci sui labōrem *parvi* aestĭmat. 4. Boni virtūtem *magni*[3] aestĭmant.

5. Rex servum *magni* aestimābit. 6. Regīna aurĕam corōnam *magni* aestĭmat. 7. Magnam urbis portam claudent. 8. Domĭnus servi sui epistŏlas aperiet. 9. Servus puĕros vocābit.

(*b*) 1. The traitor will sell (his) country for gold. 2. Caius values true virtue *at a great* (*price*).[3] 3. The master thinks *little*[3] of[f] the labor of his slave.

4. The poet will feel real sorrow. 5. A father will not disregard the sorrow of his son. 6. The avaricious (man) will value virtue *at a low* (*price*).[3] 7. The avaricious value money *at a high* (*price*).[3] 8. Christians think *little*[3] of[f] money.

LESSON XXIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class I.

125. To the *Third Declension* belong all nouns which have the genitive singular in *ĭs*. They end in *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*, and may be divided into four classes:

1) Those which have the root the same as the nominative singular (except, in a few instances, the omission or change of the radical vowel): as, *mŭliĕr*, a woman; root, *mŭliĕr*.
2) Those which form the root by adding a single letter to the nominative singular: as, *leŏ*, a lion; root, *leōn*.
3) Those which form the root by dropping the ending of the nominative singular: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*.
4) Those which form the root by changing the ending of the nominative singular: as, *piĕtās*, piety; root, *piĕtāt*.

126. Class I.—This class comprises nouns in *c*,* *l*, *n*, *r*, *t*, and *y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel changes:

1) Nouns in *tĕr* and *bĕr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pătĕr*, a father; root, *pătr*.
2) Nouns in *ĕn* generally change *ĕ* into *ĭ* in the root: as, *flūmĕn*, a river; root, *flūmĭn*.
3) Nouns in *ŭt* change *ŭ* into *ĭ* in the root: as, *căpŭt*, a head; root, *căpĭt*.

---

* There are only two nouns with this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *ăl* and *ŏr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

127. Neuter nouns of this declension have the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular alike, and are declined in the other cases by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Accus.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing.	—	ĭs,	ī,	—	—	ĕ (ī).
Plur.	ă (iă),	ŭm (iŭm),	ĭbŭs,	ă (iă),	ă (iă),	ĭbŭs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong only to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Căpŭt, *n.*, *a head.* (root, *căpĭt* [126, 3].)			2. Anĭmăl, *n.*, *an animal.* (root, *same as nom.** [126].)		
	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	Căpŭt,	Căpĭt-ă.	Nom.	Anĭmăl,	Anĭmāl-iă.
Gen.	Căpĭt-ĭs,	Căpĭt-ŭm.	Gen.	Anĭmāl-ĭs,	Anĭmāl-iŭm.
Dat.	Căpĭt-ī,	Căpĭt-ĭbŭs.	Dat.	Anĭmāl-ī,	Anĭmāl-ĭbŭs.
Acc.	Căpŭt,	Căpĭt-ă.	Acc.	Anĭmăl,	Anĭmāl-iă.
Voc.	Căpŭt,	Căpĭt-ă.	Voc.	Anĭmăl,	Anĭmāl-iă.
Abl.	Căpĭt-ĕ,	Căpĭt-ĭbŭs.	Abl.	Anĭmāl-ī,	Anĭmāl-ĭbŭs.

128. Masculine and feminine nouns of this declension are declined, in all the cases except the *nominative* and *vocative singular* (which are alike), by adding to the root the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Accus.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing.	—	ĭs,	ī,	ĕm (ĭm),	—	ĕ (ī).
Plur.	ēs,	ŭm (iŭm),	ĭbŭs,	ēs,	ēs,	ĭbŭs.

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

REM.—The inclosed endings (except that of the genitive plural, which will be noticed again, 141) belong only to a few words.

PARADIGMS.

1. Lăbŏr, *m.*, *labor.*
(root, *same as nom.** [126].)

	Singular	*Plural.*
Nom.	Lăbŏr,	Lăbōr-ēs.
Gen.	Lăbōr-ĭs,	Lăbōr-ŭm.
Dat.	Lăbōr-ī,	Lăbōr-ĭbŭs.
Acc.	Lăbōr-ĕm,	Lăbōr-ēs.
Voc.	Lăbŏr,	Lăbōr-ēs.
Abl.	Lăbōr-ĕ,	Lăbōr-ĭbŭs.

2. Mŭlĭĕr, *f.*, *a woman.*
(root, *same as nom.* [126].)

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	Mŭlĭĕr,	Mŭlĭĕr-ēs.
Gen.	Mŭlĭĕr-ĭs,	Mŭlĭĕr-ŭm.
Dat.	Mŭlĭĕr-ī,	Mŭlĭĕr-ĭbŭs.
Acc.	Mŭlĭĕr-ĕm,	Mŭlĭĕr-ēs.
Voc.	Mŭlĭĕr,	Mŭlĭĕr-ēs.
Abl.	Mŭlĭĕr-ĕ,	Mŭlĭĕr-ĭbŭs.

3. Pătĕr, *a father.*
(root, *patr* [126, 1].)

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	Pătĕr,	Pătr-ēs.
Gen.	Pătr-ĭs,	Pătr-ŭm.
Dat.	Pătr-ī,	Pătr-ĭbŭs.
Acc.	Pătr-ĕm,	Pătr-ēs.
Voc.	Pătĕr,	Pătr-ēs.
Abl.	Pătr-ĕ,	Pătr-ĭbŭs.

4. Frātĕr, *a brother.*
(root, *frātr* [126, 1].)

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	Frātĕr,	Frātr-ēs.
Gen.	Frātr-ĭs,	Frātr-ŭm.
Dat.	Frātr-ī,	Frātr-ĭbŭs.
Acc.	Frātr-ĕm,	Frātr-ēs.
Voc.	Frātĕr,	Frātr-ēs.
Abl.	Frātr-ĕ,	Frātr-ĭbŭs.

129. VOCABULARY.

Brūtŭs, ī,	Brutus, *a Roman consul.*
Caecŭs, ă, ŭm,	blind.
Consŭl, ĭs,	consul, *Roman chief magistrate.*
Fīnīrĕ,	to finish.
Frātĕr, trĭs,	brother.
Lūcērĕ,	to shine.
Mŭlĭĕr, ĕrĭs,	woman.
Sĕnātŏr, ōris,	senator.
Sīrēn, ĭs, *f.*	siren.
Sōl, ĭs, *m.*	sun.
Sŏrŏr, ōrĭs,	sister.

* With the radical vowel lengthened (126, REM.).

130. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Agricŏla labōrem finiēbat. 2. Mulier sorōres accusābit. 3. Brutum consŭlem occidēbat. 4. Senatōres Caesărem occidēbant.

5. Bonus puer caput aperiet. 6. Servi capĭta aperiēbant. 7. Sirēnes cantābant. 8. Sol lucēbat. 9. Caeci solem non vident. 10. Pastōres aurum magni aestĭmant.

(*b*) 1. The boy accuses his brother. 2. They accuse their brothers. 3. The consuls were waging war. 4. The senators fear the consul. 5. The consuls fear the senators. 6. The shepherd values his dog *at a high* (*price*).[2] 7. They will finish their labor.

8. They fear the sirens. 9. Good boys uncover their heads. 10. The blind boy does not see the sun. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The good woman loves (her) beautiful daughters. 13. Good daughters love their mothers. 14. Good mothers instruct their daughters.

LESSON XXIV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class II.

131. Class II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t:* as, *poēmă*, a poem; root, *poēmăt: hydrŏmĕlĭ*, mead; root, *hydrŏmĕlĭt.*

2) Nouns in *o* add *n:* as, *leŏ*, a lion; root, *leōn.*

Rem. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

Rem. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ĭ*, before *n* in the root: as *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgĭn.*

PARADIGMS.

1. Poēma, *n.*, *a poem:* root, *poēmăt* (131, 1).

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Poēmă,	N. Poēmăt-ă.
G. Poēmăt-ĭs,	G. Poēmăt-ŭm.
D. Poēmăt-ī,	D. Poēmăt-ĭbŭs, *or* īs.*
A. Poēmă,	A. Poēmăt-ă.
V. Poēmă,	V. Poēmăt-ă.
A. Poēmăt-ĕ,	A. Poēmăt-ĭbŭs, *or* īs.

2. Sermŏ, *m.*, *a discourse.* (root, *sermōn* [131, 2].)

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Sermŏ,	Sermōn-ēs.
G. Sermōn-ĭs,	Sermōn-ŭm.
D. Sermōn-ī,	Sermōn-ĭbŭs.
A. Sermōn-ĕm,	Sermōn-ēs.
V. Sermŏ,	Sermōn-ēs.
A. Sermōn-ĕ,	Sermōn-ĭbŭs.

3. Virgŏ, *f.*, *a virgin.* (root, *virgĭn* [131, 2. Rem. 2].)

Singular.	*Plural.*
N. Virgŏ,	Virgĭn-ēs.
G. Virgĭn-ĭs,	Virgĭn-ŭm.
D. Virgĭn-ī,	Virgĭn-ĭbŭs.
A. Virgĭn-ĕm,	Virgĭn-ēs.
V. Virgŏ,	Virgĭn-ēs.
A. Virgĭn-ĕ,	Virgĭn-ĭbŭs.

132. Vocabulary.

Accĭpĭtĕr, trĭs, *m.*	hawk.	
Hŏmŏ, ĭnĭs,	man.	
Optiŏ, ōnĭs, *f.*	choice	(*optional*).
Orātiŏ, ōnĭs, *f.*	oration.	
Orātŏr, ōrĭs,	orator.	
Pāvŏ, ōnĭs, *m.*	peacock.	
Poēmă, tĭs, *n.*	poem.	
Sermŏ, ōnĭs, *m.*	discourse	(*sermon*).
Tĭmĭd-ŭs, ă, ŭm,	timid.	
Virgŏ, ĭnĭs,	maiden, virgin	(*virgin*).

* Nouns in *a* generally take the ending *īs* instead of *ĭbŭs* in the dat. and abl. plural.

133. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Pater tuus poemăta legēbat. 2. Poēta sermōnem tuum laudābit. 3. Timĭdae puellae pavōnem timent. 4. Virgĭnes homĭni viam monstrābunt.

5. Bonus puer fratri optiōnem dabit. 6. Puĕri homĭnes timent. 7. Indocti sapientiam *parvi*[3] aestimābunt. 8. Puellae sorōres suas amant.

(*b*) 1. My brother is reading your discourse. 2. The boys will kill the peacock. 3. They will kill the beautiful peacocks. 4. Your mother is reading the poem. 5. The girls are reading poems. 6. The doves fear the hawk. 7. The hawk will kill your dove.

8. The hawks will kill the beautiful doves. 9. Mothers feel real sorrow. 10. The unlearned will laugh at[4] the orator. 11. The poet will hear the oration. 12. The orator prizes wisdom *highly*.[2] 13. The avaricious think *little*[3] of wisdom.

LESSON XXV.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class III.

134. CLASS III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (=*cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*: as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiĕm*.

2) Nouns in *x* (=*cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*: as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.

---

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (131, 1).

3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostĭs*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mărĕ*, a sea; root, *măr*.

PARADIGMS.

1. Urbs, *f.*, *a city.* (root, *urb* [184, 1].)			2. Mărĕ, *n.*, *a sea.* (root, *măr* [184, 3].)		
	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	Urb-s,	Urb-ēs.	N.	Măr-ĕ,	Măr-iă.†
G.	Urb-ĭs,	Urb-iŭm.*	G.	Măr-ĭs,	Măr-iŭm.†
D.	Urb-ī,	Urb-ĭbŭs.	D.	Măr-ī,	Măr-ĭbŭs.
A.	Urb-ĕm,	Urb-ēs.	A.	Măr-ĕ,	Măr-iă.
V.	Urb-s,	Urb-ēs.	V.	Măr-ĕ,	Măr-iă.
A.	Urb-ĕ,	Urb-ĭbŭs.	A.	Măr-ī,†	Măr-ĭbŭs.

3. Arx (cs), *f.*, *a citadel.* (root, *arc* [184, 2].)			4. Rex (gs), *m.*, *a king.* (root, *rēg* [184, 2].)		
	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	Arx,	Arc-ēs.	N.	Rex,	Rēg-ēs.
G.	Arc-ĭs,	Arc-iŭm.*	G.	Rēg-ĭs,	Rēg-ŭm.
D.	Arc-ī,	Arc-ĭbŭs.	D.	Rēg-ī,	Rēg-ĭbŭs.
A.	Arc-ĕm,	Arc-ēs.	A.	Rēg-ĕm,	Rēg-ēs.
V.	Arx,	Arc-ēs.	V.	Rex,	Rēg-ēs.
A.	Arc-ĕ,	Arc-ĭbŭs.	A.	Rēg-ĕ,	Rēg-ĭbŭs.

5. Hostĭs, *c.*, *an enemy.* (root, *host* [184, 3].)			6. Nūbēs, *f.*, *a cloud.* (root, *nūb* [184, 3].)		
	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	Host-ĭs,	Host-ēs.	N.	Nūb-ēs,	Nūb-ēs.
G.	Host-ĭs,	Host-iŭm.	G.	Nūb-ĭs,	Nūb-iŭm.
D.	Host-ī,	Host-ĭbŭs.	D.	Nūb-ī,	Nūb-ĭbŭs.
A.	Host-ĕm,	Host-ēs.	A.	Nūb-ĕm,	Nūb-ēs.
V.	Host-ĭs,	Host-ēs.	V.	Nūb-ēs,	Nūb-ēs.
A.	Host-ĕ,	Host-ĭbŭs.	A.	Nūb-ĕ,	Nūb-ĭbŭs.

* Monosyllables in *s* or *x*, preceded by a consonant, have *ium* in the genitive plural. See 141, 3.

† See 127.

135. Vocabulary.

Arx, arcĭs, *f.*	**citadel, tower**	
Cīvĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.*	**citizen**	***(civil).***
Frŭtex, ĭcĭs, *m.*	**shrub.**	
Grex, ĕgĭs, *m.*	**flock, herd**	***(gregarious).***
Hostĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.*	**enemy**	***(hostile).***
Jūdex, ĭcĭs,	**judge**	***(judicial).***
Pax, pācĭs, *f.*	**peace**	***(pacific).***
Reŭs, ī,	**criminal.**	
Servārĕ,	**to keep, observe**	***(serve).***
Viŏlārĕ,	**to violate.**	

136. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Caius leges violābit. 2. Regīna urbem condēbat. 3. Puĕri magnam urbis portam claudunt. 4. Pastōres arcem condent. 5. Reus judĭcis vocem timet.

6. Cives regem accusābant. 7. Consŭles hostes vincēbant. 8. Pastor gregem *magni*[2] aestĭmat. 9. Boni cives pacem *magni* aestĭmant. 10. Filii patrem vindicābunt. 11. Servus frutĭcem in horto reperiēbat. 12. Impii patriam auro vendunt. 13. Rei judĭcis vocem timēbunt. 14. Prodĭtor patriam *parvi*[3] aestĭmat. 15. Proditōres patriam *parvi* aestimabunt. 16. Agricŏla labōrem finiēbat.

(*b*) 1. The boys will not observe the law. 2. Good citizens observe the laws. 3. They will guard the city. 4. Soldiers will guard the cities. 5. They accuse the judge. 6. The criminals will accuse their judges. 7. The king is violating the law.

8. Slaves fear their masters. 9. Slaves fear the voices of their masters. 10. The king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 11. The shepherd will guard his flock. 12. Shepherds guard their flocks. 13. The poet will

praise the judge. 14. They praise the judges. 15. Christians will observe the laws of the city. 16. He does not observe the laws of the city. 17. Good citizens will not violate the laws. 18. The boy is accusing his sister. 19. They are accusing their fathers. 20. Traitors will sell their country for gold. 21. They think *little*[8] of[f] virtue. 22. They prize money *highly*.[8]

LESSON XXVI.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Class IV.

137. Class IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as, os, us, ls, ns, rs,* and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r, t,* or *d*.

1) Nouns in *as, ls, ns, rs,* and most of those in *es*, *generally* change *s* into *t:* as, *piĕtās*, piety; root, *piĕtāt: mons*, a mountain; root, *mont: ăbiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ăbiĕt: mīlĕs*, a soldier; root, *mīlĭt*. (See Rem. 2, below.)

Rem. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root: as, *ĕlĕphās*, an elephant; root, *ĕlĕphant*.

Rem. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root: as, *mīlĕs*; root, *mīlĭt*.

2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t:* as, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr: săcerdōs*, a priest; root, *săcerdōt: virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt: gĕnŭs*, a kind; root, *gĕnĕr: tempŭs*, time; root, *tempŏr*.

Rem.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ĕ* or *ŏ* in the root, as in these examples.

PARADIGMS.

1. Cīvĭtās, *f.*, *a state.* (root, *cīvĭtāt* [137, 1].)		2. Ars, *f.*, *art.* (root, *art* [137, 1].)	
Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. Cīvĭtās,	Cīvĭtāt-ēs.	N. Ars,	Art-ēs.
G. Cīvĭtāt-ĭs,	Cīvĭtāt-ŭm.	G. Art-ĭs,	Art-iŭm.
D. Cīvĭtāt-ī,	Cīvĭtāt-ĭbŭs.	D. Art-ī,	Art-ĭbŭs.
A. Cīvĭtāt-ĕm,	Cīvĭtāt-ēs.	A. Art-ĕm,	Art-ēs.
V. Cīvĭtās,	Cīvĭtāt-ēs.	V. Ars,	Art-ēs.
A. Cīvĭtāt-ĕ,	Cīvĭtāt-ĭbŭs.	A. Art-ĕ,	Art-ĭbŭs.

3. Mīlĕs, *c.*, *a soldier.* (root, *mīlĭt* [137, 1, Rem. 2].)		4. Corpŭs, *n.*, *a body.* (root, *corpŏr* [137, 2].)	
Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. Mīlĕs,	Mīlĭt-ēs.	N. Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ă.
G. Mīlĭt-ĭs,	Mīlĭt-ŭm.	G. Corpŏr-ĭs,	Corpŏr-ŭm.
D. Mīlĭt-ī,	Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs.	D. Corpŏr-ī,	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs.
A. Mīlĭt-ĕm,	Mīlĭt-ēs.	A. Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ă.
V. Mīlĕs,	Mīlĭt-ēs.	V. Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ă.
A. Mīlĭt-ĕ,	Mīlĭt-ĭbŭs.	A. Corpŏr-ĕ,	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs.

138. The Latin, like every other language, has certain forms of expression peculiar to itself, called *Idioms:** e. g.,

Alĭquĭd † tempŏrĭs,	something of time	(*Lat. Idiom*).
	some time	(*Eng. Idiom*).
Multŭm † bŏnī,	much of good	(*Lat. Idiom*).
	much good	(*Eng. Idiom*).
Quantŭm † vŏluptatĭs,	how much of pleasure	(*Lat. Idiom*).
	how much pleasure	(*Eng. Idiom*).
Nĭhĭl stăbĭlĭtatĭs,	nothing of stability	(*Lat. Idiom*).
	no stability	(*Eng. Idiom*).

Rem.—These (†) are neuter adjectives used as nouns; they govern the genitive by the rule already given (65).

* These should be carefully compared with the corresponding English. A table presenting the *Differences of Idiom* between the Latin and English is inserted in this volume for the benefit of the learner. See p. 275.

139. Vocabulary.

Alĭquĭd,	something.	
Amittĕrĕ,	to lose.	
Avārĭtiă, ae,	avarice.	
Cīvĭtās, ātis, *f.*	state.	
Corpŭs, ŏris, *n.*	body	(*corporal*). (*corporeal*).
Elĕphās, antĭs, *m.*	elephant.	
Fĭgūră, ae,	figure.	
Hăbērĕ,	to have.	
Imprŏbŭs, ă, ŭm,	bad, wicked.	
Multŭm (*neut. adj.*),	much.	
Multŭm bŏnī,	much good.	
Multŭm tempŏris,	much time.	
Nĭhĭl (*indec.*),	nothing.	
Perdĕrĕ,	to waste	(*perdition*).
Quantŭm (*neut. adj.*),	how much?	
Săcerdōs, ōtĭs, *m.* and *f.*	priest, priestess.	
Stăbĭlĭtās, ātĭs, *f.*	firmness, stability	(*stability*).
Tempŭs, ŏrĭs, *n.*	time.	
Vŏluptās, ātĭs, *f.*	pleasure	(*voluptuous*).

140. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Avaritia *nihil* habet *voluptātis.*[4] 2. Multum *tempŏris* perdēbat. 3. Figūra *nihil* habet *stabilitātis.* 4. Imprŏbi leges civitātis violābunt. 5. Servus elephantis corpus puĕro monstrābat.

6. Imprŏbi virtūtem parvi[3] aestĭmant. 7. Milĭtes urbem custodient. 8. Sacerdōtes bonam legem non violābunt. 9. Discipŭli *multum tempŏris* perdunt. 10. Indocti *multum voluptātis* amittunt.

(*b*) 1. The boy will waste much time.[4] 2. They will lose *much pleasure.* 3. The state will observe its laws. 4. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 5. The king will punish the soldiers.

6. The priests were praising the queen. 7. The good queen will praise the priests. 8. The soldiers will fear the enemy. 9. The good value wisdom *highly*.[2] 10. He will laugh at[f] the unlearned. 11. He is losing *much time*. 12. The unlearned lose *much pleasure*.

LESSON XXVII.

Nouns.—Third Declension, continued.—Genitives in iŭm.—*Gender.*

141. It has already been mentioned (128, Rem.) that some nouns of the third declension have the genitive plural in *iŭm* instead of *ŭm*. These are,

1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: as, *mărĕ*, *măriŭm*; *ănĭmăl*, *ănĭmāliŭm*.
2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.: as, *hostĭs*, *hostiŭm*; *nūbēs*, *nūbiŭm*.
3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant: as, *urbs*, *urbiŭm*; *arx*, *arciŭm*.
4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ŭm* is sometimes used): as, *cliens*, *clientiŭm*; *cohors*, *cohortiŭm*.

Rem.—The use of *iŭm* in words not included in the above classes must be learned from observation.

142. The gender of nouns of the third declension, when not determined by their signification (40, 44), may generally be ascertained from their *endings*, by the following

RULES FOR GRAMMATICAL GENDER.

1) *Masculines*.—Most nouns in *er*, *or*, *os es*, increasing in the genitive, and *o*, except *do*, *go*,

and *io*, are masculine; e. g., *āĕr*, air; *hŏnŏr*, honor; *flōs*, a flower; *pēs* (gen. pĕdĭs), a foot; *sermŏ*, a discourse.

2) *Feminines.*—Most nouns in *do*, *go*, *io*, *as*, *is*, *ys* *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, *x*, and *es* not increasing in the genitive, are feminine; e. g., *ărundŏ*, a reed; *ĭmāgŏ*, an image; *ōrātiŏ*, an oration; *aestās*, summer; *turrĭs*, a tower; *laus*, praise; *hiems*, winter; *lex*, a law; *nūbēs* (gen. nūbĭs), a cloud.

3) *Neuters.*—Most nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, *y*, *c*, *l*, *n*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, and *us*, are neuter; e. g., *mărĕ*, a sea; *poēmă*, a poem; *lāc*, milk; *ănĭmăl*, an animal; *flūmĕn*, a river; *căpŭt*, a head, &c.

For exceptions, see *Table of Genders* (579).

143. VOCABULARY

Amīcŭs, i,*	friend	(*amicable*).
Anĭmŭs, i,	mind, soul.	
Carpĕrĕ,	to gather, to pluck.	
Flōs, ōrĭs,	flower	(*floral*).
Ignāvŭs, ă, ŭm,	indolent, cowardly.	
Magnĭtūdŏ, ĭnĭs,	greatness, size	(*magnitude*).

144. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Veram anĭmi magnitudĭnem laudābunt. 2. Christiāni leges bonas non violābunt. 3. Puĕri *multum tempŏris*[4] perdunt. 4. Puer caput aperiet.

5. Servus urbis portas claudit. 6. Servi domĭnum suum vindicābunt. 7. Puer patris vocem audit. 8.

* Gender, when not given, must be determined by previous rules.

Puĕri patrum voces audient. 9. Lupus haedum dilaniābat. 10. Haedi lupos timent.

(*b*) 1. The boys are gathering flowers. 2. He will pluck the beautiful flower. 3. The dog will fear the lion. 4. Dogs fear lions. 5. The girl will waste *much time.*[4] 6. Your fat er will lose *much time.* 7. The indolent lose *much pleasure.* 8. The priests are praising the king.

9. The queen will not violate the laws. 10. The king's son was violating the laws of the state. 11. My friend will not disregard my sorrow. 12. Your friends will not disregard your sorrow.

LESSON XXVIII.

Nouns.—Third Declension.—Formation of Cases from each other.

145. 1) In any noun of the third declension, all the cases, except the nominative and vocative singular (and the accusative sing. in neuters), can be readily formed from each other, by a simple change of the endings: thus, the accusative sing. *hŏnōrĕm* gives (by a change of ending) the dat. *hŏnōrī*, or the dat. and abl. plur. *hŏnōrĭbŭs*, or any other case which may be desired.

2) The *nominative* and *vocative singular* (and *acc. sing. in neuters*) can generally be formed from any other case, in some one of the following ways:

a) By dropping the ending of the given case: as, *hŏnōrĕm*,* Nom. *hŏnŏr*.†

Rem. 1.—This applies to many nouns whose root ends in *l*, *n*, or *r*, and to a few with the root in *it*.

Rem. 2.—*I* is changed before *t* into *ŭ*, and before *n* into *ĭ*; and *ĭ* is inserted before *r* when preceded by *t* or *b* (126, 1); e. g., Gen. *căpĭtĭs*; root, *căpĭt*; Nom. *căpŭt*. Gen. *flūmĭnĭs*; root, *flumĭn*; Nom. *flūmĕn*. Gen. *patrĭs*; root, *patr*; Nom. *pătĕr*.

b) By changing the ending of the given case into *s*, *ēs*, *ĭs*, (or for neuters into) *ĕ*: as, *urbĭs*, Nom. *urbs*; *nūbĕm*, Nom. *nūbēs*, &c.

Rem. 1.—This applies to most nouns of this declension.

Rem. 2.—*T*, *d*, or *r*, at the end of the root, is dropped before *s*, and *ĭ* is changed into *ĕ*; *cs* or *gs* will of course be written *x*; e. g., *pĭĕtātĕm*, Nom. *pĭĕtās* (*t* dropped before *s*); *mīlĭtĕm*, Nom. *mīlĕs* (*t* dropped before *s*, and *ĭ* changed into *ĕ*); *rēgĕm*, Nom. *rex* (regs. = rex).

c) By changing the ending of the given case, together with *ĕr* or *ŏr*, as the last syllable of the root, into *ŭs*: as, *gĕnĕrĭs*, Nom. *gĕnŭs*.

Rem.—This applies only to a few of those words whose root ends in *ĕr* or *ŏr*.

146. The predicate of a proposition may be modified by a noun denoting the *manner* or *cause* of its action, or the *means* or *instrument* employed; e. g.,

> Irăm meăm *dōnō* plācābĭt.
> (*Anger my with a gift he will appease.*)
> He will appease my anger *with a gift.*

147. Rule of Syntax.—The *cause* or *manner* of an

---

* The *acc. sing.* is used here, though any other case would do equally well.

† The *nom.* and *voc.*, it will be remembered, are the same in form.

action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the *ablative*.

REM.—In the above example, *dōnō* expresses the means employed, and is accordingly in the ablative.

148. VOCABULARY.

Altŭs, ă, ŭm,	high, lofty	(*altitude*).
Cătēnă, ae,	chain.	
Cĭngĕrĕ,	to surround.	
Complērĕ,	to fill	(*complement*).
Cunctŭs, ă, ŭm,	all (as a whole).	
Dōnŭm, ī,	gift	(*donation*).
Flūmĕn, ĭnĭs,	river.	
Glădiŭs, ī,	sword.	
Illustrārĕ,	to illumine / to illuminate	(*illustrate*)
Īră, ae,	anger	(*ire*). (*irascible*).
Lux, lūcĭs,	light	(*lucid*).
Mŭliĕr, ĕrĭs,	woman.	
Plācārĕ,	to appease	(*placable*).

149. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Miles regem gladio occidēbat. 2. Regem catēna vinciēbat. 3. Sol urbem magnam sua luce illustrat. 4. Iram dono placant. 5. Cives regis iram donis placābunt. 6. Flumen urbem cingit.

7. Mulier bona epistŏlas scribit. 8. Agricŏla urbis portas claudet. 9. Poetārum filiae cantant. 10. Pulchrae pastōrum filiae saltābunt. 11. Caii anĭmum donis placābunt.

(*b*) 1. The soldiers will bind the king with chains. 2. The river will surround the beautiful city. 3. The boy surrounds his head with a garland. 4. He will surround his sister's head with garlands. 5. He wll

give a beautiful garland to his sister. 6. They will give beautiful garlands to their brothers.

7. They were building a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a high wall. 9. The sun illumines all (things) with its light. 10. The sun fills all (things) with its light. 11. The blind do not see the sun. 12. The blind do not see the light of the sun.

LESSON XXIX.

Adjectives.—Third Declension.

150. ADJECTIVES of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz:

1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).
2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).
3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

151. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension, gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in ĕ or ī, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in ī *only*.
2) That all except comparatives have, in the *plural*, the *nom., acc.*, and *voc. neuter* in *iă*, and the *genitive* in *iŭm*.

CLASS I.—THREE TERMINATIONS.

152. Adjectives of the first class have in the nominative singular the masculine in *ĕr*, the feminine in *ĭs*, and the neuter in *ĕ*.

PARADIGM.

Acĕr, *sharp*.

	SINGULAR.		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	Acĕr,	acr-ĭs,	acr-ĕ.
G.	Acr-ĭs,	acr-ĭs,	acr-ĭs.
D.	Acr-ī,	acr-ī,	acr-ī.
A.	Acr-ĕm,	acr-ĕm,	acr-ĕ.
V.	Acĕr,	acr-ĭs,	acr-ĕ.
A.	Acr-ī,	acr-ī,	acr-ī.
	PLURAL.		
N.	Acr-ēs,	acr-ēs,	acr-iă.
G.	Acr-iŭm,	acr-iŭm,	acr-iŭm.
D.	Acr-ĭbŭs,	acr-ĭbŭs,	acr-ĭbŭs.
A.	Acr-ēs,	acr-ēs,	acr-iă.
V.	Acr-ēs,	acr-ēs,	acr-iă.
A.	Acr-ĭbŭs,	acr-ĭbŭs,	acr-ĭbŭs.

CLASS II.—TWO TERMINATIONS.

153. Adjectives of the second class have both the masculine and feminine in *ĭs*, and the neuter in *ĕ*, except comparatives,* which have the masculine and feminine in *iŏr*, and the neuter in *iŭs*.

* The use of comparatives will be illustrated in connection with the comparison of adjectives.

PARADIGMS.

1. Tristĭs, *sad.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. Trist-ĭs,	trist-ĕ.	N. Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
G. Trist-ĭs,	trist-ĭs.	G. Trist-iŭm,	trist-iŭm.
D. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	D. Trist-ĭbŭs,	trist-ĭbŭs.
A. Trist-ĕm,	trist-ĕ.	A. Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
V. Trist-ĭs,	trist-ĕ.	V. Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
A. Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	A. Trist-ĭbŭs,	trist-ĭbŭs.

2. Tristiŏr (*comparative*), *more sad.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	N. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ă.
G. Tristiōr-ĭs,	tristiōr-ĭs.	G. Tristiōr-ŭm,	tristiōr-ŭm.
D. Tristiōr-ī,	tristiōr-ī.	D. Tristiōr-ĭbŭs,	tristiōr-ĭbŭs.
A. Tristiōr-ĕm,	tristiŭs.	A. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ă.
V. Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	V. Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ă.
A. Tristiōr-ĕ (ī),	tristiōr-ĕ (ī).	A. Tristiōr-ĭbŭs,	tristiōr-ĭbŭs.

CLASS III.—ONE TERMINATION.

154. All other adjectives of this declension have *only one* form in the nominative singular for all genders.

PARADIGMS.

1. Fēlix, *happy.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. Fēlix,	fēlix.	N. Fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīc-iă.
G. Fēlīc-ĭs,	fēlīc-ĭs.	G. Fēlīc-iŭm,	fēlīc-iŭm.
D. Fēlīc-ī,	fēlīc-ī.	D. Fēlīc-ĭbŭs,	fēlīc-ĭbŭs.
A. Fēlīc-ĕm,	fēlix.	A. Fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīc-iă.
V. Fēlix,	fēlix.	V. Fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīc-iă.
A. Fēlīc-ĕ (ī),	fēlīc-ĕ (ī).	A. Fēlīc-ĭbŭs,	fēlīc-ĭbŭs.

PARADIGMS,—*continued.*

2. Prudens, *prudent.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*		*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N.	Prūdens,	prūdens.	N.	Prūdent-ēs,	prūdent-iă.
G.	Prūdent-ĭs,	prūdent-ĭs.	G.	Prūdent-iŭm,	prūdent-iŭm.
D.	Prūdent-ī,	prūdent-ī.	D.	Prūdent-ĭbŭs,	prūdent-ĭbŭs.
A.	Prūdent-ĕm,	prūdens.	A.	Prūdent-ēs,	prūdent-iă.
V.	Prūdens,	prūdens.	V.	Prūdent-ēs,	prūdent-iă.
A.	Prūdent-ĕ (ī),	prūdent-ĕ (ī).	A.	Prūdent-ĭbŭs,	prūdent-ĭbŭs.

155. VOCABULARY.

Acĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ,	sharp, severe	(*acrid*).
Fĭdēlĭs, ĕ,	trusty, faithful	(*fidelity*).
Fortĭs, ĕ,	brave	(*fortitude*)
Glōriă, ae,	glory.	
Măcŭlārĕ,	to blemish, to stain	(*maculate*).
Maxĭmī,	at a very high (price), very highly.	
Maxĭmī aestĭmārĕ,	to prize very highly.	
Pausanĭas, ae,	Pausanias, *a distinguished Spartan general.*	
Prūdens, entĭs,	prudent, cautious.	
Turpĭs, ĕ,	base, disgraceful	(*turpitude*)
Săpiens, entĭs,	wise.	
Splendens, entĭs,	shining	(*splendid*).

156. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Pater meus fidēlem servum vindicābat. 2. Fidēles servi domĭnos suos vindicābunt. 3. Sol splendens cuncta suā luce illustrābat. 4. Sapientes virtūtem *maxĭmi*[2] aestĭmant.

5. Sapiens leges acres non violābit. 6. Christiāni virtūtem laudant. 7. Boni virtūtem *magni* aestimābant. 8. Pausanias gloriam turpi morte maculābat. 9. Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpi morte maculābat.

(*b*) 1. The brave soldier will fight. 2. The brave king will conquer the enemy (*pl.*). 3. The brave will

conquer the cowardly. 4. Wise (men) will not stain their glory by a base death.

5. The good prize the laws of the state *very highly*.[3] 6. Kind masters do not punish faithful slaves. 7. A prudent (man) will not violate the laws of his country. 8. The prudent do not violate severe laws.

LESSON XXX.

Adjectives, continued.—Nouns.—Fourth Declension.

157. ADJECTIVES are either of the *first* and *second declension*, or of the *third only:* those of the first and second declension are declined in the *masculine* and *neuter* like nouns of the *second* declension, and in the *feminine* like nouns of the *first;* those of the third declension are declined throughout like nouns of the *third.* (See Lesson XXIII.)

158. Endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.			*A few‡ have Sing. thus:*		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
	2.*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ŭs, ĕr,†	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ŭs, ĕr,	ă,	ŭm.
G.	ī,	ae,	ī.	ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.	īŭs,	īŭs,	īŭs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ī,	ī,	ī.
A.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ă.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.
V.	ĕ, ĕr,†	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ĕ, ĕr,	ă,	ŭm.
A.	ō,	ā,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ō,	ā,	ō.

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in ĕr, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (ĕ is sometimes dropped): ĕr, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending;* it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

‡ See list, 113, REM.

159. Endings of adjectives of the Third Declension.

	THREE TERM.			TWO TERM.		COMPARATIVES.		ONE TERM.	
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.&F.*	*N.*	*M.&F.*	*N.*	*M.&F.*	*N.*
N.	ĕr,*	ĭs,	ĕ.	ĭs,	ĕ.	ŏr,†	ŭs.	various.	
G.	ĭs,	ĭs,	ĭs.	ĭs,	ĭs.	ōr†-ĭs,	ōr-ĭs.	ĭs.	
D.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī.	ōr-ī,	ōr-ī.	ī.	
A.	ĕm,	ĕm,	ĕ.	ĕm,	ĕ.	ōr-ĕm,	ŭs.	ĕm.‡	
V.	ĕr,*	ĭs,	ĕ.	ĭs,	ĕ.	ŏr,	ŭs.	like nom.	
A.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī.	ōr-ĕ (ōr-ī),	ōr-ĕ (ōr-ī).	ĕ (ī).	
N.	ēs,	ēs,	iă.	ēs,	iă.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ă.	ēs,	iă.
G.	iŭm,	iŭm,	iŭm.	iŭm,	iŭm.	ōr-ŭm,	ōr-ŭm.	iŭm,	iŭm.
D.	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs.	ōr-ĭbŭs,	ōr-ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs.
A.	ēs,	ēs,	iă.	ēs,	iă.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ă.	ēs,	iă.
V.	ēs,	ēs,	iă.	ēs,	iă.	ōr-ēs,	ōr-ă.	ēs,	iă.
A.	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs.	ōr-ĭbŭs,	ōr-ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs,	ĭbŭs.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

160. Nouns of the *Fourth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ūs*, and the nominative in *ŭs* and *ū*.

161. In this declension, nouns in *ŭs* (with a few exceptions) are *masculine*, and those in *ū* are neuter.

162. The root is found by dropping the *nominative ending:* as, *fructŭs*, fruit; root, *fruct: cornū*, a horn; root, *corn*.

163. Nouns in *ŭs* (of the fourth declension) are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Accus.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing	ŭs,	ūs,	uī,	ŭm,	ŭs,	ū.
Plur.	ūs,	uŭm,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs§),	ūs,	ūs,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs§).

* The remark on this ending, in adjectives of the first and second declension, is also applicable here (See 158, REM. 2.)

† The *ŏr* here given in connection with the case-endings belongs to the root; in the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* of the *neut. sing.*, it is changed into *ŭs*

‡ Neut. like nom. § This ending is used only in a few words

164. Neuters in *ū*, though formerly considered indeclinable in the singular, are found to have the genitive in *ūs*, and are declined with the following

NEUTER CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Accus.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing.	ū	ūs,	ū,	ū,	ū,	ū.
Plur.	uă,	uŭm,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*),	uă,	uă,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*).

PARADIGMS.

1. Fructŭs, *m.*, *fruit.* (root, *fruct.*)		2. Cornū, *n.*, *a horn.* (root, *corn.*)	
Singular.	*Plural.*	*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. Fruct-ŭs,	Fruct-ūs.	N. Corn-ū,	Corn-uă.
G. Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-uŭm.	G. Corn-ūs,	Corn-uŭm.
D. Fruct-uī,	Fruct-ĭbŭs.	D. Corn-ū,	Corn-ĭbŭs.
A. Fruct-ŭm,	Fruct-ūs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-uă.
V. Fruct-ŭs,	Fruct-ūs.	V. Corn-ū,	Corn-uă.
A. Fruct-ū.	Fruct-ĭbŭs.	A. Corn-ū,	Corn-ĭbŭs.

165. VOCABULARY.

Currŭs, ūs,	chariot.	
Dux, dŭcĭs, *m. and f.*	leader, guide	(*duke*).
Et,	and.	
Excrŭciārĕ,	to torture	(*excruciate*).
Exercĭtŭs, ūs,	army.	
Innŏcens, entĭs,	innocent.	
Luctŭs, ūs,	grief, sadness.	
Mănŭs, ūs, *f.*	hand	(*manacle*).
Mĕtŭs, ūs,	fear.	
Nescīrĕ,	not to know, to be ignorant of.	
Sĭnŭs, ūs,	bosom	(*sinuous*).
Sullă, ae,	Sulla, *a man's name.*	

* This ending is used only in a few words.

166. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Sinus metum nescit. 2. Luctus anĭmum excruciat. 3. Rex hostium (141, 2) currus videt. 4. Hostes regis currum audient. 5. Duces exercitui viam monstrābunt. 6. Puella epistŏlam sua manu scribit.

7. Caius epistŏlas sua manu scribēbat. 8. Servi Sullae domum evertēbant. 9. Servus domĭni mortem vindicābit. 10. Pastōris filius mortem non timet. 11. Luctus et metus anĭmum excruciant (612, REM.).

(*b*) 1. The innocent (man) knows not fear. 2. The innocent know not fear. 3. The bosom of the innocent knows not fear. 4. The boy's mother will write the letter with her own hand. 5. The father is writing the letters with his own hand.

6. The slave will show the beautiful chariot to his master. 7. The father will avenge the death of his son. 8. Fear tortures the cowardly. 9. Fear does not torture the brave. 10. The cowardly fear death. 11. Brave soldiers do not fear the enemy.

LESSON XXXI.

Nouns.—Fifth Declension.

167. NOUNS of the *Fifth Declension* have the genitive singular in *ēī*,* and the nominative in *ēs*.

168. Nouns of this declension are feminine, except *dĭēs*, a day, masculine and feminine in the singular,

---

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spĕi* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

and masculine only in the plural; and *mĕrīdiēs*, mid-day, masculine.

REM.—The fifth declension comprises only a few words, and of these few, only two,—*diēs*, a day, and *rēs*, a thing, are complete in the plural.

169. The root is formed by dropping the nominative ending: as, *diēs*, a day; root, *di.*

170. Nouns of this declension are declined with the following

CASE-ENDINGS.

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*	*Accus.*	*Voc.*	*Abl.*
Sing.	ēs,	ēī,*	ēī,*	ĕm,	ēs,	ē.
Plur.	ēs,	ērŭm,	ēbŭs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbŭs.

PARADIGMS.

Rēs, *f.*, *a thing.* (root, *r.*)			Diēs, *m. and f.*, *a day.* (root, *di.*)		
	Singular.	*Plural.*		*Singular.*	*Plural.*
N.	R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N.	Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G.	R-ĕī,	R-ērŭm.	G.	Di-ēī,	Di-ērŭm.
D.	R-ĕī,	R-ēbŭs.	D.	Di-ēī,	Di-ēbŭs.
A.	R-ĕm,	R-ēs.	A.	Di-ĕm,	Di-ēs.
V.	R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V.	Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A.	R-ē,	R-ēbŭs.	A.	Di-ē,	Di-ēbŭs.

171. VOCABULARY.

Aciēs, ēī, line of battle.
Aciĕm instruĕrĕ, to draw up an army in order of battle.
Cōpiae,† ārŭm, forces (*copious*).
Diēs, ēī, day.

* See note on page 78.

† Copiae is of the first declension, plural; the singular is not used with this signification.

Edūcĕrĕ,	to lead forth	(*educe*).
Emĕrŏ,	to purchase.	
Equĭtātŭs, ūs,	cavalry.	
Fĭdēs, ĕī,	faith, one's word	(*fidelity*).
Instruĕrĕ,	to arrange, to array	(*instruct*).
Omnĭs, ĕ,	all, every.	
Proxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm,	nearest, next	(*proximate*).
Rĕdūcĕrĕ,	to lead back	(*reduce*).
Servārĕ,	to keep, to observe	(*serve*).
Spēs, ĕī,	hope.	

172. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Christiānus fidem suam servat. 2. Boni fidem suam non viŏlant. 3. Dies veniet. 4. Proxĭmo die (88) Caesar copias suas reducēbat. 5. Proxĭmo die Caesar aciem instruēbat.

6. Caesar equitātum omnem educēbat. 7. Puellam regis currum vidēbat. 8. Hostium (141, 2) copias vidēbunt. 9. Tullia puellis viam monstrābit. 10. Tullia epistŏlam sua manu scribit.

(*b*) 1. The king will keep his word. 2. The queen will not break her word. 3. All (men) prize hope *very highly.*[a] 4. They do not purchase hope with gold. 5. The wise will not sell hope for gold (122).

6. He prizes his cavalry *very highly.* 7. The king thinks *highly* of[f] his whole army. 8. The soldiers will observe the laws. 9. The citizens will observe all the laws of the state. 10. The wise value true greatness of mind *very highly.* 11. The avaricious value money *very highly.*

LESSON XXXII.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.—Greek Nouns.—Gender.

173. Terminations of Substantives.

	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.
	F.	*M.*	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*N.*	*F.*
SINGULAR.								
N.	ă.	ŭs, ĕr, ĭr.	ŭm.	various.		ŭs.	ū.	ēs.
G.	ae.	ī.		ĭs.		ūs.		ēī.*
D.	ae.	ō.		ī.		uī.	ū.	ēī.*
A.	ăm.	ŭm.		ĕm (ĭm).	like nom.	ŭm.	ū.	ĕm.
V.	ă.	ĕ, ĕr, ĭr.	ŭm.	like nom.		ŭs.	ū.	ēs.
A.	ā.	ō.		ĕ (ī).		ū.		ē.
PLURAL.								
N.	ae.	ī.	ă.	ēs,	ă, *or* iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.
G.	ārŭm.	ōrŭm.		ŭm (iŭm).		uŭm.		ērŭm.
D.	īs.	īs.		ĭbŭs.		ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs).		ēbŭs.
A.	ās.	ōs.	ă.	ēs.	ă, *or* iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.
V.	ae.	ī.	ă.	ēs.	ă, *or* iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.
A.	īs.	īs.		ĭbŭs.		ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs).		ēbŭs.

Rem.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek. The only *nominative endings* not already noticed, are *e*, *as*, and *es*, in the first declension, and *os* and *on* in the second.

174. The following are specimens of the declension of Greek nouns.

* See 167, Rem.

DECLENSION I.

1. Aenēās (*a man's name*).	2. Anchīsēs (*a man's name*).
N. Aenē-ās,	N. Anchīs-ēs,
G. Aenē-ae,	G. Anchīs-ae,
D. Aenē-ae,	D. Anchīs-ae,
A. Aenē-ăm (ān),	A. Anchīs-ēn,
V. Aenē-ā,	V. Anchīs-ē (ā),
A. Aenē-ā.	A. Anchīs-ē (ā).

3. Epitome, *an abridgment.*

	Singular.	*Plural.*
N.	Epĭtŏm-ē,	Epĭtŏm-ae.
G.	Epĭtŏm-ēs,	Epĭtŏm-ārŭm.
D.	Epĭtŏm-ae,	Epĭtŏm-īs.
A.	Epĭtŏm-ēn,	Epĭtŏm-ās.
V.	Epĭtŏm-ē,	Epĭtŏm-ae.*
A.	Epĭtŏm-ē,	Epĭtŏm-īs.

DECLENSION II.

1. Ilion, *n.* (*name of a city*).	2. Delos, *f.* (*name of an island*).
N. Ili-ŏn,	N. Dēl-ŏs,
G. Ili-ī,	G. Dēl-ī,
D. Ili-ō,	D. Dēl-ō,
A. Ili-ŏn,	A. Dēl-ŏn,
V. Ili-ŏn,	V. Dēl-ĕ,
A. Ili-ō.	A. Dēl-ō.

DECLENSION III.

1. Pericles (*a man's name*).	2. Hērōs, *a hero.* *Singular.*	*Plural.*
N. Pĕrĭcl-ēs,	N. Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
G. Pĕrĭcl-ĭs,	G. Hērō-ĭs,	Hērō-ŭm.
D. Pĕrĭcl-ī,	D. Hērō-ī,	Hērō-ĭbŭs.
A. Pĕrĭcl-ĕm (eă),	A. Hērō-ĕm (ă),	Hērō-ēs (ās).
V. Pĕrĭcl-ēs (ē),	V. Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
A. Pĕrĭcl-ĕ.	A. Hērō-ĕ,	Hērō-ĭbŭs.

175. Table of Genders of Nouns as determined by Nom. Ending.

	MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Dec. I.	ăs and ēs.	ă and ē.	
Dec. II.	ĕr, ĭr, ŭs (and os*).		ŭm (and on*).
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, increasing in gen. and o, *except* do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, *s* impure,† x and es not increasing in gen.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us
Dec. IV.	ŭs.		ū.
Dec. V.		ēs.	

(For exceptions see Table of Genders [579]).

176. Vocabulary.

Accĭpĕrĕ,‡ to receive, to accept.

Achillēs,§ ĭs, Achilles, *a Grecian hero.*

Aenēās, ae, Aeneas, *a Trojan prince.*

Anchīsēs, ae, Anchises, *the father of Aeneas.*

Ascănius, ī, Ascanius, *the son of Aeneas.*

Carthāgŏ, ĭnĭs, Carthage, *a city in the northern part of Africa.*

---

* The inclosed endings belong to Greek nouns, many of which, being proper names (of men and women), have natural gender.

† Preceded by a consonant.

‡ Accĭpĕrĕ forms its imperfect and future tenses like verbs of the fourth conjugation. (See 270, 271.)

§ Achillēs, being a Greek noun. is declined like Pericles (174).

Dīdō,* ūs, *or* ōnĭs,	**Dido,** *queen of Tyre and afterwards the foundress of Carthage.*	
Epĭtŏmē, ēs,	**abridgment**	***(epitome).***
Hērōs, ōĭs,	**hero.**	
Histŏriă, ae,	**history.**	
Industriă, ae,	**industry.**	
Nostĕr, tră, trŭm,	**our.**	
Rēgnŭm, ī,	**kingdom, government.**	
Rōmă, ae,	**Rome,** *city of Italy, on the river Tiber.*	
Trōjānŭs, ă, ŭm,	**Trojan.**	

177. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Aenēas, Anchīsae filius, urbem condēbat. 2. Ascanius, Aenēae filius, regnum accĭpit. 3. Dido Carthagĭnem condēbat. 4. Epitŏmen oratiōnis suae scribet.

5. Caesar milĭtes omnes educēbat. 6. Industria *multum voluptātis* habet. 7. Labōrem suum finiet. 8. Horti nostri multos flores habent. 9. Servus puĕros vocābit.

(*b*) 1. Aeneas was founding Rome. 2. The son of Anchises was founding Rome. 3. Aeneas, the son of Anchises, was founding the city of Rome (the city Rome). 4. The Trojan hero loves queen Dido. 5. They will kill the Trojan hero.

6. They are reading an abridgment of the history. 7. The soldiers praise Caesar. 8. Aeneas praises his father Anchises. 9. The Trojans fear Achilles. 10. Achilles was slaying the Trojans. 11. The soldier is showing his sword to the boy. 12. They will show their swords to the boys.

---

* Dido is sometimes declined regularly, as a Latin noun of the third declension, and sometimes has the genitive in *ūs*, and all the other cases like the nom.

LESSON XXXIII.

Verbs.—Essĕ, *to be. Predicate,* Essĕ, *with a Noun or an Adjective.*

178. Essĕ, *to be,* is an irregular verb (i. e., it does not belong to either of the four conjugations already noticed), and gives us in the *third persons* of the *present, imperfect,* and *future tenses,* the following

PARADIGM.

		Singular.		*Plural.*
Present.	Est,	he, she, *or* it is,	Sunt,	they are,
Imperfect.	Erăt,	" " " was,	Erant,	" were,
Future.	Erĭt,	" " " will be.	Erunt,	" will be.

179. The predicate of a proposition is sometimes expressed by the verb *essĕ* (to be), with a noun or an adjective; e. g.,

1. Terră est rŏtundă.
The earth is round.

REM. 1.—In this example, the predicate is not simply *est,* but *est rŏtundă;* for the assertion is not that the earth *is* (i. e. exists), but that the earth *is round.*

REM. 2.—The adjective *rŏtundă* agrees with the *subject terră* in *gender, number,* and *case,* by the rule already given. (114).

2. Plūrĭmae stellae sōlēs sunt.
(*Very many stars suns are.*)
Very many stars are suns.

REM.—Here the predicate is *sōlēs sunt.*

180. RULE OF SYNTAX.—A noun in the predicate after *essĕ* is put in the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing.

REM.—In example 2, *sōlēs* is in the nominative by this rule.

181. Rule of Syntax.—The adjectives *dīgnŭs*, *indīgnŭs*, *contentŭs*, *praedĭtŭs*, *frētŭs*, and *lībĕr*, take the ablative; e. g.,

Virtūs *parvō* contentă est.
(*Virtue with little content is.*)
Virtue is content *with little.*

Rem.—*Parvō* in this example is a neut. adj. used as a noun; it is put in the *ablative* after *contentă*, by the rule just given.

182. Vocabulary.

Arbŏr, ŏrĭs, *f.*	tree	(*arbor*).
Beātŭs, ă, ŭm,	happy	(*beatitude*)
Candĭdŭs, ă, ŭm,	white	(*candid*).
Contentŭs, ă, ŭm,	content, contented.	
Culpă, ae,	blame, fault	(*culpable*).
Dīgnŭs, ă, ŭm,	worthy	(*dignity*).
Essĕ,	to be.	
Est,	is, it is.	
Făcĕrĕ,*	to do, to make.	
Flōrērĕ,	to flourish.	
Frētŭs, ă, ŭm,	relying on.	
Indīgnŭs, ă, ŭm,	unworthy	(*indignity*).
Laus, dĭs,	praise	(*laud*).
Lībĕr, ĕră, ĕrŭm,	free	(*liberty*).
Nēmŏ (ĭnis,†)	nobody, no one.	
Nix, nĭvĭs,	snow.	
Nunquăm,	never.	
Parvŭm (*neut. adj.*),	little, a little.	
Praedĭtŭs, ă, ŭm,	endued with.	
Quăm,	how.	
Quăm multī, ae, ă,	how many.	
Sempĕr,	always.	
Vīrēs, vīriŭm, *plur. of* vīs,	strength.	
Vītă, ae,	life	(*vital*).

* This verb, together with some others of the third conjugation, has the imperfect and future like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

† The genitive *neminis* and ablative *nemine* are not in good use.

183. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Nix est candĭda. 2. Bonus est beātus. 3. Boni sunt beāti. 4. Sapientes parvo contenti sunt. 5. Servus laude dignus est. 6. Patris mei servus laude indīgnus est.

7. Caius patriam auro vendēbat. 8. Caius, homo vita indīgnus, patriam auro vendet. 9. Quam multi indīgni luce sunt! 10. Arbor florēbat. 11. Balbus multa laude florēbat.

(*b*) 1. No-one is always happy. 2. The avaricious (man) will never be contented. 3. The avaricious are not contented. 4. Caius is not free from blame. 5. Caius is unworthy of praise.

6. Balbus praises my fidelity. 7. Balbus, a man endued with great virtue, was praising my fidelity. 8. Balbus does *much good.*[4] 9. Caius is unworthy of life. 10. Caius, a man unworthy of life, does *no good.*[4] 11. Caius, relying on his strength, does not fear the lion. 12. The slaves are not free from blame. 13. Christians are contented with little.

LESSON XXXIV.

Verbs.—Infinitive as Subject.—Genitive with Esse *in the Predicate.*

184. An *infinitive mood* (with the words belonging to it) (9) may be used as a noun, and thus become the subject of a verb. When thus used it is in the neuter gender (44, 3), and of course takes the adjectives in agreement with it in the same gender; e. g.,

Diffĭcĭlĕ est jūdĭcārĕ.
(*Difficult* (*it*) *is to judge.*)
It is difficult *to judge*, or, *To judge* is difficult.

Rem.—Here *jūdĭcārĕ* (to judge) is the subject of the proposition, for it is that of which the predicate *difficile est* (is difficult) is affirmed. It is in the nominative case, and subject of the verb *est*, and the adjective *diffĭcĭlĕ* agrees with it.

185. When the noun in the predicate after essĕ does not denote the same person or thing as the subject, it is put in the *genitive;* e. g.,

Christiānī est nēmĭnĕm viŏlārĕ.
(*Of a Christian it is nobody to wrong.*)
It is the duty (or part) of a Christian to wrong nobody.

Rem. 1.—In this example the subject is *nēmĭnĕm viŏlārĕ*, and the predicate, *Christiānī est*.

Rem. 2.—Combining articles 180 and 185 we have the following

186. Rule of Syntax.—A noun in the predicate, after the verb *essĕ*, is put,

1) In the same case as the subject when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., Cĭcĕrō ĕrăt consŭl, *Cicero was consul.*
2) In the *genitive* when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., Christiānī est nēmĭnĕm viŏlārĕ, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

187. In rendering into English, when a genitive follows any part of the verb essĕ (as *est*, *ĕrăt*, *ĕrĭt*, &c.), such a substantive as *duty*, *part*, *mark*, *business*, &c., must be supplied.

English Idiom.		*Latin Idiom.*
It is the part " duty " business " mark " character	of a wise man.	It is of a wise man.

188. VOCABULARY.

Diffĭcĭlĭs, ĕ,	difficult.	
Errārĕ,	to err.	
Făcĭlĭs, ĕ,	easy	(*facility*).
Fĭdĕm viŏlārĕ,	to break one's word.	
Hūmānŭs, a, um,	human, natural to man.	
Magnŭm est,	it is a great thing.	
Peccārĕ,	to sin, to do wrong.	
Turpĭs, ĕ,	base, disgraceful	(*turpitude*).
Viŏlārĕ,	to offend against, to wrong, to break a law, one's word, &c.	(*violate*).

189. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. *Humānum*[6] est peccāre. 2. *Humānum* est errāre. 3. *Turpe* est fidem suam violāre. 4. Patris[7] est filium suum docēre. 5. *Regis* est regnāre.

6. *Matris* est filias suas docēre. 7. *Servi* est viam monstrāre. 8. *Turpe* est poētae domum evertĕre. 9. Matres filias laudant. 10. *Boni* est fidem servāre. 11. *Impii* est fidem violāre.

REM. 1.—In English, when an infinitive mood is the subject of a proposition, the pronoun *it* is used before the verb *is;* hence, in translating such sentences into Latin, this pronoun *it*, which represents, as it were, the coming infinitive or clause, must be omitted.

REM. 2.—After *it is*, such a substantive as *part, duty, business, mark*, must be omitted in translating into Latin.

(*b*) 1. *It* is a great (thing) not to fear death.[6] 2. *It* is easy to err. 3. *It* is (the duty)[7] of a Christian to keep (his) word. 4. It is (the part) of a wise (man) to keep the laws.

5. It is disgraceful to neglect a son. 6. It is natural-to-man to prize money *very highly*. 7. It is the mark of an unlearned man *to think little* of wisdom. 8. It is the slave's *business* to shut the gates of the city. 9. It is difficult to shut the gates of the city. 10. A

good citizen will observe the laws of his country. 11. It is the *part*[7] of a good citizen to observe the laws of his country.

LESSON XXXV.

Verbs.—Tenses for Completed Action.—First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations.

190. THE tenses which we have thus far used, viz., the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*, represent the action of the verb as continuing (11), i. e., as *not completed*. There are also three tenses for *completed* action, viz.:

1) The *Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *present* time, i. e., as just completed; e. g., *ămāvĭt*, he has loved.
2) The *Pluperfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *past* time; as, *ămāvĕrăt*, he had loved.
3) The *Future Perfect*, which represents the action as *completed* in *future* time; as, *ămāvĕrĭt*, he will have loved.

191. The tenses for *completed* action are not formed from the same root as those for action *not completed*, but from another called the *second root*. This is formed in various ways.

192. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second root* is formed by adding *āv*, *ŭ*,* and *īv*, respectively, to the root† of the verb; e. g.:

---

* A very few verbs of the second conjugation add *ev*, which may be regarded as the full form for which *u* is a contraction (the *e* being dropped, and *v* changed to *u*).

† This we will now call the 1*st* root, to distinguish it from the 2*d*.

			First Root.	*Second Root.*
Conj.	I.	Amārĕ,	ăm,	ămāv.
Conj.	II.	Mŏnērĕ,	mŏn,	mŏnŭ.
Conj.	IV.	Audīrĕ,	aud,	audīv.

193. In verbs of all the conjugations, the *third persons singular* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed by adding to the *second root* the following *endings*:—

Perfect.	*Pluperfect.*	*Future Perfect.*
ĭt,	ĕrăt,	ĕrĭt.

PARADIGMS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Amārĕ, to love: 1st root, *ăm;* 2d root, *ămāv.*

Perfect.	Amāv-ĭt,	he, she, *or* it has loved (*or* loved).*
Pluperf.	Amāv-ĕrăt,	" " " had loved.
Fut. Perf.	Amāv-ĕrĭt,	" " " will have loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Mŏnērĕ, to advise: 1st root, *mŏn;* 2d root, *mŏnŭ.*

Perfect.	Mŏnu-ĭt,	he, she, *or* it has advised (*or* advised).*
Pluperf.	Mŏnu-ĕrăt,	" " " had advised.
Fut. Perf.	Mŏnu-ĕrĭt,	" " " shall have advised.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Audīrĕ, to hear: 1st root, *aud;* 2d root, *audīv.*

Perfect.	Audīv-ĭt,	he, she, *or* it has heard (*or* heard).*
Pluperf.	Audīv-ĕrăt,	" " " had heard.
Fut. Perf.	Audīv-ĕrĭt,	" " " shall have heard.

194. In any regular verb, the third persons *plural*, in the tenses for completed action, are formed by simply

* The perfect in Latin corresponds sometimes to our *perfect indefinite*, and sometimes to our *perfect definite* (perfect with have); hence, *ămāvĭt* may be translated either *he has loved*, or *he loved*.

inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third person singular (35), except in the perfect, where *ĭt* must be changed into *ērunt;* e. g.,

		Perfect.	*Pluperfect.*	*Fut. Perfect.*
Conj. I.	Sing.	Amāv-ĭt,	ămāv-ĕrăt,	ămāv-ĕrĭt.
	Plur.	Amāv-*ērunt*,	ămāv-ĕra*nt*,	ămāv-ĕri*nt*.
Conj. II.	Sing.	Mŏnu-ĭt,	mŏnu-ĕrăt,	mŏnu-ĕrĭt.
	Plur.	Mŏnu-*ērunt*,	mŏnu-ĕra*nt*,	mŏnu-ĕri*nt*.
Conj. IV.	Sing.	Audīv-ĭt,	audīv-ĕrăt,	audīv-ĕrĭt.
	Plur.	Audīv-*ērunt*,	audīv-ĕra*nt*,	audīv-ĕri*nt*.

195. VOCABULARY.

Aestĭmārĕ, āv,*	to estimate, to value.	
Arārĕ, āv,	to plough	(*arable*).
Audīre, īv,	to hear	(*audible*).
Dīlăniārĕ, āv,	to tear in pieces.	
Jūrārĕ, āv,	to swear.	
Laudārĕ, āv,	to praise	(*laudable.*)
Monstrārĕ, āv,	to show.	
Plācārĕ, āv,	to appease	(*placable.*)
Sĕpĕlīrĕ, īv,	to bury.	
Servārĕ, āv,	to keep, to observe.	
Terrērĕ, u,	to terrify, to frighten.	

196. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Puer juravĕrat. 2. Puĕri juravērunt. 3. Agricŏla aravĕrit. 4. Servi aravĕrint. 5. Vulpes puĕros terruit. 6. Vulpes puĕros terruērunt. 7. Poētae sapientiam *parvi* aestimāvit.

8. Veram virtūtem magni aestimavĕrat. 9. Christiānus pecuniam parvi aestimāvit. 10. Christiāni est pecuniam parvi aestimāre. 11. Magnam poētae sapi-

* The learner will readily form the *second root* from the *first*, by adding the endings here given.

entiam parvi aestimavĕrant. 12. Pater filium sepelīvit. 13. Puĕri patrem sepelivĕrant.

(*b*) 1. The boy has heard a voice. 2. The boys had heard their father's voice. 3. The slave had shown the way to the shepherd. 4. They will have shown the house to their master.

5. Caius had praised his son. 6. He has praised his slaves. 7. The lion has torn the horse in pieces. 8. The fox had frightened the boy. 9. They had valued wisdom *at a low price*. 10. It is easy to keep (one's) word. 11. It is difficult to appease anger. 12. He has appeased the boy's anger with a gift.

LESSON XXXVI.

Third Conjugation.—Class I.—Second Root *the same as the* First.

197. Most verbs of the third conjugation may be divided into two classes, viz.:

1) Those which have the *second root* the same as the first.

2) Those which form it by the addition of *s*.

198. The *first class* comprises most verbs of this conjugation which have the first root in a vowel, together with a few which have it in a consonant; e. g.,

Suĕrĕ, *to sew:*	1st *root*, sŭ;	2d *root*, sŭ.
Dēfendĕrĕ, *to defend:*	" dēfend;	" dēfend.

199. The manner in which the *third persons* of the tenses for *completed* action are formed from the second root, has already been explained. See 193, 194.

PARADIGM.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Dēfendĕrĕ, to defend: 1st root, *dēfend*; 2d root, *dēfend.*

Perfect.	*Pluperfect.*	*Future Perfect.*
Dēfend-ĭt,	dēfend-ĕrăt,	dēfend-ĕrĭt.
Dēfend-ērunt,	dēfend-ĕrant,	dēfend-ĕrint.

200. The *Preposition* is the part of speech which expresses the various relations of objects;* e. g.,

Rex *pĕr* urbĕm ambŭlābăt.
(*The king through the city was walking.*)
The king was walking *through* the city.

REM.—In this example, *pĕr*, through, is a *preposition.*

201. PARTIAL RULE OF SYNTAX.—Some prepositions govern the *accusative*, and some the *ablative.*

REM. 1.—Whenever a preposition occurs in the exercises, its particular case will be given in the vocabularies.

REM. 2.—The *accusative, urbĕm,* in the above example, is governed by the preposition *pĕr.*

202. VOCABULARY.

Aedĭfĭcĭŭm, ī,	building, edifice.	
Ambŭlārĕ, āv,	to walk.	
Annuĕrĕ, annŭ,	to assent, to give assent.	
Concĭlĭŭm, ī,	council, meeting.	
Condĭtĭŏ, ōnĭs,	condition, terms.	
Constĭtuĕrĕ, constĭtŭ,	to arrange, to appoint	(*constitute*).
Dēfendĕrĕ, dēfend,	to defend.	
Dormīrĕ, īv,	to sleep	(*dormant*).
Incendĕrĕ, incend,	to set on fire, to burn	(*incendiary*.)
Lĕgĭŏ, ōnĭs,	legion, body of foot-soldiers.	
Pĕr (*prep. with acc.*),	through.	
Proelĭŭm, ī,	battle.	

* It will be remembered, however, that certain relations are sometimes expressed by the *cases* of nouns (63, 80, 86).

Prīvātŭs, ă, ŭm,	**private, personal.**	
Rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm,	**remaining, the rest**	**(*relic*).**
Respuĕrĕ, respŭ,	**to reject.**	
Rōmānī (*adj. pl.*),	**Romans.**	
Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm,	**Roman, belonging to Rome.**	
Suĕrĕ, sŭ,	**to sew, to stitch.**	
Tĭmērĕ, ŭ,	**to fear**	**(*timid*).**
Vestĭs, ĭs.	**garment**	**(*vest*).**

203. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Privātum aedificium incendit. 2. Relĭqua privāta aedificia incendĕrant. 3. Puellae vestem suērunt. 4. Patres annuĕrant. 5. Milĭtes urbem defendĕrant. 6. Romāni urbem defendērunt.

7. Relĭquas legiōnes in acie constituit. 8. Ursi in antro dormivērunt. 9. Agricŏla per urbem ambulāvit. 10. Non respuit conditiōnem Caesar. 11. Diem concilio constituērunt. 12. Diem concilio constituĕrit. 13. Servus viam monstravĕrat. 14. Puer mortem timuit. 15. *Humānum*[6] est mortem timēre. 16. *Impii*[7] est fidem violāre.

(*b*) 1. The king has appointed a day for the battle. 2. They had appointed a day for the council. 3. The soldiers defended the building. 4. They had defended the poet's house. 5. The queen assented. 6. The king had not assented.

7. The good boy will walk in the city. 8. The poet's daughter had walked through the great city. 9. They will *set* the house of the poet *on fire.* 10. It is the *duty*[7] of a good man to defend the house of a friend. 11. The avaricious (man) will build a small house. 12. They will not defend the house of the avaricious. 13. They will not reject the condition. 14. Caesar had rejected the terms. 15. He will have arranged his sol-

diers in order of battle. 16. They had arranged their soldiers in order of battle.

LESSON XXXVII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II.—Second Root *formed by adding* s *to the* First.

204. VERBS of the third conjugation which have the first root in a consonant, generally form the second from it by the addition of *s;* e. g.,

Carpĕrĕ, *to pluck;* 1st *root*, carp; 2d *root*, carp*s*.
Rēpĕrĕ, *to creep;* " rēp; " rep*s*.

REM.—When *b* stands at the end of the first root, it is changed into *p* before *s* in the second; e. g.,

Scrībĕrĕ, *to write;* scrīb; scrips (not *scribs*).
Nūbĕrĕ, *to marry;* nūb; nups (not *nubs*).

205. An adjective modifying the subject is sometimes used in Latin instead of an adverb modifying the verb; e. g.,

Portăm *invītŭs* claudĕt.

(*Lat. Id.*) The gate *unwilling* he will shut (*adj.*).
(*Eng. Id.*) He will shut the gate *unwillingly* (*adv.*).

206. VOCABULARY.

Carpĕrĕ, carps,	**to pluck, to card, to gather.**
Dēglūbĕrĕ, dēglups,	**to flay.**
Lană, ae,	**wool.**
Lūdĕrĕ, lūs,	**to play**
Mălŭs, ă, ŭm,	**bad.**
Ovĭs, ĭs,	**sheep.**
Scrībĕrĕ, scrips,	**to write.**
Uvă, ae,	**grape.**

207. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Caius epistŏlas sua manu scripsit. 2. Puella epistŏlam sua manu scripsĕrat. 3. Puĕri lanam carpsērunt. 4. Malus pastor deglupsit oves.

5. Facile est* lanam carpĕre. 6. Pater meus fidem servavĕrat. 7. Turpe est fidem suam non servāre. 8. Sapientis est* virtūtem magni aestimāre. 9. Virtūtem magni aestimavĕrint.

(*b*) 1. The boy has written a letter in his own hand. 2. The girl had written letters in her own hand. 3. They wrote letters. 4. The girl has plucked a flower. 5. The shepherd's daughter had gathered flowers with her own hand.

6. The boy will pluck the grape. 7. It is easy to pluck the grape. 8. The girls were gathering flowers. 9. They had gathered flowers. 10. It is easy to gather flowers. 11. The slaves will card the wool. 12. They will have carded the wool. 13. In winter the bear will sleep in the cave. 14. In summer the girls will play in the garden.

LESSON XXXVIII.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., *continued.*—Second Root *formed by adding* s *to the* First.

208. WHEN a *k*-sound (*c*, *g*, *h*, *qu*) stands at the end of the first root, it generally unites, in the second, with the *s* which is added, and forms *x* (i. e. *cs*, *gs*, *hs*, or *qus* becomes *x*); e. g.,

---

* What is the subject of *est?* (608, 2.)

Cingĕrĕ, *to surround;*	cing,	cinx	(*cings*).
Tĕgĕrĕ, *to cover;*	tĕg,	tex	(*tegs*).
Trahĕrĕ, *to draw;*	trah,	trax	(*trahs*).
Cŏquĕrĕ, *to cook,*	cŏqu,	cox	(*coqus*).

a) In a very few verbs *gu* and *v* must be treated as *k*-sounds in the formation of the second root; e. g.,

Exstinguĕrĕ, *to extinguish;*	exstin*gu*,	extin*x*.
Vīvĕrĕ, *to live;*	vīv,	vi*x*.

b) *Fluĕrĕ*, to flow, and *struĕrĕ*, to build, *together with their compounds*, have the second root in *x*, as if the first ended in a *k*-sound, as probably it did originally.

c) The *k*-sound is sometimes dropped before *s* in the second root; e. g.,

Spargĕrĕ, *to scatter;*	sparg,	spars.
Mergĕrĕ, *to merge;*	merg,	mers.
Parcĕrĕ, *to spare;*	parc,	pars.

209. VOCABULARY.

Cĭbŭs, ī,	**food.**	
Cingĕrĕ, cinx,	**to surround.**	
Complērĕ, ēv,	**to fill**	**(*complement*).**
Cŏquĕrĕ, cox,	**to cook, to bake, to ripen.**	
Dīcĕrĕ, dix,	**to say**	**(*diction*).**
Hăbērĕ, habu,	**to have**	**(*habit*).**
Illustrārĕ, āv,	**to illuminate, to enlighten.**	
Mendāciŭm, ī,	**lie, falsehood**	**(*mendacious*).**
Multă (*neut. pl.*),	**many (things).**	
Multŭs, ă, ŭm,	**much, *pl.* many.**	
Palliŭm, ī,	**cloak**	**(*to palliate*).**
Peccārĕ, āv,	**to sin, to do wrong.**	
Prūdentiă, ae,	**prudence.**	
Sĭmŭlātiŏ, ōnĭs,	**assumed appearance, pretence**	**(*dissimulation***
Stultĭtiă, ae,	**folly**	**(*stultify*).**

Summŭs, ă, ŭm,	highest, greatest	(*summit*).
Tĕgĕrĕ, tex,	to cover.	
Viŏlarĕ, av,	to violate, to break	(*violation*).

210. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Puer dixit. 2. Caius, homo vita indignus, dixĕrat. 3. Puellae dixērunt. 4. Flumen urbem cinxit. 5. Flumĭna urbes cinxērunt. 6. Amīcus amīci corpus suo pallio texit.

7. Prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texĕrat. 8. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texērunt. 9. Christiāni non est mendacio culpam tegĕre. 10. Turpe est peccāre. 11. Turpe est mendacio culpam tegĕre. 12. Sol cuncta suā luce illustravĕrat.[9] 13. Caius leges civitātis violavĕrit.

(*b*) 1. The woman has surrounded her head with a garland. 2. The slave has surrounded his head with a garland. 3. They had surrounded their heads with garlands. 4. The boy had said nothing. 5. The girl cooked the food. 6. They had cooked the food.

7. The king had surrounded the city with a wall. 8. They will surround the city with a wall. 9. They covered the fault with a lie. 10. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie. 11. The slave had covered his master's body with a cloak. 12. The slave had said many (things). 13. The sun fills all things with its light. 14. It is the business of the slave[7] to cook food for his master. 15. It is never useful to lose time. 16. He will lose much pleasure.[4] 17. How much pleasure will he lose?

LESSON XXXIX.

Third Conjugation.—Class II., *continued.*—Second Root *formed by adding* s *to the* First.

211. Whenever a *t-sound* (*d* or *t*) stands at the end of the first root, it is generally dropped before *s* in the second, and the preceding vowel, if short, is lengthened; e. g.,

Claudĕrĕ, *to shut;*	claud,	claus	(clau*ds*).
Amittĕrĕ, *to lose;*	āmitt,	amīs	(ami*tts*).
Dīvĭdĕrĕ, *to divide;*	dīvĭd,	dīvīs	(divi*ds*).

212. When a limiting noun denotes some *characteristic* or *quality* of the noun which it limits, it is always accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the *genitive* or *ablative;* e. g.,

Puĕr exĭmiae pulchrĭtūdĭnĭs.
Puĕr exĭmiā pulchrĭtūdĭnĕ.
A boy of remarkable beauty.

213. Combining the above with the rule already given (65), we have the following

Rule of Syntax.—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; as, Lătīnŭs *rex*, Latinus *the king*.
2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; as, *Rēgĭs* fīlĭŭs, the *king's* son: except

(*a*) When it denotes *character* or *quality*, it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; as, *Puĕr exĭmiae pulchrĭtūdĭnĭs;*

or, *Puĕr eximiā pulchrĭtūdĭnĕ*, a boy of remarkable beauty.

214. Rule of Syntax.—Verbs of *accusing*, *convicting*, *acquitting*, *warning*, and the like, take the accusative of the person and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g.,

Caiŭm prōdĭtiōnĭs accūsant.
(*Caius of treachery they accuse.*)
They accuse Caïus of treachery.*

Rem.—Here *prōdĭtiōnĭs* is in the genitive, by the above rule.

215. (*Eng. Id.*) To condemn *to death*.
(*Lat. Id.*) To condemn *of the head* (*căpĭtĭs*).†

216. Vocabulary.

Accūsārĕ, āv,	to accuse.	
Ambĭtŭs, ūs,	bribery.	
Amittĕrĕ, āmīs,	to lose.	
Căpĭtĭs (*gen.*),	of the head, to death	(*capital*).
Claudĕrĕ, claus,	to shut	(*close*).
Damnārĕ, āv,	to condemn.	
Făciēs, ēī,	face, appearance.	
Furtŭm, ī,	theft	(*furtive*).
Ingĕniŭm, ī,	talent, ability	(*ingenious*).
Lūdĕrĕ, lūs,	to play.	
Nunquăm,	never.	
Prōdĭtiŏ, ōnĭs,	treachery.	
Saltārĕ, āv,	to dance.	
Vĭr,‡ vĭrī,	man, hero.	

* This genitive is not properly governed by the verb, but by a noun understood; thus, if we supply *crīmĭnĕ* with *prōdĭtiōnĭs* in the example, the sense will not be changed; as, 'They accuse Caius *with the charge* of treachery.'

† We may suppose that it was originally, "to condemn *to the loss of the head*;" or, "to the punishment of the head."

‡ *Hŏmo*, G. *hŏmĭnĭs*, and *vĭr* are both *man*: but *homo* is *man* as opposed to *other* animals; that is, *a human being*. whereas *vĭr* is *man*

217. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Portas urbis clausĕrant. 2. Caius multum tempŏris amīsit. 3. Caius, vir summo ingenio, multum tempŏris amīsit. 4. Balbum ambĭtus accusavĕrant. 5. Puĕri in prato lusērunt.

6. Balbum capĭtis damnābunt. 7. Christiāni est avaritiam damnāre. 8. Caium accusāvit. 9. Caium, summo ingenio virum, proditiōnis accusavĕrat. 10. Facĭle est saltāre. 11. Difficĭle est iram placāre. 12. Facĭle est puĕri anĭmum dono placāre. 13. Ursus in antro dormīvit. 14. Hiĕme ursi in antris dormiunt. 15. Nunquam utĭle est peccāre.

(*b*) 1. The slave has shut the gates of the city. 2. They will accuse the slave of treachery. 3. Caius had accused the slaves of theft. 4. He will have lost much time.[4] 5. Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, has praised the fidelity of the slave. 6. Balbus, a man endued with the greatest virtue, has accused the boy of theft.

7. They have accused Balbus of bribery. 8. They had accused Balbus, a man of the greatest virtue, of bribery. 9. The sun had illuminated all things with its light. 10. The sun will have filled the world with its light. 11. They have written the letters with their own hands. 12. The queen had written a letter with her own hand. 13. He covered his face with his cloak. 14. They had covered their faces with their cloaks.

---

as opposed to *woman.*—When *men* means *human beings, men* generally (including *both sexes*), it should be translated by *homĭnes.*—When *man* is used *contemptuously*, it should also be translated by *homo*, because that word says nothing better of a person than that he is a *human* being.—When *man* is used *respectfully*, with any praise, &c., it should be translated by *vĭr*.

LESSON XL.

Formation of the Second Root.—First Irregularity—Radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).

218. REGULAR Endings of the Second Root of Verbs.

Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
āv.	u (*or* ēv).	s, *or* like 1st root.	īv.

REM.—The above table presents only the *regular* endings of the second root; there are, however, several irregularities in the formation of that root which we must notice.

219. Some verbs in each* of the four conjugations form the second root by lengthening the vowel of the first; e. g.,

Jŭvārĕ, *to assist;*	jŭv,	jūv.
Vĭdērĕ, *to see;*	vĭd,	vīd.
Edĕrĕ, *to eat;*	ĕd,	ēd.
Vĕnīrĕ, *to come;*	vĕn,	vēn.

1) In the third conjugation,

a) If the first root has *ă*, the second will have *ē*.

b) *M* and *n* are often dropped before a final mute; e. g.,

Căpĕrĕ, *to take;*	căp,	cēp	(*ă* changed to *ē*).
Frangĕrĕ, *to break;*	frang,	frēg	(*n* dropped, and *a* changed to *ē*).
Rumpĕrĕ, *to burst;*	rump,	rūp	(*m* dropped).
Vincĕrĕ, *to conquer;*	vinc,	vīc	(*n* dropped).

* In the first and fourth conjugations, *jŭvārĕ, lăvārĕ, vĕnīrĕ*, and their compounds, are probably the only instances.

220. VOCABULARY.

Brachiŭm, ī,	arm.	
Căpĕrĕ, cēp,	to take, to receive.	
Cĭbŭs, ī,	food.	
Emĕrĕ, ēm,	to buy.	
Exercĭtŭs, ūs,	army.	
Foedŭs, ĕrĭs,	treaty	(*federal*).
Frangĕrĕ, frēg,	to break	(*fragile*).
Gallŭs, i,	a Gaul, an inhabitant of Gaul, now France.	
Lăvārĕ, lāv,	to wash	(*lave*).
Mĕl, mellĭs,	honey.	
Mīlĕs, ĭtĭs,	soldier	(*military*).
Nēmŏ, ĭnĭs,*	nobody, no one.	
Quiă,	because.	
Rumpĕrĕ, rūp,	to break, to violate.	
Sempĕr,	always.	
Utĭlĭs, ĕ,	useful	(*utility*).
Vĕnīrĕ, vēn,	to come.	
Vīdērĕ, vīd,	to see	(*visible*).
Vincŭlŭm, ī,	chain.	

221. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Balbus manus lāvit. 2. Puĕri manus lāvĕrant. 3. Agricŏla exercĭtum vīdit. 4. Milĭtes vēnērunt. 5. Caius brachium suum frēgĕrat. 6. Quantum voluptātis cēpērunt!

7. Nunquam utĭle est foedus rumpĕre. 8. Nunquam utĭle est fidem violāre, quia semper est turpe. 9. Facĭle est puerōrum anĭmos donis placāre. 10. Turpe est foedĕra negligĕre. 11. Galli negligēbant foedĕra. 12. Nemo semper labōrat. 13. Culpas suas simulatiōne virtūtis texit. 14. Multum voluptātis cepĕrant. 15.

* The gen. *nēmĭnĭs* and abl. *nēmĭnĕ* are not in good use.

Multum voluptātis amisĕrant. 16. Quantum cibi amisērunt!

(b) 1. Caius has broken his arm. 2. They had broken their arms. 3. The king had broken the treaty. 4. The Gauls had broken the treaty. 5. Caesar had seen the army. 6. The girls will have seen the queen. 7. Caesar conquered the Gauls. 8. The Gauls did not conquer Caesar.

9. It is disgraceful to break a treaty. 10. It is difficult to conquer the Gauls. 11. It is not easy to conquer the enemy. 12. He had appeased Balbus. 13. They will break their chains. 14. They had broken their chains. 15. It is easy to break (one's) arm. 16. They are losing much money. 17. They had lost much money. 18. They were losing much pleasure. 19. They will condemn Balbus to death (215). 20. He had conquered his enemies.

LESSON XLI.

Formation of the Second Root.—Second Irregularity—Reduplication.

222. A FEW verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations, form the second root by prefixing to the first their initial consonant, with the following vowel or with *e;* e. g.,

Dărĕ, *to give;*	d,	dĕd.
Mordērĕ, *to bite;*	mord,	mŏmord.
Currĕrĕ, *to run;*	curr,	cŭcurr.

REM.—The radical vowel is also sometimes changed; as, *cădĕrĕ*, to fall; 2d root, *cĕcĭd* (*ă* changed to *ĭ*).

223. VOCABULARY.

Ab (*prep. with abl.*),	from.
Auctumnŭs, ī,	autumn.
Barbă, ae,	beard.
Cŏlŏr, ōrĭs,	color.
Currĕrĕ, cŭcurr,	to run.
Dărĕ, dĕd,	to give.
Fīnĭs, ĭs, *m.* or *f.*	end.
Hŭmĕrŭs, ī,	shoulder.
Mordērĕ, mŏmord,	to bite.
Mūtārĕ, āv,	to change.
Nox, noctĭs,	night.
Pendērĕ, pĕpend,	to hang (*intrans.*).
Pĕr (*prep. with accus.*)	through.
Săgittă, ae,	arrow.
Tondērĕ, tŏtond,	to shear, shave.

224. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Equus per urbem cucurrit. 2. Sagittae ab humĕro pependērunt. 3. Nox proelio (648) finem dedit. 4. Malus pastor oves non totondit. 5. Malus pastor deglupsit oves; non totondit.

6. Boni pastōris[7] est tondēre oves, non deglubĕre. 7. Pastōres agricŏlas risērunt. 8. Lupus boni pastōris ovem momordĕrit. 9. Boni canis[7] non est oves mordēre. 10. Servus portas urbis clausĕrit. 11. Puĕri regis sceptrum vidēbunt. 12. Lusciniae colōrem mutābunt. 13. Auctumno lusciniae colōrem suum mutavĕrint.

(*b*) 1. The dog has bitten the sheep. 2. Your dog had bitten the girl. 3. My horses have been running (have run). 4. Balbus has given his dog to your son. 5. They had given their dogs to the shepherd.

6. The wolf had bitten the sheep. 7. The shepherd will shear his sheep. 8. A shepherd does not shear

his sheep in the winter. 9. The wolves have bitten my dog. 10. Caius will shave (his) beard. 11. The cloak was hanging from (his) shoulder. 12. The dog has bitten the wolf. 13. They wrote the letter. 14. Balbus had shaved (his) beard. 15. The girls have plucked flowers in Caius's garden. 16. The girls will walk in the garden. 17. The queen was walking through the city. 18. They have surrounded the city with walls. 19. They have offended-against the laws of their country.

LESSON XLII.

Formation of the Second Root.—Third Irregularity—Second root after the analogy of other conjugations.

225. A FEW verbs in each conjugation form the second root according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations.

1) A few in the first conjugation follow the analogy of the second; e. g.,

Mĭcārĕ, *to glitter:* 1st root, *mĭc;* 2d root, *mĭcŭ.*

2) A few in the second follow the analogy of the third; e. g.,

Rīdērĕ, *to laugh;* 1st root, *rīd;* 2d root, *rīs* (rids).
Lūgērĕ, *to mourn;* " *lūg;* " *lux* (lugs).

3) A few in the third follow the analogy of the second or fourth; e. g.,

Cŏlĕrĕ, *to till;* 1st root, *cŏl;* 2d root, *cŏlŭ.*
Pĕtĕrĕ, *to seek;* " *pĕt;* " *pĕtīv.*

4) A few in the fourth follow the analogy of the second or third; e. g.,

Apĕrīrĕ, *to open;* 1st root, *ăpĕr;* 2d root, *ăpĕrŭ.*
Vincīrĕ, *to bind;* " *vinc;* " *vinx* (cs).

REM.—Verbs of the third conj. which have the 1st root in *sc*, together with a few others, generally change the consonant-ending of the 1st root into *v* in the 2d; as, *crescĕrĕ*, to increase; 1st root, *cresc;* 2d, *crēv*. Most of these verbs are supposed to have been derived from pure roots.

226. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g.,

Caiŭs *annŭm ūnŭm* vixĭt.
(*Caius year one lived.*)
Caius lived *one year.*

227. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The name of a town (91) where any thing is or is done, if of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive; otherwise, in the ablative; e. g.,

1. Caiŭs annŭm ūnŭm *Cortōnae* vixĭt.
   Caius lived one year *at Cortona.*
2. Caiŭs annŭm ūnŭm *Tībŭrĕ* vixĭt.
   Caius lived one year *at Tibur.*

REM.—In these examples, *Cortōnae* and *Tībŭrĕ* are names of towns; the first is put in the *genitive*, because it is of the first declension, and sing. number, and the second in the *ablative*, because it is of the third declension.

228. VOCABULARY.

Amittĕrĕ, amīs,	to lose.
Annŭs, ī,	year.
Apĕrīrĕ, ăpĕrŭ,	to open, to uncover.
Bienniŭm,	two years, space of two years.
Castīgārĕ, āv,	to chastise.

Invītŭs, ă, ŭm,	**unwilling.**
Lūgĕrĕ, lux,	**to grieve, mourn, weep for.**
Mănērĕ, mans,	**to remain.**
Matrōna, ae,	**matron.**
Rōmă, ae,	**Rome,** *a city of Italy, on the Tiber.*
Tībŭr, ŭrĭs,	**Tibur,** *a town in Latium, in Italy.*
Tōtŭs, ă, ŭm (g. īŭs),	**the whole, the entire.**

229. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Balbus multos annos Romae mansĕrat. 2. Biennium Carthagĭne mansĕrant. 3. Mater luxĕrit. 4. Matrōnae luxērunt. 5. Brutum Romānae matrōnae luxērunt. 6. Pastōres agricŏlas risērunt. 7. Puĕri capĭta aperuērunt.

8. Domĭnus servi sui epistŏlam aperiet. 9. Domĭnus servi sui epistŏlas aperuĕrat. 10. Alĭquid tempŏris[4] invītus (205) amittet. 11. Christiāni est nemĭnem violāre. 12. Nemĭnem violāvit. 13. Biennium Romae manēbit. 14. Biennium Carthagĭne manēbunt.

(*b*) 1. They remained at Tibur many years. 2. Caius remained at Carthage for the space-of-two-years. 3. He has opened his father's letter. 4. They had opened the letters at Carthage.

5. My father will remain at Rome the whole winter. 6. He wrote the letters at Rome. 7. They are mourning for[f] their son. 8. They have been in mourning two years. 9. The girls wore mourning for[f] their mother. 10. My father values industry very highly. 11. Balbus has accused the shepherd's son of theft. 12. They have accused Caius of bribery.

LESSON XLIII.

Subjunctive Mood.

230. THE *Subjunctive Mood* represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a *fact*, but simply as a *possibility*, *wish*, or *conception of the mind;* e. g.,

1. Scrībăt, { he may write, / may he write, / let him write.

2. Vēnĭt ŭt scrībăt, { he has come *that he may write*, / he has come *to write*.

REM.—*Scrībăt* in the above examples is in the present subjunctive.

231. The present subjunctive, when not preceded by *ŭt*, generally expresses either a *wish* (to be translated by *may he*), or a *command* (to be translated by *let him*, &c.).

232. If the wish or command is to be expressed *negatively*, *nē* (never *nōn*) must be used with the subjunctive; e. g.,

Nē pŭtĕt, let him not think.

233. The tenses of the subjunctive mood* are the *present*, *imperfect*, *perfect*, and *pluperfect*.

234. The endings of the third persons sing. of the tenses of the subjunctive are as follows:

	Present. (1st root.)	*Imperfect.* (1st root.)	*Perfect.* (2d root.)	*Pluperfect.* (2d root.)
Conj. I.	ĕt,	arĕt,	ĕrĭt,	issĕt.
Conj. II.	ĕăt,	ērĕt,	ĕrĭt,	issĕt.
Conj. III.	ăt,	ĕrĕt,	ĕrĭt,	issĕt.
Conj. IV.	ĭăt,	īrĕt,	ĕrĭt,	issĕt.

* The subjunctive has *no futures.*

REM.—The third persons plural of the several tenses of the subjunctive are formed by inserting *n* before *t* in the ending of the third singular

235. The English signs corresponding to the Latin subjunctive are as follows:

Present, *may* or *can*.
Imperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*.
Perfect, *may have*.
Pluperfect, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have*.

236. Partial Paradigm of the Subjunctive Mood.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Pres.	Am-ĕt, *he may* or *can love.*	Am-ent, *they may* or *can love.*
Imp.	Am-ārĕt, *he might, &c. love.*	Am-ārent, *they might, &c. love.*
Perf.	Amāv-ĕrĭt, *he may have loved.*	Amāv-ĕrint, *they may have loved.*
Plup.	Amāv-issĕt, *he might, &c. have loved.*	Amāv-issent, *they might, &c. have loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Pres.	Mŏn-eăt, *he may* or *can advise.*	Mŏn-eant, *they may advise.*
Imp.	Mŏn-ērĕt, *he might, &c. advise.*	Mŏn-ērent, *they might, &c. advise.*
Perf.	Mŏnu-ĕrĭt, *he may have advised.*	Mŏnu-ĕrint, *they may have advised.*
Plup.	Mŏnu-issĕt, *he might, &c. have advised.*	Mŏnu-issent, *they might, &c. have advised.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Pres.	Rĕg-ăt, *he may rule.*	Rĕg-ant, *they may rule.*
Imp.	Rĕg-ĕrĕt, *he might, &c. rule.*	Rĕg-ĕrent, *they might, &c. rule.*
Perf.	Rex-ĕrĭt, *he may have ruled.*	Rex-ĕrint, *they may have ruled.*
Plup.	Rex-issĕt, *he might, &c. have ruled.*	Rex-issent, *they might, &c. have ruled.*

PARADIGM—*continued.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Pres.	Aud-iăt, *he may hear.*	Aud-iant, *they may hear.*
Imp.	Aud-īrĕt, *he might, &c. hear.*	Aud-īrent, *they might, &c. hear.*
Perf.	Audīv-ĕrĭt, *he may have heard.*	Audīv-ĕrint, *they may have heard.*
Plup.	Audīv-issĕt, *he might, &c. have heard.*	Audīv-issent, *they might, &c. have heard.*

237. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Scribat. 2. Ne scribant. 3. Servus claudat portas. 4. Puĕri ne claudant portas. 5. Cantet puella. 6. Ludant Puĕri. 7. Pater scribĕret. 8. Scripsissent. 9. Filium suum sepelīret. 10. Sepeliat filium.

11. Placet puĕri anĭmum. 12. Ne multa discat. 13. Fidem suam servāvit. 14. Fidem suam servavissent. 15. Fidem suam invīti servavērunt. 16. Puĕrum in urbe sepelivērunt. 17. Patres filios suos docuĕrant.

(*b*) 1. Let the slaves shut the gates of the city. 2. Do not let the slave see the letter. 3. Let him write a letter. 4. He might have come. 5. They may have read the book. 6. He would have broken his arm. 7. Do not let the dog bite the boy.

8. Balbus has kept his word. 9. He would have broken his word. 10. Let him appease his father's anger. 11. He remained at Carthage many years. 12. They would have remained at Rome two years. 13. They had remained in the city one year. 14. Let fathers teach their sons.

LESSON XLIV.

Subjunctive Mood.—Purpose.

238. THE present and imperfect subjunctive in Latin are often used to express a *purpose.*

239. The infinitive often denotes purpose in English, but never in Latin; accordingly, in expressions of purpose, the idioms of the two languages are entirely distinct from each other, and should be carefully studied.

240. *Eng. Id.* { I have come *to see* you.
I came *to see* you.

Lat. Id. { I have come *that I may see* you.
I came *that I might see* you.

241. When a purpose is to be expressed affirmatively, *ŭt* is used with the subj., when negatively, *nē*; e. g.,

1. Balbŭm rŏgăt *ŭt* puĕrŭm *dŏceăt.*
(*Balbus he asks that the boy he may teach.*)
He asks Balbus *to teach* the boy.

2. Balbŭm rŏgăt *nē* puĕrŭm *dŏceăt.*
He asks Balbus *not to teach* the boy.

242. The subjunctive expressing purpose must be in the *present tense;* unless the verb on which it depends is in a *past tense* (*imperfect, perfect indefinite,* or *pluperfect*), and then it must be in the *imperfect.*

REM.—The perfect definite (198, REM.), or perfect with have (which denotes that the action *has been done* in a period of time *still present*), is considered a *present* tense, and followed by the present subjunctive.

243. EXAMPLES.

1. Vĕnĭt ŭt portās claudăt.
(*He is coming that the gates he may shut.*)
He is coming to shut the gates.

2. Vēnĭt (*indef.*) ŭt portās claudĕrĕt.
(*He came that the gates he might shut.*)
He came to shut the gates.

3. Vēnĭt (*def.*) ŭt portās claudăt.
(*He has come that the gates he may shut.*)
He has come to shut the gates.

REM. 1.—In the 1st example the subjunctive is in the *present* tense, because the verb *vĕnĭt*, on which it depends, is present; while in the 2d, it is in the *imperfect*, because its verb, *vēnĭt* (came), is in the *perfect indefinite.*

REM. 2.—In the 3d example the subjunctive is in the *present*, because the verb vēnĭt (has come) is in the *perfect definite*, and, though in form the same as in the 2d example, really expresses different time.

REM. 3.—The Latin perfect, when followed by the present subjunctive, must be translated into English with the sign *have*, as in example 3.

244. VOCABULARY.

Compărārĕ, āv,	to procure, to raise, to levy.	
Discĕrĕ, dĭdĭc,	to learn.	
Edĕre, ēd,	to eat	(*edible*).
Evertĕre, ēvert,	to overthrow, to pull down.	
Lĕgĕrĕ, lēg,	to read	(*legible*).
Plūrĭmŭs, ă, ŭm,	very much *or* great, *pl.*, very many.	
Quiescĕrĕ, quiēv,	to rest, be quiet	(*quiescent*).
Rŏgārĕ, āv,	to ask, to entreat.	
Vīvĕrĕ, vix,	to live	(*vivid*).

245. *Exercises.*

(Construe *ŭt* and the *subjunctive* by the infinitive.)

(*a*) 1. Lĕgit ut discat. 2. Lēgit* ut discat. Lēgit ut discĕret (242). 3. Edit ut vivat. 4. Edit ut vivĕret.

* See 243, REM. 3.

5. Servi veniunt ut portas claudant. 6. Veniat servus ut portas urbis claudat. 7. Caium rogat ut veniat.

8. Venit ut copias compăret. 9. Romae plurĭmi vivunt ut edant. 10. Cantent puellae. 11. Quiescant servi. 12. Veniat Caius ut epistŏlam sua manu scribat. 13. Venĕrat Caius ut Balbi anĭmum donis placāret.

(*b*) 1. He has come to read (241) your letter. 2. They came to read your book. 3. They will come to accuse the judge of theft. 4. The boy will come to give his sister a garland.

5. Let the slaves shut the gates. 6. Do not let your dog bite the boy. 7. They had come to raise forces. 8. The enemy will think *little*[3] of your forces. 9. He had come to surround the girl's head with a beautiful garland. 10. Let boys prize wisdom *very highly*.

LESSON XLV.

Persons of Verbs.—Indicative Mood.—First Conjugation.

246. It will be remembered that verbs have *three persons* (12): these are distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *Personal Endings*.

247. The three persons may be formed in the perfect indicative (which is somewhat irregular) by changing *ĭt*, of the third person singular, into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
ī,	istī,	ĭt.	ĭmŭs,	istĭs,	ērunt (*or* ērĕ).

248. In all the tenses* of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative, the three persons may be formed by changing *t* of the third singular into the following

PERSONAL ENDINGS.

Singular.			*Plural.*		
1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.	1st Pers.	2d Pers.	3d Pers.
m, ŏ,	s,	t.	mŭs,	tĭs,	nt.

a) The ending *o*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative present*, *future perfect*, and, in the first and second conjugations, to the *future*. The vowel which stands before *t* in the third person is dropped before *o* in the first person, except in the present of the second and fourth conjugations (and in a few verbs of the third); e. g.,

	3d Person.	*1st Person.*
Pres. 1st Conj.	Amăt, *he loves,*	ămŏ (ă dropped), *I love.*
" 2d "	Mŏnĕt, *he advises,*	mŏneŏ (ĕ not dropped), *I advise.*
" 3d "	Rĕgĭt, *he rules,*	rĕgŏ (ĭ dropped), *I rule.*
" 4th "	Audĭt, *he hears,*	audiŏ (ĭ not dropped), *I hear.*

b) The ending *m*, for the first person singular, belongs to the *indicative imperfect*, *pluperfect*, and, in the third and fourth conjugations, to the *future*, and to the *subjunctive* throughout all its tenses. In the future of the third and fourth conjugations, the vowel *ĕ*, which stands before *t* in the third person, is changed into *ă* before *m* in the first person; e. g.,

	3d Person.	*1st Person.*
Imperf.	Amābăt, *he was loving,*	ămābăm, *I was loving.*
Pluperf.	Amāvĕrăt, *he had loved,*	ămāvĕrăm, *I had loved.*
Fut. 3d Conj.	Rĕgĕt, *he will rule,*	rĕgăm, *I will rule.*
" 4th "	Audiĕt, *he will hear,*	audiăm, *I will hear.*

* We of course speak only of the *active* voice, as the *passive* has not yet been noticed.

c) In the *present* and *future* tenses of the *indicative*, if *i* stands before *t* in the third singular, it is changed into *iu* in the third plural, in the fourth conjugation, and into *u* in the other conjugations; e. g.,

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Fut. 1st Conj.	Amabĭt, *he will love,*	ămabunt, *they will love.*
" 2d "	Mŏnēbĭt, *he will advise,*	mŏnēbunt, *they will advise.*
Pres. 3d "	Rĕgĭt, *he rules,*	rĕgunt, *they rule.*
" 4th "	Audĭt, *he hears,*	audiunt, *they hear.*

249. The vowel before the personal endings *mŭs* and *tĭs*, is *long* in the imperfect and pluperfect of the indicative, and in all the tenses of the subjunctive, except the perfect, in which it is common* (long or short).

250. Paradigm of the Indicative Mood—First Conjugation.

Amārĕ, *to love:* 1st root, *ăm;* 2d, *ămāv.*

PRESENT (1*st root*).

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Am-ŏ, *I love.*	1. Am-ā*mŭs*, *we love.*
2. Am-ā*s*, *thou lovest.*	2. Am-ā*tĭs*, *ye* or *you love.*
3. Am-ă*t*, *he loves.*	3. Am-a*nt*, *they love.*

IMPERFECT (1*st root*).

Am-ābă*m*, *I was loving.*	Am-ābā*mŭs*, *we were loving.*
Am-ābā*s*, *thou wast loving.*	Am-ābā*tĭs*, *ye* or *you were loving.*
Am-ābă*t*, *he was loving.*	Am-āba*nt*, *they were loving.*

FUTURE (1*st root*).

Am-ābŏ, *I shall love.*	Am-ābĭ*mŭs*, *we shall love.*
Am-ābĭ*s*, *thou wilt love.*	Am-ābĭ*tĭs*, *ye* or *you will love.*
Am-ābĭ*t*, *he will love.*	Am-ābu*nt*, *they will love.*

* The vowel is also generally considered common before these endings in the *future perfect;* the old grammarians, however, make it *long.*

PARADIGM—*continued.*

PERFECT (*2d root*).	
Amāv-*ī*, *I loved* or *have loved.*	Amāv-*ĭmŭs*, *we loved* or *have loved.*
Amāv-*istī*, *thou lovedst* or *hast loved.*	Amāv-*istĭs*, *ye* or *you loved or have loved.*
Amāv-*ĭt*, *he loved* or *has loved.*	Amāv-*ērunt* (ērĕ), *they loved* or *have loved.*
PLUPERFECT (*2d root*).	
Amāv-ĕrăm, *I had loved.*	Amāv-ĕrāmŭs, *we had loved.*
Amāv-ĕrās, *thou hadst loved.*	Amāv-ĕrātĭs, *ye* or *you had loved.*
Amāv-ĕrăt, *he had loved.*	Amāv-ĕrant, *they had loved.*
FUTURE PERFECT (*2d root*).	
Amāv-ĕrŏ, *I shall have loved.*	Amāv-ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have loved.*
Amāv-ĕrĭs, *thou wilt have loved.*	Amāv-ĕrĭtĭs, *ye* or *you will have loved.*
Amāv-ĕrĭt, *he will have loved.*	Amāv-ĕrint, *they will have loved.*

251. VOCABULARY

Ad (*prep. with acc.*),	to.	
Dūcĕrĕ, dux,	to lead	(*duke*).
Hesternŭs, ă, ŭm,	of yesterday.	
Incŏlŭmĭs, ĕ,	safe, uninjured.	
Lēgatŭs, ī,	ambassador	(*legate*).
Mittĕrĕ, mīs,	to send.	(*mission*).
Praemittĕrĕ,	to send before.	
Prīmŭs ă, ŭm,	first	(*prime*).

252. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Violābas legem. 2. Violavisti leges. 3. Balbum vocāvi. 4. Hesterno die Balbum vocavĭmus. 5. Urbem servāvi. 6. Cives incolŭmes servavĭmus. 7. Caium, summo ingenio (213) virum, ambĭtus accusaverātis. 8. Balbum capĭtis damnabĭtis.

9. Legātos ad Caesărem mittunt. 10. Prima luce omnem equitātum praemīsit. 11. Christiānus nemĭnem violābit. 12. Nemĭnem violavisti. 13. Multos annos regnābis. 14. Balbus parvo (181) contentus est. 15. Servus multa laude dignus est.

(b) 1. You have kept your word. 2. I will not break my word. 3. You (*pl.*) have violated the laws of the state. 4. You (*pl.*) prize money very highly. 5. We shall condemn avarice. 6. I have never accused the queen. 7. We shall accuse the priest of treachery.

8. They appeased the anger of Caesar. 9. We will appease your anger. 10. Caesar thought very highly of his army. 11. We will send ambassadors to the king. 12. It is the duty of a Christian[7] to keep his word. 13. It is the part of a wise man to be content with little.

LESSON XLVI.

Indicative Mood.—Four Conjugations.—Personal Pronouns.

253. Paradigm of the Indicative Mood.

Present (1st root), *am, is, &c., loving.*				
	Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
S. 1.	Am-ō,	Mŏn-eō,	Rĕg-ō,	Aud-iō,
2.	Am-ās,	Mŏn-ēs,	Rĕg-ĭs,	Aud-īs,
3.	Am-ăt;	Mŏn-ĕt;	Rĕg-ĭt;	Aud-ĭt;
P. 1.	Am-āmŭs,	Mŏn-ēmŭs,	Rĕg-ĭmŭs,	Aud-īmŭs,
2.	Am-ātĭs,	Mŏn-ētĭs,	Rĕg-ĭtĭs,	Aud-ītĭs,
3.	Am-ant.	Mŏn-ent.	Rĕg-unt.	Aud-iunt.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

IMPERFECT (1st root), *was, did.*

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 1.	Am-ābăm,	Mŏn-ēbăm,	Rĕg-ēbăm,	Aud-iēbăm,
2.	Am-ābas,	Mŏn-ēbas,	Rĕg-ēbas,	Aud-iēbas,
3.	Am-ābăt;	Mŏn-ēbăt;	Rĕg-ēbăt;	Aud-iēbăt;
P. 1.	Am-ābamŭs,	Mŏn-ēbamus,	Rĕg-ēbamŭs,	Aud-iēbamŭs,
2.	Am-ābatĭs,	Mŏn-ēbatĭs,	Rĕg-ēbatĭs,	Aud-iēbatĭs,
3.	Am-ābant.	Mŏn-ēbant.	Rĕg-ēbant.	Aud-iēbant.

FUTURE (1st root), *shall* or *will.*

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 1.	Am-abŏ,	Mŏn-ēbŏ,	Rĕg-ăm,	Aud-iăm,
2.	Am-abĭs,	Mŏn-ēbĭs,	Rĕg-ēs,	Aud-iēs,
3.	Am-abĭt;	Mŏn-ēbĭt;	Rĕg-ĕt;	Aud-iĕt;
P. 1.	Am-abĭmŭs,	Mŏn-ēbĭmŭs,	Rĕg-ēmŭs,	Aud-iēmŭs,
2.	Am-abĭtĭs,	Mŏn-ēbĭtĭs,	Rĕg-ētĭs,	Aud-iētĭs,
3.	Am-abunt.	Mŏn-ēbunt.	Rĕg-ent.	Aud-ient.

PERFECT (2d root), *have.*

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 1.	Amāv-ī,	Mŏnu-ī,	Rex-ī,	Audīv-ī,
2.	Amāv-istī,	Mŏnu-istī,	Rex-istī,	Audīv-istī,
3.	Amāv-ĭt;	Mŏnu-ĭt;	Rex-ĭt;	Audīv-ĭt;
P. 1.	Amāv-ĭmŭs,	Mŏnu-ĭmŭs,	Rex-ĭmŭs,	Audīv-ĭmŭs,
2.	Amāv-istĭs,	Mŏnu-istĭs,	Rex-istĭs,	Audīv-istĭs,
3.	Amāv-ērunt or ērĕ.	Mŏnu-ērunt or ērĕ.	Rex-ērunt or ērĕ.	Audīv-ērŭnt or ērĕ.

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *had.*

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 1.	Amāv-ĕrăm,	Mŏnu-ĕrăm,	Rex-ĕrăm,	Audīv-ĕrăm,
2.	Amāv-ĕras,	Mŏnu-ĕras,	Rex-ĕras,	Audīv-ĕras,
3.	Amāv-ĕrăt;	Mŏnu-ĕrăt;	Rex-ĕrăt;	Audīv-ĕrăt;
P. 1.	Amāv-ĕramus,	Mŏnu-ĕramus,	Rex-ĕramŭs,	Audīv-ĕramŭs,
2.	Amāv-ĕratĭs,	Mŏnu-ĕratĭs,	Rex-ĕratĭs,	Audīv-ĕratĭs,
3.	Amāv-ĕrant.	Mŏnu-ĕrant.	Rex-ĕrant.	Audīv-ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT (2d root), *shall* or *will have.*

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 1.	Amav-ĕrŏ,	Mŏnu-ĕrŏ,	Rex-ĕrŏ,	Audīv-ĕrŏ,
2.	Amāv-ĕrĭs,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭs,	Rex-ĕrĭs,	Audīv-ĕrĭs,
3.	Amāv-ĕrĭt;	Mŏnu-ĕrĭt;	Rex-ĕrĭt;	Audīv-ĕrĭt;
P. 1.	Amāv-ĕrĭmus,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭmŭs,	Rex-ĕrĭmŭs,	Audīv-ĕrĭmŭs,
2.	Amāv-ĕrĭtĭs,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭtĭs,	Rex-ĕrĭtĭs,	Audīv-ĕrĭtĭs,
3.	Amāv-ĕrint.	Mŏnu-ĕrint.	Rex-ĕrint.	Audīv-ĕrint.

PRONOUNS.

254. *Pronouns* are words which supply the place of nouns; as, *ĕgŏ*, I; *tū*, thou, &c.

255. Pronouns are divided into two classes; viz.,

1) *Substantive Pronouns;* as, *ĕgŏ*, *tū*, &c.
2) *Adjective Pronouns;* as, *hīc*, this; *illĕ*, that.

256. Substantive Pronouns are three in number, viz.: *ĕgŏ*, I (*which is of course of the first person*); *tū*, thou (*second person*); and *suī*, of himself (*third person*). These from their signification are often called *Personal Pronouns.*

257. Substantive Pronouns are declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.		
	1st *Person.*	2d *Person.*	3d *Person.*
N.	Egŏ, *I.*	Tū, *thou.*	
G.	Meī, *of me.*	Tuī, *of thee.*	Suī, *of himself, herself, itself.*
D.	Mihĭ, *to* or *for me.*	Tĭbĭ, *to* or *for thee.*	Sĭbĭ, *to himself, &c.*
A.	Mē, *me.*	Tē, *thee.*	Sē, *himself.*
V.		Tū, *O thou.*	
A.	Mē, *with, &c. me.*	Tē, *with thee.*	Sē, *with himself.*
	PLURAL.		
N.	Nōs, *we.*	Vōs, *ye* or *you.*	
G.	Nostrŭm, or Nostrī, *of us.*	Vestrŭm, or Vestrī, *of you.*	Suī, *of themselves.*
D.	Nōbīs, *to us.*	Vōbīs, *to you.*	Sĭbĭ, *to themselves.*
A.	Nōs, *us.*	Vōs, *you.*	Sē, *themselves.*
V.		Vōs, *O ye* or *you.*	
A.	Nōbīs, *with us.*	Vōbīs, *with you.*	Sē, *with themselves.*

258. As the ending of the verb shows the person of its subject, the nominative of pronouns is seldom expressed as the subject, except for the sake of *emphasis* or *contrast.*

259. VOCABULARY.

Agĕrĕ, ēg,	to drive, to lead, to do.	
Dē (*prep. with abl.*),	from, concerning.	
Dēdĕrĕ, dĕdĭd,	to surrender.	
Dēmonstrārĕ, āv,	to show, to demonstrate	(*demonstration*).
Egŏ,	I.	
Errārĕ, āv,	to err	(*error*).
Expōnĕrĕ, expŏsŭ,	to set forth, to explain	(*expose*).
Făcĕrĕ, (iŏ), fēc,	to make, to do, to act.	
Grātiă, ae,	gratitude, favor, *pl.* thanks.	
Gratias ăgĕrĕ,	to give thanks.	
Itĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, *n.*	journey, route	(*itinerant*).
Jūdĭcārĕ, āv,	to judge	(*judicature*).
Occultārĕ, āv,	to conceal	(*occultation*).
Poscĕrĕ, pŏposc,	to demand.	
Rēs, rĕī,	thing, affair, subject.	
Sĕd,	but.	
Sensŭs, ūs,	feeling, perception	(*sense*).
Tū	thou, you.	

260. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Rem omnem exposui. 2. Errāvi. 3. Ego de meo sensu judĭco. 4. Ego misi viros: puĕros tu misisti. 5. Hesterno die Balbum ad me vocāvi. 6. Vos judicavistis. 7. Nos judicabĭmus. 8. Mihi gratias egistis.

9. Caius itinĕra nostra servābat. 10. Fidem suam invīti servavērunt. 11. Agricŏlae est laborāre. 12. Caius, ut demonstravĭmus, itinĕra nostra servābat. 13. Caesar servos poposcit. 14. Nos servos non poposcĭmus.

(*b*) 1. We have read your letters. 2. *You* were playing, but *I* was writing. 3. He has given me a beautiful book. 4. He will give you (*to you*) thanks. 5. We shall thank you. 6. I had called the boy to me.

7. Yesterday you called the girls to you. 8. We have never opened your letters.

9. I have kept my word. 10. You have never broken your word. 11. They have accused you of theft. 12. The judge has condemned us to death (215). 13. We will not accuse you of treachery. 14. We shall not remain in the city.

LESSON XLVII.

Subjunctive Mood.—Four Conjugations.

261. Paradigm of the Subjunctive Mood.

PRESENT (1st root), *may* or *can*.			
Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
Am-ĕ*m*,	Mŏn-eă*m*,	Rĕg-ă*m*,	Aud-iă*m*,
Am-ē*s*,	Mŏn-eā*s*,	Rĕg-ā*s*,	Aud-iā*s*,
Am-ĕ*t*;	Mŏn-eă*t*;	Rĕg-ă*t*;	Aud-iă*t*;
Am-ē*mŭs*,	Mŏn-eā*mŭs*,	Rĕg-ā*mŭs*,	Aud-iā*mŭs*,
Am-ē*tĭs*,	Mŏn-eā*tĭs*,	Rĕg-ā*tĭs*,	Aud-iā*tĭs*,
Am-e*nt*.	Mŏn-ea*nt*.	Rĕg-a*nt*.	Aud-ia*nt*.
IMPERFECT (1st root), *might, could, would,* or *should*.			
Am-ārĕ*m*,	Mŏn-ērĕ*m*,	Rĕg-ĕrĕ*m*,	Aud-īrĕ*m*,
Am-ārē*s*,	Mŏn-ērē*s*,	Rĕg-ĕrē*s*,	Aud-īrē*s*,
Am-ārĕ*t*;	Mŏn-ērĕ*t*;	Rĕg-ĕrĕ*t*;	Aud-īrĕ*t*;
Am-ārē*mŭs*,	Mŏn-ērē*mŭs*,	Rĕg-ĕrē*mŭs*,	Aud-īrē*mŭs*,
Am-ārē*tĭs*,	Mŏn-ērē*tĭs*,	Rĕg-ĕrē*tĭs*,	Aud-īrē*tĭs*,
Am-āre*nt*,	Mŏn-ēre*nt*.	Rĕg-ĕre*nt*.	Aud-īre*nt*.
PERFECT (2d root), *may have*.			
Amāv-ĕrĭ*m*,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭ*m*,	Rex-ĕrĭ*m*,	Audīv-ĕrĭ*m*,
Amāv-ĕrĭ*s*,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭ*s*,	Rex-ĕrĭ*s*,	Audīv-ĕrĭ*s*,
Amāv-ĕrĭ*t*;	Mŏnu-ĕrĭ*t*;	Rex-ĕrĭ*t*;	Audīv-ĕrĭ*t*;
Amāv-ĕrĭ*mŭs*,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭ*mŭs*,	Rex-ĕrĭ*mŭs*,	Audīv-ĕrĭ*mŭs*,
Amāv-ĕrĭ*tĭs*,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭ*tĭs*,	Rex-ĕrĭ*tĭs*,	Audīv-ĕrĭ*tĭs*,
Amāv-ĕri*nt*.	Mŏnu ĕri*nt*,	Rex-ĕri*nt*.	Audīv-ĕri*nt*.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

PLUPERFECT (2d root), *might, could, would,* or *should have.*

Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
Amāv-issĕ*m*,	Mŏnu-issĕ*m*,	Rex-issĕ*m*,	Audīv-issĕ*m*,
Amāv-issē*s*,	Mŏnu-issē*s*,	Rex-issē*s*,	Audīv-issē*s*,
Amāv-issĕ*t*;	Mŏnu-issĕ*t*;	Rex-issĕ*t*;	Audīv-issĕ*t*;
Amāv-issē*mŭs*,	Mŏnu-issē*mŭs*,	Rex-issē*mŭs*,	Audīv-issē*mŭs*,
Amāv-issē*tĭs*,	Mŏnu-issē*tĭs*,	Rex-issē*tĭs*,	Audīv-issē*tĭs*,
Amāv-isse*nt*.	Mŏnu-isse*nt*.	Rex-isse*nt*.	Audīv-isse*nt*.

REM.—It will be observed that throughout the subjunctive the 1st person sing. ends in *m*.

262. The subjunctive with *ŭt* is used to express *a result;* e. g.,

Tantŭm est frīgŭs ŭt nix nōn lĭquescăt.
The cold is so great that the snow does not melt.

263. The subjunctive with *ŭt*, denoting result, generally depends upon a proposition which contains some word signifying *so, such, so great,* &c.; thus, in the above example, it depends upon *tantŭm* (*so great,* or *such*).

264. Hence, in turning English into Latin, *that* after *so, such, so great,* &c., must be translated by *ŭt*, and the verb which follows must be put in the subjunctive. (See example above.)

265. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *present, perfect definite,* or *future,* it must be put in the *present* tense, unless it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by the principal verb; and then it must be in the *perfect;* e. g.,

1. Tantă est puĕrī industriă ŭt multă discăt.
   The boy's industry is so great that he learns much.

2. Nesciō quĭd dixĕrĭt.
   I do not know what he has said.

REM.—In the first example, the subjunctive *discăt* (learns) is in the *present* tense, because the time of its action is the same as that of *est* (*pres.*) on which it depends, and in the second example *dixĕrĭt* (he has said) is in the *perfect*, because it represents its action as *completed* at the time denoted by *nesciō* (i. e. *pres.*).

266. When the subjunctive depends upon a verb in the *imperfect*, *perfect indefinite*, or *pluperfect*, it must be put in the *imperfect* tense, unless it represents its action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb, and then it must be in the *pluperfect*, e. g.,

1. Tantă *ĕrăt* puĕrī industriă ŭt multă *discĕrĕt.*
   The boy's industry *was* so great that he *learned* much.
2. *Nescīvī* quĭd *dixissĕt.*
   I *did* not *know* what he *had said.*

REM.—The imperf. *discĕrĕt* represents its action as *not completed*, while the pluperfect *dixissĕt* represents its action as *completed*.

266. A few adjectives in Latin are often used merely to specify some particular part of the nouns to which they belong; e. g.,

In summō montĕ, { on the highest mountain (*Lat. Id.*). on the top of the mountain (*Eng. Id.*).
In mĕdiīs ăquīs, { in the middle waters (*Lat. Id.*). in the middle (or midst) of the waters (*Eng. Id.*).

268. VOCABULARY.

Alpēs, Alpiŭm,	**Alps.**	
Conservārĕ, āv,	**to preserve**	***(conservative).***
Frangĕrĕ, frēg,	**to break.**	

Frīgŭs, ŏrĭs,	cold	(*frigid*).
Ĭbĭ,	there.	
Lĭquescĕrĕ, lĭcŭ,	to melt	(*liquid*).
Mĕdiŭs, ă, ŭm,	middle, midst of, middle of (267).	
Narĕ, āv,	to swim.	
Nondŭm,	not yet.	
Piscĭs, ĭs, *m.*,	fish.	
Summŭs, ă, ŭm,	highest, top (267)	(*summit*).
Tantŭs, ă, ŭm,	so great.	

269. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Venit ut me audiat. 2. Veni ut vos audiam. 3. Venērunt ut nos audiant. 4. Venērunt ut te audī-rent. 5. Ne violētis fidem. 6. In summo monte tan-tum est frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat.

7. In summis Alpĭbus tantum erat frigus ut nix ibi nunquam liquescĕret. 8. Venit ut patriam auro ven-dat. 9. Venisti ut patriam auro vendĕres. 10. Avis in summa arbŏre cantābat. 11. Multum voluptātis cepĕram.

(*b*) 1. The cold is so great that the snow does not melt (265). 2. The cold has been so great that the snow has not yet melted (265). 3. The cold was so great on the top of the mountain that the snow did not melt there (266). 4. The cold was so great on the top of the Alps that the snow did not melt there (266). 5. I have come to learn. 6. You have come to play.

7. Let him keep his word. 8. Do not break your word. 9. Do not sell your country for gold. 10. On the top[10] of the mountain the snow never melts. 11. On the top of the Alps the snow never melts. 12. The fish is swimming in the middle[10] of the water.

LESSON XLVIII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.— Verbs in io *of the Third Conjugation.—Demonstrative Pronouns.*

270. A FEW verbs of the third conjugation are inflected (i. e. form their tenses, numbers, and persons) in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and in the present subjunctive, like verbs of the fourth conjugation. The following is an example.

REM. In the present, first and second persons plural, the *i* in the penult is short; as, *căpĭmŭs*, *căpĭtĭs*.

271. Paradigm of Verbs in *iŏ* of the Third Conjugation.

Căpĕrĕ, *to take;* 1st root, *căp;* 2d, *cēp.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Singular.	*Plural.*
Căp-iŏ, *I take.*	Cap-ĭmŭs, *we take.*
Căp-ĭs, *thou takest.*	Cap-ĭtĭs, *ye* or *you take.*
Căp-ĭt, *he takes.*	Cap-iunt, *they take.*

IMPERFECT.

Căp-iēbăm, *I was taking.*	Căp-iēbāmŭs, *we were taking.*
Căp-iēbas, *thou wast taking.*	Căp-iēbātĭs, *ye* or *you were taking.*
Căp-iēbăt, *he was taking.*	Căp-iēbant, *they were taking.*

FUTURE.

Căp-iăm, *I shall take.*	Căp-iēmŭs, *we shall take.*
Căp-iēs, *thou wilt take.*	Căp-iētis, *ye* or *you will take.*
Căp-iĕt, *he will take.*	Căp-ient, *they will take.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Căp-iăm, *I may take.*	Căp-iāmŭs, *we may take.*
Căp-iās, *thou mayest take.*	Căp-iātĭs, *ye* or *you may take.*
Căp-iăt, *he may take.*	Căp-iant, *they may take.*

REM.—The remaining parts of the indicative and subjunctive moods, in verbs in iŏ, are entirely regular.

272. It has been stated (255) that pronouns are divided into two classes, viz., *Substantive Pronouns* and *Adjective Pronouns.*

273. Adjective pronouns are so called, because they are sometimes used as *pronouns to supply the place of* nouns, and sometimes as *adjectives to qualify nouns.* These are divided into several classes.

274. *Demonstrative Pronouns,* so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer, are *hĭc, illĕ, istĕ, ĭs,* and *their compounds,* and are declined as follows:

1. Hīc, *this.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Hīc,	haec,	hŏc.	Hī,	hae,	haec.
G.	Hujŭs,	hujŭs,	hujŭs.	Hōrŭm,	hārŭm,	hōrŭm.
D.	Huīc,	huīc,	huīc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
A.	Hunc,	hanc,	hŏc.	Hōs,	hās,	haec.
V.						
A.	Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

2. Illĕ, *he* or *that.*

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Illĕ,	illă,	illŭd.	Illī,	illae,	illă.
G.	Illīŭs,	illīŭs,	illīŭs.	Illōrŭm,	illārŭm,	illōrŭm.
D.	Illī,	illī,	illī.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
A.	Illŭm,	illăm,	illŭd.	Illōs,	illās,	illă.
V.						
A.	Illō,	illā,	illō.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

3. Istĕ, *that.*

Istĕ, *that,* is declined like *illĕ.* It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

PARADIGMS—*continued.*

4. Is, *he* or *that.*

(Less specific than *illă.*)

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Is,	eă,	ĭd.	Iī,	eae,	eă.
G.	Ejŭs,	ejŭs,	ejŭs.	Eōrŭm,	eārŭm,	eōrŭm.
D.	Eī,	eī,	eī.	Iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs.
A.	Eŭm,	eăm,	ĭd.	Eōs,	eās,	eă.
V.						
A.	Eō,	eā,	eō.	Iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs.

5. Idĕm, *the same.*

(Formed by annexing *dĕm* to *is.*)

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N	Idĕm,	eădĕm,	ĭdĕm.	Iīdĕm,	eaedĕm,	eădĕm.
G.	Ejusdĕm,	ejusdĕm,	ejusdĕm.	Eōrundĕm,	eārundĕm,	eōrundĕm.
D.	Eīdĕm,	eīdĕm,	eīdĕm.	Eisdĕm, *or* Iisdĕm,	eisdĕm, *or* iisdĕm,	eisdĕm, *or* iisdĕm.
A.	Eundĕm,	eandĕm,	ĭdĕm.	Eōsdĕm,	eāsdĕm,	eădĕm.
V.						
A.	Eōdĕm,	eādĕm,	eōdĕm.	Eisdĕm, *or* Iisdĕm,	eisdĕm, *or* iisdĕm,	eisdĕm, *or* iisdĕm.

275. Vocabulary.

Ab (*prep. with abl.*),	from.	
Castră, ōrŭm (*plur.*),	camp.	
Cĕlĕrĭtĕr,	quickly.	
Clēmentiă, ae,	mildness, clemency	
Confŭgĕrĕ (iō), confūg,	to flee for refuge.	
Cŭm (*prep. with abl.*),	with.	
Dīmittĕrĕ, dīmīs,	dismiss.	
Ex (*prep. with abl.*),	from.	
Impĕtŭs, ūs,	attack	(*impetus*).
Impĕrată, ōrŭm,	commands.	
Lŏcŭs, ī,	place, position	(*local*).
Mŏvērĕ, mōv,	to move, to put in motion.	

Postĕră, ŭm (*mas. not used*),	**next, following.**
Postŭlārĕ, āv,	**to demand.**
Prŏmittĕrĕ, prŏmīs,	**to promise.**
Prŏmŏvērĕ, prŏmōv,	**to move forward, to advance.**
Vērŏ,	**indeed, truly.**

276. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Postĕro die castra ex eo loco movent. 2. Idem facit Caesar. 3. Idem faciēbant. 4. Ego vero istud non postŭlo. 5. Veni ut legĕrem. 6. Haec promisistis. 7. Eōdem die castra promōvit.

8. Hi primi (205) cum gladiis impĕtum fecērunt. 9. Illi imperāta celerĭter fecērunt. 10. Ibi me non occidisti. 11. Eum ab se dimittit. 12. Venisti ut eum vidēres. 13. Hunc capĭtis damnābunt. 14. Illos proditiōnis invīti accusaverātis.

(*b*) 1. I will give you this book. 2. We prize these beautiful books very highly. 3. They will think little of those beautiful books. 4. You have condemned this man to death. 5. I will entreat him not to do (that he may not do) this.

6. I have unwillingly condemned him to death. 7. We will not accuse you of treachery. 8. You have accused him of bribery. 9. We entreated him not to accuse his son. 10. We did not make the attack. 11. They asked us to make an attack.

LESSON XLIX.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Intensive Pronoun.

277. The *Intensive Pronoun*, *ipsĕ*, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic;*

it is also called an *adjunctive* pronoun, because it is usually joined to a noun, or to some other pronoun; as, *Rōmŭlŭs ipsĕ*, Romulus himself; *tū ipsĕ*, you yourself.

278. *Ipsĕ*, when joined to a noun or pronoun, may sometimes be translated by *very;* as, hōc *ipsŭm*, this *very* thing.

279. *Ipsĕ* is declined as follows:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Ipsĕ,	ipsă,	ipsŭm.	Ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsă.
G.	Ipsīŭs,	ipsīŭs,	ipsīŭs.	Ipsōrŭm,	ipsārŭm,	ipsōrŭm.
D.	Ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.
A.	Ipsŭm,	ipsăm,	ipsŭm.	Ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsă.
V.						
A.	Ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

REM.—The substantive pronouns are rendered *intensive* by annexing the syllable *mĕt;* as, *ĕgŏmĕt*, I myself. In the substantive pronoun of the third person, *sēsĕ* is used *intensively* in the accusative and ablative of both numbers.

280. VOCABULARY.

Accēdĕrĕ, access,	to approach	(*access*).
At,	but, yet.	
Fortūnă, ae,	fortune.	
Fŭgă, ae,	flight.	
Gĕnŭs, gĕnĕrĭs,	kind, nature.	
Justŭs, ă, ŭm,	just, fair.	
Nŭmĕrŭs, ī,	number	(*numerous*).
Occultārĕ, āv,	to conceal	(*occult*).
Respondērĕ, respond,	to answer	(*respond*).
Usquĕ,	as far as; *usque ad*, even to.	

281. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Ipse fuga mortem vitavĕrat. 2. Ipse ad castra hostium accessit. 3. Ipsi usque ad castra hostium

accessĕrant. 4. Caius sese occultābat. 5. Servi nostri sese occultābunt. 6. Ipse dixit. 7. Hoc ipsum justum est. 8. At te eădem tua fortūna servāvit. 9. Caesar haec promīsit. 10. Ad haec legāti respondērunt.

(*b*) 1. He himself accused the son of the king. 2. We shall accuse the king himself. 3. You yourself gave me this book. 4. They will read this very (*ipsĕ*) book. 5. We ourselves will go to see the queen. 6. They have gone to see the queen herself.

7. You promised this. 8. We will ourselves do the same. 9. You have said nothing of (*de*) the nature of the war. 10. We shall say nothing of the war itself. 11. They had come to condemn me to death.

LESSON L.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns.

282. THE *Relative Pronoun*, *quī*, who, is so called, because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N*
N.	Quī,	quae,	quŏd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G.	Cujŭs,	cujŭs,	cujŭs.	Quōrŭm,	quārŭm,	quōrŭm.
D.	Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs.
A.	Quĕm,	quăm,	quŏd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.						
A.	Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs.

283. Rule of Syntax.—The relative agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number;* as, Puĕr quī scrībĭt, *the boy who writes.*

Rem.—*Quī* is in the masculine singular, to agree with its antecedent *puĕr;* but it is in the *nominative* because it is the subject of *scrībĭt,* and not because its antecedent is in the nominative.

284. The *Interrogative* Pronouns, *quĭs* and *quī,* are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively,* and is declined like the relative. *Quĭs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively,* and is declined like the relative, except the forms *quĭs, quĭd,* as follows:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Quĭs,	quae,	quĭd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G.	Cujŭs,	cujŭs,	cujŭs.	Quōrŭm,	quārŭm,	quōrŭm.
D.	Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs.
A.	Quĕm,	quăm,	quĭd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.						
A.	Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs.

285. Vocabulary.

Ampliŭs (*comp. adv. from ample*),	more, further.
Cōgĭtārĕ, āv,	to think, to think about.
Cōgnoscĕrĕ, cōgnōv,	to ascertain.
Cōrăm,	openly, in person.
Exspectārĕ, āv,	to await, expect.
Nuntiŭs, ī,	messenger.
Parvŭs, ă, ŭm,	little, small.
Perspĭcĕrĕ, perspex,	to perceive, to see
Plānē,	plainly.
Vŏcārĕ, āv,	to call.

286. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Quis nos vocăbit? 2. Quid dixisti? 3. Quid cogĭtas? 4. Quid times? 5. Quis tibi hunc librum dedit? 6. Eădem quae ex nuntiis cognovĕrat, coram perspĭcit. 7. In qua urbe vivĭmus? 8. Illi, quod nemo fecĕrat, fecērunt. 9. Quid est quod amplius exspectes? 10. Quam urbem habēmus? 11. Quis Caium proditiōnis (214) accūsat? 12. Quem ambĭtus accusavisti? 13. Carthagĭne invītus manēbo. 14. Biennium Romae invīti manēbant. 15. Summam prudentiam simulatiōne stultitiae texistis.

(*b*) 1. Whom do you love? 2. I see the slave whom you punished. 3. Who has sold his country for gold? 4. Who gave the boy this beautiful book? 5. Who will show me the way? 6. I will show you the house which my father built.

7. Which book were you reading? 8. I was reading the book which you gave me. 9. We all read to learn (that we may learn). 10. You have remained at Rome many years. 11. How much time you have lost!

LESSON LI.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Interrogative Particles.

287. *Nĕ* and *nŭm* are interrogative particles; and when a question has no interrogative pronoun (284) or interrogative adverb, one of these particles must be used.

288. If *nĕ* is used, it must *follow* and be joined to some other word; and, if there is a *not* in the sentence, it must be joined to the *nōn* (not), making *nonnĕ;* e. g.,

1. Scrībit*nĕ* Caiŭs? Is Caius writing?
2. Non*nĕ* scrībĭt? Is not he writing?
3. *Nŭm* scrībĭt Caiŭs? Is Caius writing? [No.]

REM.—A question *with nĕ* and *without nōn* asks for information (Ex. 1), with *nōn* expects the answer *yes* (Ex. 2), and with *nŭm* expects the answer *no* (Ex. 3); thus, Nŭm scrībĭt Caiŭs, means, *Caius is not writing, is he?*

289. VOCABULARY.*

Aspergĕrĕ, aspers, *sprinkle.*
Ară, ae, *altar.*
Auctumnŭs, ī, *autumn.*
Construĕrĕ, construx, *to build, construct.*
Immergĕrĕ, immers, *to plunge into.*
In (*prep. with accus. or abl.*), with accus., *to, into, against;* with abl., *in.*
Nīdŭs, ī, *nest.*
Pĕrīcŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm, *dangerous.*
Sanguĭs, ĭnĭs, *m., blood.*
Sēmĕn, ĭnĭs, *seed.*
Spargĕrĕ, spars, *to scatter, to sow.*
Victĭmă, ae, *victim.*

290. *Exercises.*

(In construing, omit the *nĕ* or *nŭm*, but make the sentence a question.)

(*a*) 1. Scripsitne Caius?† 2. Num scripserātis? 3. Num rex portas urbis sua manu claudet? 4. Quid rides?

---

* It has been thought unnecessary longer to insert *key-words* in the Vocabularies, but it is hoped the pupil will still continue to accustom himself to associate with his Latin at least some of the more common English words which have been derived from it.

† In construing a question, the auxiliary verb (*does, do, did, has, have*) must be put before the subject; as, Scripsitne puer, *Has the boy written?* or, *Did the boy write?*

5. Caius se in flumen immersit. 6. Periculōsum est hiĕme se in flumen immergĕre. 7. Puer se in flumen immergat. 8. *Agricolārum est*[7] semĭna auctumno spargĕre. 9. Nonnĕ in *summis Alpĭbus* tantum est frigus, ut nix ibi nunquam liquescat? 10. Sacerdos victimārum sanguĭne aram aspersit. 11. Nonnĕ boni est pastōris[7] tondēre oves, non deglubĕre?

(*b*) 1. Does he live to eat? [No.] 2. Does not he eat to live? 3. The husbandman has scattered seeds. 4. Have not the husbandmen scattered seeds? 5. He has plunged the body into *the middle of the waters*. 6. Let fish swim in the *midst of the waters*. 7. They *have come* to condemn (239) you *to death*.[8] 8. Can he swim in the *middle of the waters?*[10] [No.] 9. The boy's industry is so great, that he can learn all things. 10. Has not a wolf bitten the sheep? 11. Are you shearing the sheep?

LESSON LII.

Indicative and Subjunctive Moods, continued.—Pronouns, Indefinite and Possessive.

291. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quīdăm*, a certain one; *ălĭquĭs*, some one; *quisquĕ*, every one; *sīquĭs*, if any, &c.

292. The *indefinite pronouns* are compounds either of *quĭs* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

293. *Quīdăm*, compounded of *quī* and *dăm*, is declined like *quī*, except in the neuter singular, where it

takes *quĭd* (instead of *quŏd*) when used *substantively* and in the accusative singular and genitive plural, where *m* before *d* is changed into *n;* as, *quendăm* (not *quemdăm*), *quōrundăm* (not *quōrumdăm*).

294. *Ălĭquĭs*, compounded of *ălĭŭs* and *quĭs*, is declined like *quĭs*, except in the neuter singular, nominative and accusative, where it has *ălĭquŏd* adjective, and *ălĭquĭd* substantive; and in the feminine singular and neuter plural, where it has *ălĭquă*. It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Alĭquĭs,	ălĭquă,	ălĭquŏd *or* ălĭquĭd.
G.	Alĭcujŭs,	ălĭcujŭs,	ălĭcujŭs.
D.	Alĭcuī,	ălĭcuī,	ălĭcuī.
A.	Alĭquĕm,	ălĭquăm,	ălĭquŏd *or* ălĭquĭd.
V.			
A.	Alĭquō,	ălĭquā,	ălĭquō.
	PLURAL.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Alĭquī,	ălĭquae,	ălĭquă.
G.	Alĭquōrŭm,	ălĭquārŭm,	ălĭquōrŭm.
D.	Alĭquĭbŭs,	ălĭquĭbŭs,	ălĭquĭbŭs.
A.	Alĭquōs,	ălĭquās,	ălĭquă.
V.			
A.	Alĭquĭbŭs,	ălĭquĭbŭs,	ălĭquĭbŭs.

295. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *meŭs, meă, meŭm; tuŭs, tuă, tuŭm; suŭs, suă, suŭm; nostĕr, nostră, nostrŭm; vestĕr, vestră, vestrŭm*, are declined, as we have already seen (114, REM. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

296. VOCABULARY.

A (*prep. with abl.*), *from.*
Argentŭm, ī, *silver.*
Concĭliŭm, ī, *council.*
Contĭnērĕ, ŭ, *to restrain, confine.*
Culpă, ae, *fault.*
Indīcĕrĕ, indix, *to declare (as war).*
Inflīgĕrĕ, inflix, *inflict.*
Sī, *if.*
Ullŭs, ă, ŭm (113, REM.), *any.*
Vulnŭs, ĕrĭs, *wound.*

297. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Alĭquid tempŏris invītus amittes. 2. Non est tua ulla culpa, si te alĭqui timuērunt. 3. Alĭquis est in horto tuo. 4. Caesar suos a proelio continēbat. 5. Legātos ad Caesărem misit. 6. Legāti ad concilium venērunt. 7. Christianōrum est fidem suam servāre. 8. Turpe est patriae tuae leges violāre. 9. Rex urbi bellum indīcet. 10. Anguis agricŏlae vulnus infligēbat. 11. Tanta est industria tua, ut multa discas. 12. Tanta fuit industria tua ut multa discĕrēs.

(*b*) 1. Some one has accused you of bribery. 2. They have accused certain persons of theft. 3. He will condemn some one to death. 4. We have lost some time. 5. The shepherd has sold his dog for gold. 6. It is the duty of a father to instruct his sons. 7. Who has accused you of theft? 8. No one has accused me of theft. 9. Some one has accused you of treachery. 10. Who has accused me of treachery? 11. The king himself has accused you of treachery.

LESSON LIII.

Verb.—Essĕ.

298. THE verb *essĕ*, to be, is called a substantive verb, except when used as an auxiliary in the passive

voice (not yet examined) of other verbs. Its conjugation is quite irregular.

299. Paradigm of the verb Essĕ.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

Singular.	*Plural.*
Sŭm, *I am.*	Sŭmŭs, *we are.*
Es, *thou art.*	Estĭs, *you are.*
Est, *he is.*	Sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT (*was*).

Erăm, *I was.*	Erāmŭs, *we were.*
Erās, *thou wast.*	Erātĭs, *you were.*
Erăt, *he was.*	Erant, *they were.*

FUTURE (*shall* or *will be*).

Erŏ, *I shall be.*	Erĭmŭs, *we shall be.*
Erĭs, *thou wilt be.*	Erĭtĭs, *you will be.*
Erĭt, *he will be.*	Erunt, *they will be.*

PERFECT (*have been* or *was*).

Fuī, *I have been.*	Fuĭmŭs, *we have been.*
Fuistī, *thou hast been.*	Fuistĭs, *you have been.*
Fuĭt, *he has been.*	Fuērunt, Fuērĕ, } *they have been.*

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

Fuĕrăm, *I had been.*	Fuĕrāmŭs, *we had been.*
Fuĕrās, *thou hadst been.*	Fuĕrātĭs, *you had been.*
Fuĕrăt, *he had been.*	Fuĕrant, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall* or *will have been*).

Fuĕrŏ, *I shall have been.*	Fuĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been.*
Fuĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been.*	Fuĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been.*
Fuĕrĭt, *he will have been.*	Fuĕrint, *they will have been.*

PARADIGM—*continued.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may* or *can be*).

Singular.	*Plural.*
Sĭm, *I may be.*	Sīmŭs, *we may be.*
Sīs, *thou mayest be.*	Sītĭs, *you may be.*
Sĭt, *he may be.*	Sint, *they may be.*

IMPERFECT (*might, could, would,* or *should be*).

Essĕm, *I might be.*	Essēmŭs, *we might be.*
Essēs, *thou mightest be.*	Essētĭs, *you might be.*
Essĕt, *he might be.*	Essent, *they might be.*

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuĕrim, *I may have been.*	Fuĕrīmŭs, *we may have been.*
Fuĕrĭs, *thou mayest have been.*	Fuĕrītĭs, *you may have been.*
Fuĕrĭt, *he may have been.*	Fuĕrint, *they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT (*might, could, would,* or *should have been*).

Fuissĕm, *I might have been.*	Fuissēmŭs, *we might have been.*
Fuissēs, *thou mightest have been.*	Fuissētĭs, *you might have been.*
Fuissĕt, *he might have been.*	Fuissent, *they might have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

Es, *or* estŏ, *be thou.*	Estĕ *or* estōtĕ, *be ye.*
Estŏ, *let him be.*	Suntŏ, *let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essĕ, *to be.*
PERFECT,	Fuissĕ, *to have been.*
FUTURE,	Fŭtūrŭs (ă, ŭm) essĕ, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fŭtūrŭs, ă, ŭm, *about to be.*

* The remaining forms are given here in order to complete the Paradigm of the verb *essĕ*, although the nature and use of the *imperative* and *infinitive* moods, and of the *participles*, have not yet been examined; a word of explanation will be sufficient for this place.

300. The *Imperative Mood* denotes a command, and of course is never used in the first person.

301. The *Infinitive Mood*, as we have already seen (9), represents simply the meaning of the verb, without person or number. It has three tenses, *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

302. The *Participle* is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective; thus, the participle *fŭtūrŭs, ă, ŭm*, is declined like the adjective *bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm* (112).

303. Vocabulary.

Absolvĕrĕ, absolv, *to acquit.*
Admīrātiō, ōnĭs, *admiration.*
Brĕvĭs, ĕ, *short.*
Dīgnŭs, ă, ŭm, *worthy.*
Ferrŭm, ī, *iron.*
Hăbĭtārĕ, āv, *to dwell, to inhabit.*
Hŏnŏr, ōrĭs, *honor*
Incertŭs, ă, ŭm, *uncertain.*
Indīgnŭs, ă, ŭm, *unworthy.*
Mens, tĭs, *mind, reasoning faculty.*
Opŭs, ĕrĭs, *work.*
Tranquillŭs, ă, ŭm, *calm, tranquil.*
Ūtĭlĭs, ĕ, *useful.*

304. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla. 2. Est tuum* iter facĕre. 3. Puer in horto fuĕrat. 4. His honorĭbus (181) digni sitis. 5. Caius vita indīgnus est. 6. Ferrum et aurum sunt utilia. 7. Haec opĕra sunt admiratiōne digna. 8. Vita est brevis et incerta. 9. Improbōrum[7] est malos laudāre. 10. Venĭmus ut patriae tuae leges violarēmus. 11. Veniant servi ut portas urbis claudant. 12. Multos annos Romae habitaverātis.

(*b*) 1. The good will be happy. 2. May you be happy. 3. We all might have been happy. 4. It is

---

* **Est tuŭm, it is yours; i. e., your duty.**

my duty to keep the laws of my country. 5. May he ever be worthy of this honor. 6. He would have been unworthy of his father.

7. He had been king many years. 8. We will never praise the bad. 9. They will condemn us to death. 10. We will never accuse the good. 11. He had broken his arm at Athens. 12. Virtue is the highest wisdom. 13. We will acquit you of bribery (214.)

LESSON LIV.

Verb Essĕ, *continued.—Comparison of Adjectives.*

305. ADJECTIVES in Latin, as in English, may express different degrees of the quality which they denote; e. g.,

Altŭs,	altiŏr,	altissĭmŭs.
High,	higher,	highest.

REM.—In this example, *altŭs* (high) is said to be in the *positive degree; altiŏr* in the *comparative;* and *altissĭmŭs,* in the *superlative.*

306. In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			*Superlative.*		
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
iŏr,	iŏr,	iŭs.	issĭmŭs,	issĭmă,	issĭmŭm.

Examples.	*Root.*	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
Altŭs (*high*),	alt.	altiŏr (iŏr, iŭs),	altissĭmŭs (ă, ŭm).
Mītĭs (*mild*),	mīt.	mītiŏr (iŏr, iŭs),	mītissĭmŭs (ă, ŭm).

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ĕr* add *rĭmŭs* (ă, ŭm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchĕr, pulchriŏr, pulcherrĭmŭs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *lĭs* form the superlative by adding *lĭmŭs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Făcĭlĭs (*easy*),	făcĭlĭŏr,	făcillĭmŭs.
Diffĭcĭlĭs (*difficult*),	diffĭcĭlĭŏr,	diffĭcillĭmŭs.
Sĭmĭlĭs (*like*),	sĭmĭlĭŏr,	sĭmillĭmŭs.
Dissĭmĭlĭs (*unlike*),	dissĭmĭlĭŏr,	dissĭmillĭmŭs.

Rem. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bŏnŭs (*good*),	mĕlĭŏr,	optĭmŭs.
Mălŭs (*bad*),	pejŏr,	pessĭmŭs.
Măgnŭs (*great*),	majŏr,	maxĭmŭs.
Parvŭs (*little*),	mĭnŏr,	mĭnĭmŭs.
Multŭs (*much*),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūră),	plūrĭmŭs.

307. The conjunction *quăm* is generally used with the comparative degree, unless one of the persons or things compared is the subject of the proposition, in which case *quăm* is usually omitted, though sometimes used; e. g.,

1. Nihĭl est clēmentiā dīvīniŭs.
   Nothing is more godlike than clemency.
2. Eurōpă mĭnŏr est quăm Asiă.
   Europe is smaller than Asia.

308. Rule of Syntax.—The comparative degree without *quăm* is followed by the ablative.

Rem. 1.—Clēmentiā in the first example is in the ablative by this rule.

Rem. 2.—If *quăm* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes: thus, *Asiă*, which follows *quăm* in the second example, is in the same case as *Eurōpă*, which precedes.

309. The conjunction *quăm* before a superlative renders it intensive; e. g.,

Quăm plūrĭmī, { *Eng. Id.* As many as possible. / *Lat. Id.* As the most. }

Quăm maxĭmŭs, { *Eng. Id.* { As great as possible. / The greatest possible. } / *Lat. Id.* As the greatest. }

REM.—The superlative may often be best translated by *very* instead of *most;* as, *mons altissĭmus*, a very high mountain.

310. VOCABULARY.

Amplŭs, ă, ŭm, *extensive, great.*
Argentŭm, ī, *silver.*
Cĕlĕbĕr, brĭs, brĕ, *celebrated.*
Cĭcĕrŏ, ōnĭs, *Cicero.*
Dīvīnŭs, ă, ŭm, *divine.*
Fŭtūrŭs, ă, ŭm, *future.*
Grăvĭs, ĕ, *heavy.*
Impendĕrĕ, *to overhang, to threaten.*
Ignōrātiŏ, ōnĭs, *ignorance.*
Mălŭm, ī, *an evil.*
Prĕtiōsŭs, ă, ŭm, *valuable.*
Quăm, *than.*
Quăm maxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm, *as great as possible.*
Rătiŏ, ōnĭs, *reason.*
Scientiă, ae, *knowledge.*
Turrĭs, ĭs, *tower.*

311. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Aurum gravius est argento. 2. Ignorātio futurōrum malōrum utilior est quam scientia. 3. Difficillĭmum est iram placāre. 4. In summis montĭbus [10] acerrĭmum est frigus.

5. Vĕniunt ut copias compărent. 6. Vēnit ut quam maxĭmas[9] copias comparāret. 7. Turris est altior muro. 8. Quid est in homĭne ratiōne divinius? 9. Mons altissĭmus impendēbat. 10. Cicĕro erat orātor celeberrĭmus. 11. Romāni ampliōres copias exspectābant.

(*b*) 1. Gold is very heavy. 2. Gold is more valuable than silver. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than gold and silver. 4. You are building a very high wall. 5. You have your wall higher than your tower. 6. We shall raise very large forces. 7. You have raised larger forces than the king himself.

8. We have come to raise as large forces as possible.[9] 9 Let them raise as large forces as possible. 10. It is[6] very easy to keep one's word. 11. It is easier to keep one's word than to appease anger. 12. Who was more celebrated than Cicero? 13. He was a very celebrated orator.

LESSON LV

Compounds of Essĕ.—*Comparison of Adverbs.—Numeral Adjectives.*

312. The compounds of *essĕ* (except *possĕ*, to be able, which is irregular, and will be noticed hereafter) are conjugated like the simple *essĕ*. *prōdessĕ*, however (compounded of *prō*, for, and *essĕ*, to be), inserts *d* after *prō* in those parts which in the simple verb begin with *e;* as,

Pres. Prōsŭm, prō*dĕs*, prōdest, prōsŭmŭs, prōdestĭs, prōsunt, &c.

313. The compounds of *essĕ* (*except possĕ*) are followed by the dative, as they take *only* an indirect object (82 and 643, 2); e. g.,

Mihĭ prōfuĭt.
It profited me (*did good to me*).

Rem.—Here it is plain that *mihĭ* (to me) is not a *direct*, but only an *indirect* object.

314. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison: the comparative of the adverb being the same as the neuter comparative of the adjective, and the superlative being formed from that of the adjective by changing the ending *ŭs* into ē; as,

Adj.	Altŭs,	altiŏr (iŭs *neut.*),	altissĭmŭs.
Adv.	Altē,	altiŭs,	altissĭmē.

NUMERALS.

315. Numerals comprise,

(*a*) Numeral adjectives, consisting of three distinct classes; viz.,

1) *Cardinals*, which denote simply the *number* of objects; as, *ūnŭs*, one; *duŏ*, two, &c.

2) *Ordinals*, which denote the *position* of any object in a *series;* as, *prīmŭs*, first; *sĕcundŭs*, second.

3) *Distributives*, which denote the *number* of objects which are taken *at a time;* as, *singŭlī*, one by one; *bīnī*, two by two.

(*b*) Numeral adverbs; as, *sĕmĕl*, once; *bĭs*, twice. (See Numerals, 583.)

316. Rule of Syntax.—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., Mīlĕs fortĭtĕr pūgnăt, *the soldier fights bravely.* Haud diffĭcĭlĭs, *not difficult.*

317. (*a*) The first three cardinals, *ūnŭs*, *duŏ*, and *trēs*, are declined as follows:

1. Paradigm of ūnŭs, *one.*

N. Unŭs,	ūnă,	ūnŭm.	Unī,	ūnae,	ūnă.
G. Unīŭs,	ūnīŭs,	ūnīŭs.	Unōrŭm,	ūnārŭm,	ūnōrŭm.
D. Unī,	ūnī,	ūnī.	Unīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs.
A. Unŭm,	ūnăm,	ūnŭm.	Unōs,	ūnās,	ūnă.
V. Unĕ,	ūnă,	ūnŭm.			
A. Unō,	ūnā,	ūnō.	Unīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs.

Rem.—The plural of *ūnŭs*, as a numeral, is used only with nouns which have no singular.

2. Paradigms of duŏ, *two*, and trēs, *three.*

N. Duŏ,	duae,	duŏ.	Trēs (*m. & f.*),	triă.
G. Duōrŭm,	duārŭm,	duōrŭm.	Triŭm,	triŭm.
D. Duōbŭs,	duābŭs,	duōbŭs.	Trĭbŭs,	trĭbŭs.
A. Duōs *and* duŏ,	duās,	duŏ.	Trēs,	triă.
V. Duŏ,	duae,	duŏ.	Trēs,	triă.
A. Duōbŭs,	duābŭs,	duōbŭs.	Trĭbŭs,	trĭbŭs.

REM.—Trēs is declined like the plural of tristĭs (153).

(*b*) Cardinal numbers, from four to one hundred, are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bŏnŭs* (112); e. g., dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred.*

318. Ordinals are declined like *bŏnŭs.* Distributives are declined like the plural of *bŏnŭs.*

319. Whenever the same noun belongs to both members of a comparison in Latin, it is generally expressed in the first and omitted in the second; in English, however, it is expressed in the first, and represented in the second by the pronoun *that* or *those;* e. g.,

Mărĭs sŭpĕrfĭciēs majŏr est quăm terrae.

The sea's surface is greater than (*that**) of the land.

REM.—Hence, in translating English into Latin, *that, those,* after *than,* should be omitted.

320. VOCABULARY.

Concertārĕ, āv, *to contend, quarrel.*
Contĭnuŭs, ă, ŭm, *successive.*
Dĕcĕm, *ten.*
Dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm, *tenth.*
Duŏ, duae, duŏ, *two.*
Intĕressĕ, interfu, *to be engaged in.*
Mărĕ, ĭs, *sea.*
Obessĕ, obfu, *to be prejudicial to.*
Omnīnŏ, *altogether, in all.*
Prōdessĕ, prōfu, *to do good, to profit.*
Prōdūcĕrĕ, prōdux, *to lead forward* or *out.*
Quartŭs, ă, ŭm, *fourth.*
Quinquĕ, *five.*
Sŭpĕrfĭciēs, ēī, *surface.*
Terră, ae, *earth.*

321. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Milĭtes fortĭter pugnant. 2. Romāni fortius quam hostes pugnavērunt. 3. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit. 4. Erant omnīno itinĕra duo. 5. Caesar *quam max-*

* Here *that* stands for *the surface.*

ĭmas copias comparavĕrat. 6. Caius, vir summo ingenio praedĭtus, Romae habĭtat. 7. Servus meus proelio interfuit. 8. Fides plurĭmis profuit. 9. Christianorum est[7] avaritiam damnare. 10. Caius multis proeliis interfuĕrat. 11. Terrae superficies minor est quam maris. 12. Caesar decĭmam legiōnem misit.

(*b*) 1. They will fight bravely. 2. You fought more bravely than the Romans. 3. The king himself was engaged in the battle. 4. He fought very bravely. 5. Ten legions were engaged in the first battle. 6. The soldiers of the tenth legion fought more bravely than those[h] of the fourth. 7. Anger has often *been prejudicial* to states. 8. It is the part of a Christian to do good to as many as possible. 9. Caesar raised the greatest forces possible. 10. Many states relying on their strength will raise forces.

LESSON LVI.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for continued Action.

322. A TRANSITIVE verb (72) may represent its subject,

1) As acting upon some object; as, Pătĕr fīliŭm dŏcĕt, *the father teaches his son;* it is then said to be in the *Active Voice.*

2) As acted upon by some other person or thing; as, Fīliŭs ā pătrĕ dŏcētŭr, *the son is taught by his father;* it is then said to be in the *Passive Voice.*

Rem.—The forms which have been used in the previous exercises all belong to the active voice: we shall now consider the formation and use of the passive.

323. The third persons (singular and plural) of the tenses for continued action (190), both in the indicative and subjunctive moods, are formed in the passive voice, by adding the ending *ŭr* to the corresponding forms of the active.

a) But observe that the vowel before the *t* in the singular is long, except from *ĭt* in the third conjugation, and from *ābĭt* and *ēbĭt*.

324. The following table presents the formation of the third persons of the passive in the moods and tenses just mentioned.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present (1st root), *is, are loved*, &c.

Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
Am-ăt,	Mŏn-ĕt,	Rĕg-ĭt,	Aud-ĭt,
Am-ātŭr.	Mŏn-ētŭr.	Rĕg-ĭtŭr.	Aud-ītŭr.
Am-ant,	Mŏn-ent,	Rĕg-unt,	Aud-iunt,
Am-antŭr.	Mŏn-entŭr.	Rĕg-untŭr.	Aud-iuntŭr.

Imperfect (1st root), *was, were loved*, &c.

Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
Am-ābăt,	Mŏn-ēbăt,	Rĕg-ēbăt,	Aud-iēbăt,
Am-ābatŭr.	Mŏn-ēbatŭr.	Rĕg-ēbatŭr.	Aud-iēbatŭr.
Am-ābant,	Mŏn-ēbant,	Rĕg-ēbant,	Aud-iēbant,
Am-ābantŭr.	Mŏn-ēbantŭr.	Rĕg-ēbantŭr.	Aud-iēbantur.

Future (1st root), *shall* or *will be loved.*

Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
Am-ābĭt,	Mŏn-ēbĭt,	Rĕg-ĕt,	Aud-iĕt,
Am-ābĭtŭr.	Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr.	Rĕg-ētŭr.	Aud-iētŭr.
Am-ābunt,	Mŏn-ēbunt,	Rĕg-ent,	Aud-ient,
Am-ābuntŭr.	Mŏn-ēbuntŭr.	Rĕg-entŭr.	Aud-ientŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present (1st root), *may* or *can be loved.*

Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
Am-ĕt,	Mŏn-eăt,	Rĕg-ăt,	Aud-iăt,
Am-ētŭr.	Mŏn-eatŭr.	Rĕg-ātŭr.	Aud-iatŭr.
Am-ent,	Mŏn-eant,	Rĕg-ant,	Aud-iant,
Am-entŭr.	Mŏn-eantŭr.	Rĕg-antŭr.	Aud-iantŭr.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

IMPERFECT (1st root), *might, could, &c., be loved.*			
Am-ārĕt,	Mŏn-ērĕt,	Rĕg-ĕrĕt,	Aud-īrĕt,
Am-ārētŭr.	Mŏn-ērētŭr.	Rĕg-ĕrētŭr.	Aud-īrētŭr.
Am-ārent,	Mŏn-ērent,	Rĕg-ĕrent,	Aud-īrent,
Am-ārentŭr.	Mŏn-ērentŭr.	Rĕg-ĕrentŭr.	Aud-īrentŭr.

325. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Passive verbs are followed by the same cases as the active, except the direct ob ject, which becomes the subject of the passive (322); e. g.,

Act. Illī Balbŭm furtī accūsant.
They accuse Balbus of theft.

Pass. Balbŭs ăb illīs furtī accūsātŭr.
Balbus is accused of theft by them.

REM.—Observe that the agent is put in the ablative with *ăb* (ab illis); *a*, however, is often used before a consonant.

326. VOCABULARY.

Cŏlĕrĕ, ŭ, *to cultivate, to practise.*
Dēmonstrārĕ, āv, *to show.*
Interfĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), interfēc, *to kill, to slay.*
Mittĕrĕ, mīs, *to send.*
Prō (*prep. with abl.*), *for, before.*
Rhēnŭs, ī, *Rhine*, a river.
Rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm, *the rest, the other.*
Sex, *six.*
Sŭpra, *above.*
Tangĕrĕ, tĕtĭg, *to touch, reach.*
Unŭs, ă, ŭm, *one, single, single one.*

327. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Caius filios docet. 2. Filii a Caio docentur. 3. Legātos ad Caesărem mittent. 4. Legāti ad Caesărem mittentur. 5. Mittantur legāti. 6. Relĭquas sex legiōnes pro castris in acie constituet. 7. Caium capĭtis damnābunt. 8. Caius capĭtis damnabĭtur. 9. Haec civĭtas Rhenum tangit. 10. Haec civĭtas Rhenum, ut supra demonstravĭmus, tangit. 11. Virtus ab omnĭbus colātur.

(b) 1. Balbus will kill Caius. 2. He will be killed by Balbus. 3. Caius accuses me of theft. 4. He is accused of theft by Caius. 5. Let him be accused of bribery. 6. Let them be condemned to death. 7. They are killed in the first battle. 8. Let not the king be condemned to death. 9. The law will be broken. 10. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 11. Let not the laws of the city be broken by us.

LESSON LVII.

Passive Voice.—Third Persons of Tenses for Completed Action.

328. THE tenses for completed action in the passive voice are called *Compound Forms*, and consist of the perfect participle with certain parts of the verb *essĕ* (299). We must accordingly notice here the formation of this participle.

329. The perfect participle is formed from what is called the *third root*, by the addition of the ending *ŭs* (ă, ŭm), and is declined like *bŏnŭs*.

330. The third root is formed from the first,

1) In the first, second, and fourth conjugations by the addition of the respective endings, *āt*, *ĭt*, and *īt*; e. g.,

Amārĕ,	ăm,	ăm*āt*.
Mŏnērĕ,	mŏn,	mŏn*ĭt*.
Audīrĕ,	aud,	aud*īt*.

2) In the third conjugation, by the addition of *t*, or sometimes *s* (especially to the *t*-sounds).

a) Any *p*-sound before *t* is *p* (i. e., *pt* or *bt* becomes *pt*).
b) Any *k*-sound before *t* is *c* (i. e., *ct*, *gt*, or *qut* becomes *ct*).
c) *D*, and sometimes *g*, is dropped before *s* (see 208, c, and 211).

Scrīběrě,	scrī*b*,	scri*pt*	(*b* changed to *p*).
Rěgěrě,	rě*g*,	rect	(*g* changed to *c*).
Clauděrě,	clau*d*,	claus	(*d* dropped).

331. The third persons singular of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of the passive indicative are formed respectively from the third singular of the present, imperfect, and future* of the indicative of the verb *essĕ* and the perfect participle; and the plural is formed in the same way, by using the plural of the participle and verb.

332. The third persons of the perfect and pluperfect passive subjunctive, are formed by a similar combination of the perfect passive participle with the third persons of the present and imperfect† subjunctive of *essĕ*.

PARADIGM.

	Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
	Amārě.	Mǒnērě.	Rěgěrě.	Audīrě.
	1st root, *ăm*,	1st root, *mǒn*,	1st root, *rěg*,	1st root, *aud*,
	3d " *ămāt.*	3d " *mǒnŭt.*	3d " *rect.*	3d " *audīt.*
	INDICATIVE MOOD.			
	PERFECT (*has been* or *was loved*, &c.).			
S.	Amātŭs‡ est,	Mǒnĭtŭs est,	Rectŭs est,	Audītŭs est,
P.	Amātī‡ sunt.	Mǒnĭtī sunt.	Rectī sunt.	Audītī sunt.

* Instead of the present, imperfect, and future, the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect are sometimes used.

† Instead of the present and imperfect, the perfect and pluperfect are sometimes used.

‡ These participles, which, it must be remembered, are declined like *bǒnŭs* (302), are always of the same gender and number as the subject of the verb, thus:

PARADIGM—*continued.*

PLUPERFECT (*had been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amatŭs ĕrăt,	Mŏnĭtŭs ĕrăt,	Rectŭs ĕrăt,	Audītŭs ĕrăt,
P.	Amatī ĕrant.	Mŏnĭtī ĕrant.	Rectī ĕrant.	Audītī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall* or *will have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amatŭs ĕrĭt,	Mŏnĭtŭs ĕrĭt,	Rectŭs ĕrĭt,	Audītŭs ĕrĭt,
P.	Amatī ĕrunt.	Mŏnĭtī ĕrunt.	Rectī ĕrunt.	Audītī ĕrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PERFECT (*may have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amatŭs sĭt,	Mŏnĭtŭs sĭt,	Rectŭs sĭt,	Audītŭs sĭt,
P.	Amatī sint.	Mŏnĭtī sint.	Rectī sint.	Audītī sint.

PLUPERFECT (*might have been loved, &c.*).

S.	Amatŭs essĕt,	Mŏnĭtŭs essĕt,	Rectŭs essĕt,	Audītŭs essĕt,
P.	Amatī essent.	Mŏnĭtī essent.	Rectī essent.	Audītī essent.

333. VOCABULARY.

Aestĭmārĕ, āv, āt, *to value, to prize.*
Collŏquiŭm, ī, *conference, meeting.*
Conspĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), conspex, conspect, *to see, discover.*
Dēcernĕrĕ, dēcrēv, dēcrēt, *to decree.*
Dīcĕrĕ, dix, dict, *to say, speak, name.*
Făcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fact, *to do, make, perform.*
Frangĕrĕ, frēg, fract, *to break, to violate.*
Interfĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fect, *to kill.*
Intĕrĭm, *in the mean time, meanwhile.*
Lēnĭs, ĕ, *mild, merciful.*
Lītĕrae, ārŭm (*pl.*), *letter, epistle.*
Mittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to send.*
Părārĕ, āv, āt, *to prepare.*
Quintŭs, ă, ŭm, *fifth.*
Sĕcundŭs, ă, ŭm, *second.*
Sententiă, ae, *sentiment.*
Supplĭcātiŏ, ōnĭs, *thanksgiving.*
Vīgintī, *twenty.*

Amātŭs est, *he has been loved.*
Amātă est, *she has been loved.*
Amātŭm est, *it has been loved.*
Amātī sunt, *they* (men) *have been loved.*
Amātae sunt, *they* (women) *have been loved.*
Amātă sunt, *they* (things) *have been loved.*

334. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Supplicātio decrēta est. 2. Mors omnĭbus parāta est. 3. Dies colloquio dictus erat ex eo die quintus. 4. Multa ab Caesăre in eam sententiam dicta sunt. 5. Faciam id quod est lenius et utilius. 6. Mittuntur ad Caesărem a Balbo litĕrae. 7. Intĕrim milĭtes legiōnum duārum ab hostĭbus conspiciebantur. 8. Milĭtes legiōnum duārum conspecti sunt.

(*b*) 1. A thanksgiving had been decreed to Caesar. 2. Twenty soldiers of the tenth legion had been killed in the second battle. 3. Money has ever been valued very highly. 4. Has not money always been valued very highly? 5. Were not the laws broken at Athens? 6. The laws had been broken at Rome. 7. We will appoint the tenth day for a conference. 8. Messengers had been sent to the king. 9. A soldier was sent to the king.

LESSON LVIII.

Indicative Mood of the Passive Voice.

335. THE persons of the tenses for continued action in the indicative and subjunctive moods may be formed from the corresponding parts of the active, as follows:

a) The first persons, by dropping the final consonant (when there is one), and adding *r;* e. g.,

Amō (*act.*), ămŏr (*pass.* r *added*).
Amābăm (*act.*), ămābăr (*pass.* m *dropped*, r *added*).

b) The second persons, by changing *s* (sing.) into *ris* (or *rĕ*), and *tis* (plur.) into *minī;* e. g.,

Amās (*act.*), ămārĭs (or rĕ) (*pass.* s *changed to* rĭs *or* rĕ).
Amātĭs (*act.*), ămāmĭnī (*pass.* tĭs " " mĭnī).

c) The third persons, by adding *ŭr* (323); e. g.,

Amăt (*act.*), ămātŭr (*pass.* ŭr *added*).
Amant (*act.*), ămantŭr (*pass.* ŭr *added*).

336. The personal endings of the tenses for continued action, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, active and passive, are as follows:

	Singular.			*Plural.*		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Act.	ō, m,	s,	t,	mŭs,	tĭs,	nt,
Pass.	r.	rĭs, rĕ.	tŭr.	mŭr.	mĭnī.	ntŭr.

337. The first and second persons of the passive may accordingly be formed directly from the third (as already obtained), by changing its ending into those of the first and second, and observing the same principles for vowel changes as apply to the active (248); e. g.,

	3d Pers.	*1st Pers.*	*2d Pers.*
Sing.	Amā*tŭr*,	ăm*ŏr* (*vowel changed*)	ămā*rĭs* (*rĕ*).
Plur.	Aman*tŭr*,	ămā*mŭr*,	ămā*mĭnī*.

338. The first and second persons of the tenses for completed action may be obtained directly from the third person, by simply changing the third person of the proper tense of *esse* into the first and second; e. g.,

Sing.	Amātŭs est,	ămātŭs sŭm,	ămātŭs ĕs.
Plur.	Amātī sunt,	amātī sŭmŭs,	ămātī estĭs.

339. Paradigm of the Indicative Passive.

Conj I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
PRESENT (1st root), *am loved*, &c.			
Am-ŏr,	Mŏn-eŏr,	Rĕg-ŏr,	Aud-iŏr,
Am-āris (rĕ),	Mŏn-ēris (rĕ),	Rĕg-ĕris (rĕ),	Aud-īris (rĕ),
Am-ātŭr;	Mŏn-ētŭr;	Rĕg-ĭtŭr;	Aud-ītŭr;
Am-āmŭr,	Mŏn-ēmŭr,	Rĕg-ĭmŭr,	Aud-īmŭr,
Am-āmĭnī,	Mŏn-ēmĭnī,	Rĕg-ĭmĭnī,	Aud-īmĭnī,
Am-antŭr.	Mŏn-entŭr.	Rĕg-untŭr.	Aud-iuntŭr.
IMPERFECT (1st root), *was loved*, &c.			
Am-ābăr,	Mŏn-ēbăr,	Rĕg-ēbăr,	Aud-iēbăr,
Am-ābāris (rĕ),	Mŏn-ēbāris (rĕ),	Rĕg-ēbāris (rĕ),	Aud-iēbāris (rĕ),
Am-ābātŭr;	Mŏn-ēbātŭr;	Rĕg-ēbātŭr;	Aud-iēbātŭr;
Am-ābāmŭr,	Mŏn-ēbāmŭr,	Rĕg-ēbāmŭr,	Aud-iēbāmŭr,
Am-ābāmĭnī,	Mŏn-ēbāmĭnī,	Rĕg-ēbāmĭnī,	Aud-iēbāmĭnī,
Am-ābantŭr.	Mŏn-ēbantŭr.	Rĕg-ēbantŭr.	Aud-iēbantŭr.
FUTURE (1st root), *shall* or *will be loved.*			
Am-ābŏr,	Mŏn-ēbŏr,	Rĕg-ăr,	Aud-iăr,
Am-ābĕris (rĕ),	Mŏn-ēbĕris (rĕ),	Rĕg-ēris (rĕ),	Aud-iēris (rĕ),
Am-ābĭtŭr;	Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr;	Rĕg-ētŭr;	Aud-iētŭr;
Am-ābĭmŭr,	Mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,	Rĕg-ēmŭr,	Aud-iēmŭr,
Am-ābĭmĭnī,	Mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī,	Rĕg-ēmĭnī,	Aud-iēmĭnī,
Am-ābuntŭr.	Mŏn-ēbuntŭr.	Rĕg-entŭr.	Aud-ientŭr.
PERFECT (3d root, *perf. part. and* sŭm*), *was* or *have been loved.*			
Amāt-ŭs sŭm,*	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sŭm,	Rect-ŭs sŭm,	Audīt-ŭs sŭm,
Amāt-ŭs ĕs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕs,	Rect-ŭs ĕs,	Audīt-ŭs ĕs,
Amāt-ŭs est;	Mŏnĭt-ŭs est;	Rect-ŭs est;	Audīt-ŭs est;
Amāt-ī sŭmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī sŭmŭs,	Rect-ī sŭmŭs,	Audīt-ī sŭmŭs,
Amāt-ī estĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī estĭs,	Rect-ī estĭs,	Audīt-ī estĭs,
Amāt-ī sunt.	Mŏnĭt-ī sunt.	Rect-ī sunt.	Audīt-ī sunt.
PLUPERFECT (3d root, *perf. part. and* ĕrăm†), *had been loved.*			
Amāt-ŭs ĕrăm,†	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrăm,	Rect-ŭs ĕrăm,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrăm,
Amāt-ŭs ĕrās,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrās,	Rect-ŭs ĕrās,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrās,
Amāt-ŭs ĕrăt;	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrăt;	Rect-ŭs ĕrăt;	Audīt-ŭs ĕrăt;
Amāt-ī ĕrāmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrāmŭs,	Rect-ī ĕrāmŭs,	Audīt-ī ĕrāmŭs,
Amāt-ī ĕrātĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrātĭs,	Rect-ī ĕrātĭs,	Audīt-ī ĕrātĭs,
Amāt-ī ĕrant.	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrant.	Rect-ī ĕrant.	Audīt-ī ĕrant.

* Fuī is sometimes used instead of sŭm (331, N.).

† Fuĕrăm is sometimes used instead of ĕrăm (331, N.).

PARADIGM—*continued.*

Future Perfect (3d root, *perf. part. and* ĕrŏ*), *shall* or *will have been loved,* &c.			
Amāt-ŭs ĕrŏ,*	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrŏ,	Rect-ŭs ĕrŏ,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrŏ,
Amāt-ŭs ĕrĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrĭs,	Rect-ŭs ĕrĭs,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrĭs,
Amāt-ŭs ĕrĭt;	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrĭt;	Rect-ŭs ĕrĭt;	Audīt-ŭs ĕrĭt;
Amāt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,	Rect-ī ĕrĭmŭs,	Audīt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,
Amāt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,	Rect-ī ĕrĭtĭs,	Audīt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,
Amāt-ī ĕrunt.	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrunt.	Rect-ī ĕrunt.	Audīt-ī ĕrunt.

340. VOCABULARY.

Accūsārĕ, āv, āt, *to accuse.*
Admŏnērĕ, u, ĭt, *to admonish, warn.*
Bĕnĕ, *well.*
Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĭs, *a Carthaginian.*
Clĭpeŭs, ī, *shield.*
Damnārĕ, āv, āt, *to condemn.*
Discĕrĕ, dĭdĭc, *to learn.*
Dōnārĕ, āv, āt, *to give, present.*
Excĭtārĕ, āv, āt, *to excite, arouse.*
Fīnīrĕ, īv, īt, *to finish.*
Graecī, ōrŭm, *the Greeks.*
Hastă, ae, *spear.*
Laudārĕ, āv, āt, *to praise.*
Mensĭs, ĭs, *m., month.*
Mūtārĕ, āv, āt, *to change.*
Nŏvembĕr, brĭs (*abl.* ī), *November.*
Pūgnārĕ, āv, āt, *to fight.*
Pūnīrĕ, īv, īt, *to punish.*
Sŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to surpass, conquer, to go over.*

341. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Tempŏra mutantur et nos mutāmur in illis. 2. Finītur labor agricŏlae mense Novembri. 3. Vos laudamĭni, puĕri qui bene didicistis. 4. Donābor clipeo et hasta, si bene pro patria pugnavĕro. 5. Admonebĕris, ne iram excĭtes.[1] 6. Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt. 7. Eōdem anno Carthaginienses et Graeci a Romānis superāti sunt 8. Proditiōnis accusāti estis. 9. Ambĭtus accusāti sumus.

(*b*) 1. You will be punished. 2. Has he not been punished? 3. We have been admonished not to ac-

* Fuĕrŏ is sometimes used instead of ĕrŏ (331, N.).

cuse the king. 4. Has the queen been condemned to death?[a] (No.) 5. Who will be condemned to death? 6. Who have been accused of treason? 7. We shall be presented with two beautiful books. 8.[a] Have you not been presented with a very fine dog? 9. Had not the Greeks been conquered by the Romans? 10. By whom were the Romans conquered? 11. We shall be conquered by the enemy.

LESSON LIX.

Subjunctive Mood of the Passive Voice.

342. PARADIGM of the Subjunctive Passive.

PRESENT (1st root), *may* or *can be loved*, &c.			
Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
Am-ĕ*r*,	Mŏn-eă*r*,	Rĕg-ă*r*,	Aud-iă*r*,
Am-ē*ris* (rĕ),	Mŏn-eā*ris* (rĕ),	Rĕg-ā*ris* (rĕ),	Aud-iā*ris* (rĕ),
Am-ē*tŭr*;	Mŏn-eā*tŭr*;	Rĕg-ā*tŭr*;	Aud-iā*tŭr*;
Am-ē*mŭr*,	Mŏn-eā*mŭr*,	Rĕg-ā*mŭr*,	Aud-iā*mŭr*,
Am-ē*mĭnī*,	Mŏn-eā*mĭnī*,	Rĕg-ā*mĭnī*,	Aud-iā*mĭnī*,
Am-e*ntŭr*.	Mŏn-ea*ntŭr*.	Rĕg-a*ntŭr*.	Aud-ia*ntŭr*.
IMPERFECT (1st root), *might, could, &c., be loved, &c.*			
Am-arĕ*r*,	Mŏn-ērĕ*r*,	Rĕg-ĕrĕ*r*,	Aud-īrĕ*r*,
Am-ārē*ris* (rĕ),	Mŏn-ērē*ris* (rĕ),	Rĕg-ĕrē*ris* (rĕ)	Aud-īrē*ris* (rĕ),
Am-ārē*tŭr*;	Mŏn-ērē*tŭr*;	Rĕg-ĕrē*tŭr*;	Aud-īrē*tŭr*;
Am-ārē*mŭr*,	Mŏn-ērē*mŭr*,	Rĕg-ĕrē*mŭr*,	Aud-īrē*mŭr*,
Am-ārē*mĭnī*,	Mŏn-ērē*mĭnī*,	Rĕg-ĕrē*mĭnī*,	Aud-īrē*mĭnī*,
Am-āre*ntŭr*.	Mŏn-ēre*ntŭr*.	Rĕg-ĕre*ntŭr*.	Aud-īre*ntŭr*.
PERFECT (3d root—*perf. part. and* sĭm *or* fuĕrĭm), *may have been loved, &c.*			
Amāt-ŭs sĭm,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sĭm,	Rect-ŭs sĭm,	Audīt-ŭs sĭm,
Amāt-ŭs sīs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sīs,	Rect-ŭs sīs,	Audīt-ŭs sīs,
Amāt-ŭs sĭt,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sĭt;	Rect-ŭs sĭt;	Audīt-ŭs sĭt;
Amāt-ī sīmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī sīmŭs,	Rect-ī sīmŭs,	Audīt-ī sīmŭs,
Amāt-ī sītĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī sītĭs,	Rect-ī sītĭs,	Audīt-ī sītĭs,
Amāt-ī sint.	Mŏnĭt-ī sint.	Rect-ī sint.	Audīt-ī sint.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

PLUPERFECT (3d root—*perf. part. and* essĕm *or* fuissĕm), *might have been loved, &c.*			
Amāt-ŭs essĕm,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕm,	Rect-ŭs essĕm,	Audīt-ŭs essĕm,
Amāt-ŭs essēs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essēs,	Rect-ŭs essēs,	Audīt-ŭs essēs,
Amāt-ŭs essĕt;	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕt;	Rect-ŭs essĕt;	Audīt-ŭs essĕt;
Amāt-ī essēmŭs	Mŏnĭt-ī essēmŭs	Rect-ī essēmŭs	Audīt-ī essēmŭs
Amāt-ī essētĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī essētĭs,	Rect-ī essētĭs,	Audīt-ī essētĭs,
Amāt-ī essent.	Mŏnĭt-ī essent.	Rect-ī essent.	Audīt-ī essent.

343. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs signifying *to separate from*, or *deprive of*, are followed by the *ablative* in addition to the *accusative* of the direct object; e. g.,

Mē *lūcĕ* prīvant.
They deprive me *of light.*

344. VOCABULARY.

Adūlātiŏ, ōnĭs, *flattery.*
Contra (*prep. with acc.*), *against.*
Dēcĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), dēcēp, dēcept, *to deceive.*
Fraudārĕ, āv, āt, *to defraud.*
Fŭgĕrĕ (iŏ), fūg, fŭgĭt, *to flee.*
Grānŭm, ī, *grain, grain of corn.*
Imprūdens, tĭs, *inconsiderate, imprudent.*
Nēquĭdĕm,* *not even.*
Paupĕr, ĕrĭs, *a poor man.*
Perfŭgiŭm, ī, *refuge.*
Praebērĕ, ŭ, ĭt, *to furnish, offer.*
Praepărārĕ, āv, āt, *to prepare.*
Princeps, princĭpĭs, *chief, leader.*
Prīvārĕ, āv, āt, *to deprive.*
Sancīrĕ, sanx, sanct, *to enact, confirm.*
Sĕnectūs, ūtĭs, *f. old age.*
Servārĕ, āv, āt, *to observe, keep.*
Spĕciōsŭs, ă, ŭm, *plausible, specious.*
Tăm, *so.*
Verbŭm, ī, *word.*
Vīvĕrĕ, vix, vict, *to live.*

345. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Non sum tam imprūdens ut verbis speciōsis decipiar.[1] 2. Bonae leges a principĭbus sanciantur. 3.

* The emphatic word is generally written between the two parts of this word; thus, *nē grānō quĭdĕm*, not even a grain.

Praeparētur anĭmus contra omnia. 4. Praebeātur senectūti perfugium. 5. Ne me luce privētis. 6. Ne grano quidem uno paupĕres fraudētis. 7. Paupĕres ne grano quidem uno fraudentur. 8. Invitus[5] te furti accusaverat. 9. Caius, vir summo ingenio, Romae vivit.

(*b*) 1. Be not deceived. 2. Let him not be deceived. 3. I was so imprudent as to be deceived (that I was deceived) by specious words. 4. You will not be so imprudent as to be deceived by flattery. 5. Let all good laws be observed by the citizens. 6. The boys fled that[1] they might not be punished. 7. Do not defraud the poor. 8. Let not the poor be defrauded. 9. May they never be defrauded by you. 10. You shall never be defrauded of even a single grain by us.

LESSON LX.

Imperative Mood—Active and Passive.

346. The *Imperative* mood expresses a *command*, an *exhortation*, or *entreaty*. It is used only in the present tense, and in the second and third persons.

347. If a negative accompanies the imperative, it must be expressed in Latin by *nē* (instead of *nōn*); e. g.,

Nē peccātĕ, *do not sin.*

Rem.—It will be remembered that a command or exhortation may also be expressed by the present subjunctive (281).

348. The imperative is formed from the first root by the addition of the following endings:

ACTIVE.

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 2.	ā *or* ātŏ,	ē *or* ētŏ,	ĕ *or* ĭtŏ,	ī *or* ītŏ.
3.	ātŏ,	ētŏ,	ĭtŏ,	ītŏ.
P. 2.	ātĕ, ātōtĕ,	ētĕ, ētōtĕ,	ĭtĕ, ĭtōtĕ,	ītĕ, ītōtĕ.
3.	antŏ,	entŏ,	untŏ,	iuntŏ.

PASSIVE.

	Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
S. 2.	ārĕ *or* ātŏr,	ērĕ *or* ētŏr,	ĕre *or* ĭtŏr,	īrĕ *or* ītŏr.
3.	ātŏr,	ētŏr,	ĭtŏr,	ītŏr.
P. 2.	āminī,	ēminī,	ĭminī,	īminī.
3.	antŏr,	entŏr,	untŏr,	iuntŏr.

349. Paradigm of the Imperative Mood.

CONJUGATION I.

	Active.	*Passive.*
S. 2.	Am-ā *or* ăm-ātŏ, *love thou, do thou love.*	Am-ārĕ *or* ăm-ātŏr, *be thou loved.*
3.	Am-ātŏ, *let him love.*	Am-ātor, *let him be loved.*
P. 2.	Am-ātĕ *or* ăm-ātōtĕ, *love ye, do ye love.*	Am-āminī, *be ye loved.*
3.	Am-antŏ, *let them love.*	Am-antŏr, *let them be loved.*

CONJUGATION II.

	Active.	*Passive.*
S. 2.	Mŏn-ē *or* mŏn-ētŏ, *advise thou.*	Mŏn-ērĕ *or* mŏn-ētŏr, *be thou advised.*
3.	Mŏn-ētŏ, *let him advise.*	Mŏn-ētŏr, *let him be advised.*
P. 2.	Mŏn-ētĕ *or* mŏn-ētōte, *advise ye*	Mŏn-ēminī, *be ye advised.*
3.	Mŏn-entŏ, *let them advise.*	Mŏn-entŏr, *let them be advised.*

CONJUGATION III.

	Active.	*Passive.*
S 2.	Rĕg-ĕ *or* rĕg-ĭtŏ, *rule thou.*	Rĕg-ĕrĕ *or* rĕg-ĭtŏr, *be thou ruled.*
3.	Rĕg-ĭtŏ, *let him rule.*	Rĕg-ĭtŏr, *let him be ruled.*
P 2.	Rĕg-ĭtĕ *or* rĕg-ĭtōtĕ, *rule ye.*	Rĕg-ĭminī, *be ye ruled.*
3.	Rĕg-untŏ, *let them rule.*	Rĕg-untŏr, *let them be ruled.*

CONJUGATION IV.

	Active.	*Passive.*
S 2.	Aud-ī *or* aud-ītŏ, *hear thou.*	Aud-īrĕ *or* aud-ītŏr, *be thou heard.*
3.	Aud-ītŏ, *let him hear.*	Aud-ītŏr, *let him be heard.*
P. 2.	Aud-ītĕ *or* aud-ītōtĕ, *hear ye.*	Aud-īminī, *be ye heard.*
3.	Aud-iuntŏ, *let them hear.*	Aud-iuntŏr, *let them be heard.*

REM.—The second forms of the imperative (*to, tote, nto, &c.*) are used in *laws, rules,* and other *formal* expressions of duty or permission.

350. VOCABULARY.

Ac, *and.*
Amĕrĭcānŭs, ā, ŭm, *American.*
Audīrĕ, īv, īt, *to hear, listen to.*
Castīgārĕ, āv, āt, *to chastise.*
Cōgĭtārĕ, āv, āt, *to think about.*
Compescĕrĕ, compescu, *to restrain, repress.*
Conjux, ŭgĭs, *m.* or *f., husband, wife, spouse.*
Conservārĕ, āv, āt, *to preserve.*
Consĭlĭŭm, ī, *advice, instruction.*
Corrumpĕrĕ, corrūp, corrupt, *to mislead, corrupt.*
Dēfendĕrĕ, dēfend, dēfens, *to defend.*
Dēglūbĕrĕ, dēglups, dēglupt, *to flay, to skin.*
Exōrārĕ, āv, āt, *to supplicate.*
Lībĕrī, ōrŭm (*pl.*), *children.*
Nōmĕn, ĭnĭs, *name.*
Pernĭcĭēs, ēī, *destruction.*
Pŏpŭlŭs, ī, *people.*
Quĕ (*joined to the word it connects*), *and.*
Ruĕrĕ, ru, ruĭt (*or* rŭt), *to rush.*
Sălūs, ūtĭs, *f., safety.*
Scrībĕrĕ, scrips, script, *to write.*
Sĕpĕlīrĕ, īv, sĕpult, *to bury, inter.*
Tondērĕ, tŏtond, tons, *to shear, shave.*
Vestĕr, tră, trŭm, *your.*
Vĭdērĕ, vīd, vīs, *to see.*

351. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Caium ne accūsa. 2. Balbum ne accusāte 3. Tonde oves: ne deglūbe. 4. Tondēte oves: ne deglubīte. 5. Audi, puer, consilia sapientium. 6. Audīte, pueri, consilia sapientium, et vidēte, ne in perniciem ruātis. 7. Exorāre, mi (115) pater, compesce iram. 8. Nemo in urbe sepelītor. 9. Lex erat his verbis scripta: "Nemo in urbe sepelītor." 10. Audi, mi fili (103, N.), ab imprŏbis ne corrumpĭtor. 11. De vobis ac de libĕris vestris cogitāte. 12. Conservāte vos, conjŭges, libĕros, fortunasque vestras. 13. Populi Romani nomen salutemque defendite.

(*b*) 1. Do not accuse me of theft. 2. Let him shear the sheep. 3. Let no one break the laws. 4. Let the laws be observed. 5. Do not chastise the slave. 6.

Let not the slaves be chastised. 7. Let him be buried in the city. 8. Defend (ye) the name and the safety of the American people. 9. Defend (ye) the American eagle. 10. Let the American eagle be defended by all. 11. Boys, listen to (hear) the instruction of your fathers. 12. Do not break your word.

LESSON LXI.

Infinitive Mood.

352. THE *Infinitive* mood (as already stated, 9) represents the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number.

353. The infinitive mood has in each voice three tenses; viz., the *present*, *perfect*, and *future*.

REM.—We must here give the formation of the *supine* and *future act. participle* (both of which we shall soon notice), as they are used in forming the future infinitive.

354. The *future active participle* and the *active supine* are formed from the third root; the former by the addition of *ūrŭs* (ă, ŭm); as, *ămāt* (3d root), *ămātūrŭs* (ă, ŭm); and the latter by the addition of *ŭm*; as, *ămāt*, *ămātŭm*.

355. The infinitives are formed as follows:

1) The present, from the first root by the addition of the endings:

	Conj. I.	*Conj.* II.	*Conj.* III.	*Conj.* IV.
Act.	ārĕ,	ērĕ,	ĕrĕ,	īrĕ.
Pass.	ārī,	ērī,	ī,	īrī.

2) The perfect active, from the second root by

the addition of the ending *issĕ;* and the *perfect passive* from the perfect participle and *essĕ.*

3) The future active, from the *future active participle* and *essĕ;* and the *future passive* from the *supine* and *īrī.*

356. Paradigm of the Infinitive Mood.

	CONJ. I.	
	Active.	*Passive.*
Pres.	Am-ārĕ, *to love.*	Am-ārī, *to be loved.*
Perf.	Amāv-issĕ, *to have loved.*	Amāt-ŭs essĕ, *to have been loved.*
Fut.	Amāt-ūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to love.*	Amāt-ŭm īrī, *to be about to be loved.*
	CONJ. II.	
Pres.	Mŏn-ērĕ, *to advise.*	Mŏn-ērī, *to be advised.*
Perf.	Mŏnu-issĕ, *to have advised.*	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕ, *to have been advised.*
Fut.	Mŏnĭt-ūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to advise.*	Mŏnĭt-ŭm īrī, *to be about to be advised.*
	CONJ. III.	
Pres.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ, *to rule.*	Rĕg-ī, *to be ruled.*
Perf.	Rex-issĕ, *to have ruled.*	Rect-ŭs essĕ, *to have been ruled.*
Fut.	Rect-ūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to rule.*	Rect-ŭm īrī, *to be about to be ruled.*
	CONJ. IV.	
Pres.	Aud-īrĕ, *to hear.*	Aud-īrī, *to be heard.*
Perf.	Audīv-issĕ, *to have heard.*	Audīt-ŭs essĕ, *to have been heard.*
Fut.	Audīt-ūrŭs essĕ, *to be about to hear.*	Audīt-ŭm īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

357. Rule of Syntax.—The subject of an infinitive must be put in the accusative; e. g.,

Vĭdĕt tē essĕ beātŭm.
He sees that you are happy.

REM. 1.—The accusative *tē* is the subject of *essĕ*.

REM. 2.—The use of the infinitive, as the subject of a finite verb, has been already considered (184).

358. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The infinitive, either alone or with other words connected with it, may depend upon another verb; e. g.,

1. Cŭpĭt *săpĕrĕ*.
He desires *to be wise*.

2. Spērăt *sē victūrŭm essĕ*.
He hopes *that he shall live*.

REM. 1.—In most cases the infinitive is really the direct object of the verb on which it depends; thus *săpĕrĕ* (to be wise) is really the object desired. He desires (what?) *to be wise*.

REM. 2.—In the compound infinitives (i. e., those which are made up of two words) the participles must *agree* in gender, number, and case with the subject of those infinitives; but of course the *supine* remains *unaltered*. Thus, in the second example, *victūrŭm* is in the accusative masculine singular, to agree with *sē*, the subject of the infinitive.

359. Two or more English sentences, joined by the conjunction *that*, are often made one Latin sentence, by leaving out the conjunction, and turning the following nominative into the accusative and the verb into the infinitive.

360. VOCABULARY.

Certŭs, ă, ŭm, *certain*.
Clēmens, tĭs, *mild, merciful*.
Convertĕrĕ, convert, convers, *to turn, convert*.
Cŭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cŭpīv (*or* i), cŭpīt, *to desire*.
Dīvĭdĕrĕ, dīvīs, dīvīs, *to divide*.
Dŏcērĕ, u, doct, *to teach*.
Ocŭlŭs, ī, *eye*.
Pars, partĭs, *part*.
Peccārĕ, āv, āt, *to sin*.
Praedă, ae, booty.
Săpĕrĕ, īv, i, *or* u, *to be wise*.
Spērārĕ, āv, āt, *to hope*.
Tĭmērĕ, ŭ, *to fear*.
Trēs, triă, *three*.
Vendĕrĕ, vendĭd, vendĭt, *to sell*.

361. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Balbi est omnia in tres partes dividĕre. 2. Nunquam utĭle est peccāre. 3. Omnes homĭnes beāti esse cupiunt. 4. Cupio me esse clementem. 5. Docēmus puĕros ut sapĕre discant. 6. Video in me omnium vestrum ocŭlos esse conversos. 7. Sperant se victūros esse. 8. Certum est Balbum patriam auro vendidisse.

(*b*) 1. He is said to have divided the booty into ten parts. 2. They are said to have lived at Rome five years. 3. We desire to be happy. 4. You all desire to be happy. 5. He is said to have been very happy. 6. He says, that all eyes were turned upon him. 7. He sees that you are happy. 8. It is certain, that a Christian does not fear death. 9. It is certain, that the boy has heard a voice. 10. It is certain, that Balbus will value my labors *very highly.*[2] 11. It is certain, that the avaricious value money *very highly.* 12. It is certain, that Balbus will be condemned *to death.*

LESSON LXII.

Participles.—Ablative Absolute.

362. THE participle is that part of the verb which has the form and inflection of an adjective.

363. A verb may have four participles, viz.: the *present* and *future* in the *active* voice, and the *perfect* and *future* in the *passive.*

364. The participles are formed as follows:

1) The present active in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

1.	2.	3.	4.
ans,	ens,	ens,	iens,

to the first root; as,

Am*ans* (loving), mŏn*ens*, rĕg*ens*, aud*iens*.

2) The future active, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ūrŭs* (*ă*, *ŭm*) (302); as,

Amāt*ūrŭs* (about to love), mŏnĭt*ūrŭs*, rect*ūrŭs*, audīt*ūrŭs*.

3) The perfect passive, from the third root, by the addition of the ending *ŭs* (*ă*, *ŭm*) (302); as,

Amāt*ŭs* (loved), mŏnĭt*ŭs*, rect*ŭs*, audīt*ŭs*.

4) The future passive in the four conjugations, by the addition of the respective endings:

1.	2.	3.	4.
andŭs,	endŭs,	endŭs,	iendŭs,

to the first root; as,

Am*andŭs* (deserving to be loved), mŏn*endŭs*, rĕg*endŭs*, aud*iendŭs*.

365. The participle in *ns* answers to the English participle in *ing*.

The participle in *us* answers to the English participle in *ed*, *en*, *t*, &c.

The participle in *dus* must be translated by the *present infinitive passive*, as used with a substantive. (A termination *to be desired*; a crime *to be abhorred*.)

The participle in *rus* must be translated by '*about to* (write);' or, '*going to* (write).'

366. Rule of Syntax.—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence are put in the ablative (called *absolute*); e. g.,

Caesăr, victīs hostĭbŭs, { *Eng. Id.*, Caesar having conquered his enemies.
Lat. Id. Caesar his enemies being conquered. }

367. The want of a participle for the perfect active is supplied by the *ablative absolute*, or by *quum* (*when*) with the *perfect* or *pluperfect* subjunctive. The *perfect* subjunctive must be used, if the other verb is in the *present* tense; e. g.,

Caesar having conquered his enemies, { Caesăr, quŭm vīcissĕt hostēs. / Caesăr, victīs hostĭbŭs.

368. VOCABULARY.

Aequĭtas, ātĭs, *equity, justice.*
Angustiae, ārŭm (*pl.*), *a narrow pass, defile.*
Cănĕrĕ, cĕcĭn, cant, *to sing.*
Compellĕrĕ, compŭl, compuls, *to drive, compel.*
Constĭtuĕrĕ, constĭtu, constĭtūt, *to arrange, constitute.*
Deprĕhendĕrĕ, deprĕhend, deprĕhens, *to seize, catch.*
Dēvincĕrĕ, devīc, devict, *to conquer.*
Exclāmārĕ, āv, āt, *to cry out, exclaim.*
Immergĕrĕ, immers, immers, *to plunge into, immerse.*
Lūdĕrĕ, lūs, lūs, *to play, to sport.*
Mănērĕ, mans, mans, *to remain.*
Quŭm, *when.*
Viŏlārĕ, āv, āt, *to violate, to break.*

369. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. In via ludentem puĕrum vidi. 2. In via ludentes deprehendĭmus. 3. Caesar fugientes hostes in angustias compŭlit. 4. Fracto puĕri brachio, Romae manēbit. 5. Violātis patriae legĭbus, vita indignus est. 6. Puer, quum manus in aquam immersisset, exclamāvit. 7. Caesar, quum devicisset hostes, summa aequitāte res constituit.

(*b*) 1. Did you hear the nightingales singing in the grove? 2. I saw the fishes swimming on the surface (top) of the water.[10] 3. Did you see the girls playing in the garden? 4. Have you not seen the boys playing in the street? 5. Caius, having broken his arm, remained at Rome. 6. The slave, having killed his

master, was condemned. 7. They say that the slave has been condemned to death. 8. You are said to have been accused of treason. 9. Having violated the laws of the state, we shall all be punished.

LESSON LXIII.

Gerunds and Supines.

370. THE *Gerund* is that part of the verb which corresponds to the participial substantive in *ing* in English.

371. The gerund is really a verbal substantive of the neuter gender, used only in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

REM.—The infinitive supplies the place of the nominative of the gerund, as that is sometimes used as the subject of a verb (184).

372. The genitive of the gerund ends, in the four conjugations, respectively in

1.	2.	3.	4.
andī,	endī,	endī,	iendī.

Am*andī* (of loving), mŏn*endī*, rĕg*endī*, aud*iendī*.

373. The gerund is declined in the parts in use precisely like a neuter noun of the second declension; e. g.,

Gen.	Amandī,	*of loving.*
Dat.	Amandō,	*to* or *for loving.*
Acc.	Amandŭm,	*loving.*
Abl.	Amandō,	*by loving.*

REM.—The gerund, being a part of the verb, of course governs the same case.

374. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The gerund is governed like a noun in the same case; e. g.,

Intĕr lūdendŭm.
(*During playing.*)
While they are playing.

375. The Latin verb has two *supines;* one in *ŭm* and one in *ū*.

376. The supines are formed by adding the above endings to the third root; e. g.,

Amātŭm (to love), mŏnĭtŭm, rectŭm, audītŭm.
Amātū (to be loved), mŏnĭtū, rectū, audītū.

REM.—The supine in *ŭm* is generally Englished by the present infinitive active, and that in *ū* by the present infinitive passive, though it may be translated by the active, if that gives better English. Both supines are really active; thus, *factŭm* means *for doing,* and *factū* in doing.

377. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ŭm* follows verbs of motion, to express the purpose or object of that motion; e. g.,

Mittĭt lēgātōs pācĕm *pĕtītŭm.*
He sends ambassadors *to sue for* peace.

378. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The supine in *ū* is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad, easy* or *difficult, agreeable* or *disagreeable,* &c.; e. g.,

Diffĭcĭlĕ est *dictū.*
It is difficult *to say.*

379. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness,*

and the *like*, together with their contraries, govern the genitive; e.g.,

Cŭpĭdŭs laudĭs, *desirous of praise.*

380. Vocabulary.

Aquarī, at, *to bring water.*
Aquatŭm (*sup.*), *to bring water.*
Auxĭlium, ī, *aid, help.*
Cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, *desirous, desirous of.*
Jūcundŭs, ă, ŭm, *pleasant, delightful.*
Mīrabĭlis, ĕ, *wonderful.*
Pabŭlarī, at, *to forage.*
Pābŭlatŭm (*sup.*), *to forage.*
Pĕtĕrĕ, īv (i), īt, *to seek, ask, sue for.*
Rŏgārĕ, āv, āt, *to ask.*
Sumptŭs, ūs, *expense.*
Sŭpervăcuŭs, ă, ŭm, *unnecessary.*
Vēnarī, at, *to hunt.*
Vēnatŭm (*sup.*), *to hunt.*
Vītarĕ, āv, āt, *to avoid, shun.*

381. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Cupĭdi sunt docendi. 2. Num puĕri ludendo discunt? 3. Puer cupĭdus est discendi. 4. Misērunt legātos pacem petītum. 5. Legātos ad Caesărem mittunt rogātum auxilium. 6. Jucundum est audītu. 7 Diffĭcĭle est factu. 8. Mittantur legāti pacem petītum. 9. Quantum tempŏris ludendo amisērunt! 10. Multum temporis ludendo amittēmus.

(*b*) 1. He learns by teaching. 2. Have we not learned by teaching? 3. Is there not much pleasure in learning? 4. How much pleasure (there) is in learning! 5. There is much pleasure in teaching. 6. Do not boys learn while playing? 7. The boy has been sent *a hunting*. 8. Caesar has sent the fourth legion *to forage*. 9. Ambassadors have been sent *to ask* peace. 10. It is difficult *to say*. 11. It is wonderful *to tell*. 12. Has not Caesar sent the fourth legion *to bring water?*

LESSON LXIV.

Participle in dus.

382. INSTEAD of a gerund governing its case, we may use a *participle in dus* agreeing with a noun; e. g.,

(*Eng.*) The intention *of writing* a letter.
(*Lat.*) Consĭlĭŭm *scrībendi* ĕpistŏlăm.
(or) Consĭlĭŭm *scrībendae* ĕpistŏlae.*

383. Thus, then, *ĕpistŏlă scrībendă* may be declined throughout.

Sing.
N. Epistŏla scribenda, *a letter to be written.*
G. epistŏlae scribendae, *of writing a letter.*
D. epistŏlae scribendae, *to* or *for writing a letter.*
Acc. (ad) epistŏlam scribendam, *to write a letter* (or *for writing a letter*).
Abl. epistŏlā scribendā, *by writing a letter*

Plur.
N. epistŏlae scribendae, *letters to be written.*
G. epistŏlārum scribendārum, *of writing letters.*
D. epistŏlis scribendis, *to* or *for writing letters.*
Acc. (ad) epistŏlas scribendas, *to write letters* (or *for writing letters*).
Abl. epistŏlis scribendis, *by writing letters.*

384. VOCABULARY.

Adjūmentŭm, ī, *ata, help.*
Arrĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), arrĭpu, arrept, *to snatch, seize.*
Athēnae, ārŭm, *Athens, city of Greece.*
Augērĕ, aux, auct, *to increase.*

---

* The real meaning of 'consilium scribendae epistolae' is '*the design of* (= about) *a letter to be* written.'

Cŭpĭdiŏr, ōris (*comp.*), *fonder*.
Elĕgantiă, ae, *elegance*.
Emĕrĕ, ēm, empt, *to buy, purchase*.
Exercērĕ, exercu, exercĭt, *to practise, exercise*.
Gĕrĕrĕ, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage*.
Hăbērĕ, ŭ, ĭt, *to have, enjoy*.
Lĕgĕrĕ, lēg, lect, *to read*.
Obtĭnērĕ, obtĭnu, obtent, *to obtain, acquire*.
Occāsĭō, ōnĭs, *opportunity*.
Pĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm, *skilful, skilled in*.
Rĕgĕrĕ, rex, rect, *to govern, rule*.
Stŭdiōsŭs, ă, ŭm, *very fond*.

385. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Balbus omnem occasiōnem *exercendae virtūtis* arripiēbat. 2. Multi cupidiōres sunt *emendōrum librōrum* quam *legendōrum*. 3. Caesar belli gerendi perītus fuit. 4. Omnis occasio exercendae virtūtis arripiātur. 5. Certum est, omnem occasiōnem exercendae virtūtis a Christiāno arrĭpi. 6. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legendis oratorĭbus et poētis. 7. Homo magna habet adjumenta ad obtinendam sapientiam.

(*b*) 1. The boy is very fond *of writing letters*. 2. He was very fond of hearing the orator. 3. Seize every opportunity of *practising virtue*. 4. The Romans were fond of *waging war*. 5. Ambassadors are sent *to beg* for peace. 6. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for peace. 7. The law will be broken. 8. Will not the laws be broken by wicked (men)? 9. It is certain, that the laws are broken by the wicked at Rome and at Athens. 10. Let your word be kept. 11. Let the state be ruled by the wise.

LESSON LXV.

First Conjugation.

386. VOCABULARY.*

Adeō, *so, in such a manner.*
Cantārĕ, āv, āt, *to sing.*
Certāmĕn, ĭnĭs, *contest.*
Crābrŏ, ōnĭs, *wasp.*
Intĕr, *between, during.*
Intĕr ambŭlandŭm, *while walking.*
Irrītārĕ, āv, āt, *to trouble, irritate.*
Ornārĕ, āv, āt, *to adorn.*
Rōbustŭs, ă, ŭm, *robust, strong.*
Spŏliārĕ, āv, āt, *to rob of, despoil.*

387. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Sapientis est supervacuos sumptus vitāre. 2. Crabrōnem ne irrītes (232). 3. Crabrōnem ne irritāte (347). 4. Irritasne crabrōnes? 5. Nonne eam legem ipse violābas? 6. Inter ambulandum cantābant. 7. Hic miles est adeo robustus, ut nemo eum in certamĭne superavĕrit. 8. Prata et agri pulcherrĭmis florĭbus ornantur. 9. Oculisne me, judĭces, privabĭtis? 10. Violātis patriae legĭbus (366), mea me laude spoliātis. 11. Num mea laude spoliābor?

(*b*) 1. It is the duty of a Christian[7] to avoid unnecessary expense. 2. Did they not themselves violate those laws? 3. Let not the laws be violated by Christians. 4. We hope we shall never be accused. 5. Have you ever been accused? 6. Let your laws be kept. 7. Is it not certain that the laws are broken by the wicked? 8. Did they not condemn him to death? 9. Balbus is so strong that he has never been surpassed in a contest. 10. Have I not been deprived of my eyes?

---

* Preparatory to this exercise, the pupil is expected to review thoroughly the Paradigm of the First Conjugation. See 588.

LESSON LXVI.

Second Conjugation.

388. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Many verbs which signify *to ask*, *demand*, or *teach*, together with *cēlārĕ* (to conceal), take two objects, one of a person and another of a thing; e. g.,

Caesăr frūmentŭm Aeduōs flāgĭtābăt.
Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.

389. VOCABULARY.*

Divitiăcŭs, i, *Divitiacus, man's name.*
Impĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to command, give commands.*
Jŭbērĕ, juss, juss, *to direct, order.*
Mordērĕ, mŏmord, mors, *to bite.*
Pārērĕ, ŭ, ĭt, *to obey.*
Prŏpensŭs, ă, ŭm, *inclined to.*
Sānārĕ, āv, āt, *to cure, reform.*
Tăcērĕ, ŭ, ĭt, *to be silent, to pass over in silence.*

390. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Hostes non timēmus. 2. Nonne respondēbis? 3. Docendo docēmur. 4. Ego multa tacui: multa sanāvi. 5. Ad docendum propensi sunt. 6. Pareat anĭmus: non impĕret 7. Caesar Divitiăcum ad se vocāri jubet. 8. Te haec docēbo. 9. Puĕros haec docēbant. 10. Puĕri haec docti sunt. 11. Canis puĕrum momordit. 12. Nonne oves totondistis?

(*b*) 1. Do you not fear the enemy? 2. Do not fear the enemy. 3. Who taught the boy this? 4. Did you teach those boys this? 5. Who sheared this sheep? 6. Let no one shear my sheep. 7. Did the dog bite you? 8. I have been bitten by your dog. 9. We

* The pupil will, of course, review Paradigm. See 589.

have ourselves been taught by teaching. 10. Did you not laugh at your father?

LESSON LXVII.

Third Conjugation.

391. Rule of Syntax.—After verbs of motion:

1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is put in the accusative without a preposition; e. g.,

   Rōmăm vĕnīrĕ, *to come to Rome.*

2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is put in the ablative without a preposition; e. g.,

   Rōmā vĕnīrĕ, *to come from Rome.*

Rem.—Before other names of places the preposition is generally expressed.

(*Review Paradigm* 590.)

392. Vocabulary.

Agĕrĕ, ēg, act, *to do, act.*
Committĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to engage.*
Cūrārĕ, āv, āt, *to attend to, cause, &c.*
Dărĕ, dĕd, dăt, *to give.*
Equĕs, ĭtĭs, *horseman.*
Grātiă, ae, *favor; pl., thanks.*
Grātias ăgĕrĕ, *to give thanks, to thank.*
Injūriă, ae, *injury, wrong done.*
Pons, tĭs, m., *bridge.*
Responsŭm, ī, *answer, reply.*
Tĕgĕrĕ, tex, tect, *to cover, conceal.*
Unquăm, *ever.*

393. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Caium Athēnas mittat. 2. Servum Athēnas miserat. 3. Mihi gratias egistis. 4. Sicut vixi, ut

nemo unquam me ullīus injuriae accusaverit. 5. Pontem in flumĭne faciendum curāvit. 6. Equĭtes proelium committunt. 7. Hoc responso dato, equites proelium committunt. 8. Certum est, Caesărem belli gerendi perītum fuisse. 9. Legātos ad eum misērunt. 10. Omnis dicendi elegantia augētur legendis oratorĭbus (382).

(*b*) 1. He has sent an ambassador to Rome. 2. Ambassadors will be sent to sue for (377) peace. 3. Ambassadors have been sent to sue for peace. 4. He has never been sent to Athens. 5. He is said to have been very desirous of (379) learning. 6. They say that you are desirous of engaging battle. 7. They are said to be skilful in waging war. 8. Having made this reply they engage battle. 9. It is disgraceful to cover a fault with a lie.

LESSON LXVIII.

Fourth Conjugation.

(*Review Paradigm* 591.)

394. VOCABULARY.

Antea, *before.*
Captīvŭs, ă, ŭm, *captive.*
Claudĕrĕ, claus, claus, *to shut.*
Fundŭs, ī, *estate, farm.*
Hannĭbăl, ălis, *Hannibal.*
Intrā (*prep. with accus.*), *within.*
Ităliă, ae, *Italy.*
Praeceptŭm, ī, *precept, instruction*
Praesens, tis, *present.*
Succurrĕrĕ, curr, curs, *to aid, succor.*
Tărentŭm, ī, *Tarentum, a town in Italy.*
Vĕtustŭs, ă, ŭm, *old, ancient.*

395. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Haec ex captīvis audivĕrat. 2. Vēnit sacerdos ut aram sanguĭne aspergat. 3. Miles Tarentum

vēnit. 4. Hunc audiēbant anteā, nunc praesentĕm vident. 5. Fundo in tres partes divīso, Romam vēnit. 6. Veni ut mihi succurras. 7. Hannibal, Alpĭbus superātis, in Italiam venit. 8. Lex erat Romanōrum vetustissĭma, ne quis intra urbem sepelirētur.

(b) 1. Have not the boys been sent to bring water? 2. They have come to shut the gates of the city. 3. Will you come to shut the gates? 4. Let them come to shut the gates. 5. Let all come to hear the instructions of the wise. 6. Let the instructions of the wise be always heard. 7. By hearing the instructions of the wise we shall learn wisdom. 8. He has buried his father. 9. Has he buried him within the city? 10. Do not bury him within the city.

LESSON LXIX.

Verbs with the Dative.—Indirect Object.

396. The use of the *indirect object* has been already illustrated; but as some verbs in Latin are followed by the dative (the case of the indirect object) where we use no preposition, and should therefore be led by the English to put the accusative, it may be well to notice a few instances of this. The verbs of this class are principally such as signify:

To command or *obey*, *please* or *displease*, *favor* or *injure*, *serve* or *resist*, together with to *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *believe*, *persuade*.*

---

* See 643

REM. 1.—Văcārĕ (*to have leisure*) and nūbĕrĕ (*to marry, used of females*), also take the dative.

REM. 2.—It will be readily perceived, in most cases, that the dative after the above verbs is really the *indirect* and not the *direct* object; thus, *impĕrārĕ* (to command) means to give a command *to;* plăcērĕ (to please) to give pleasure *to;* and so of most, if not all, of the others.

397. VOCABULARY.

Ars, artĭs, *art.*
Beātē, *happily.*
Crēdĕrĕ, crēdĭd, crēdĭt, *to believe, put confidence in.*
Cŭpĭdĭtas, ātĭs, *desire, passion.*
Făvērĕ, fāv, faut, *to favor.*
Ignoscĕrĕ, nōv, nōt, *to pardon.*
Indulgērĕ, induls, indult, *to indulge.*
Invĭdērĕ, vīd, vīs, *to envy.*
Nŏcērĕ, nŏcu, nŏcĭt, *to hurt.*
Parcĕrĕ, pĕperc, parcĭt, *to spare.*
Persuādērĕ, persuās, persuās, *to persuade.*
Rĕsistĕrĕ, stĭt, stĭt, *to resist.*
Servīrĕ, īv (i), īt, *to serve, be a slave to.*
Stŭdērĕ, u, *to study, strive for.*
Văcārĕ, āv, āt, *to have leisure for.*

398. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Irae multos annos serviĕras. 2. Regendis anĭmi cupiditatĭbus studeāmus. 3. Caesar legendo libro vacābit. 4. Christiāni est patriae suae legĭbus parēre. 5. Ignosce mihi. 6. Nemo tibi credet. 7. Imprŏbus patriae legĭbus non parēbit. 8. Num legĭbus parēbunt imprŏbi, violāta fide? 9. Discant Christiāni anĭmis suis imperāre. 10. Sapientia ars est bene beateque vivendi.

(*b*) 1. I would have favored Caius. 2. You would have resisted anger. 3. You (*pl.*) would have hurt nobody. 4. We would have indulged the desire. 5. I was hurting myself. 6. You were hurting me. 7. You had hurt Caius. 8. You had been-the-slave-of passion. 9. Do not be-the slave-of passion. 10. You were sparing the enemies. 11. *It is the duty of* a Christian to envy nobody. 12. Do not envy the good. 13.

It is pleasant to succor the miserable. 14. Nobody will believe the wicked. 15. Death spares nobody. 16. They had spared the gate of the city. 17. He spares himself in the winter. 18. He does not spare even himself. 19. You will never have persuaded me. 20. Let the Christian learn to command himself.

LESSON LXX.

Deponent Verbs.

399. A DEPONENT verb is one which has a *passive form*, but an *active meaning*.

400. *Deponent* verbs have all the four participles; e. g.,

1) Loquens, *speaking;* 2) locūtus, *having spoken;* 3) locutūrus, *about to speak;* 4) loquendus, *to be spoken.*

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active*, which other verbs do not have.

401. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The deponent verbs, *ūtŏr*, *fruŏr*, *fungŏr*, *potiŏr*, *vescŏr*, *dīgnŏr*, and their compounds, usually take the *ablative;* e. g.,

Vŏluptātĕ fruĭtŭr, *he enjoys pleasure.*

REM.—The ablative after the above is not strictly the object, but the ablative of means; thus, *to enjoy pleasure*, is *to be delighted with pleasure.*

402. RULE OF SYNTAX.—Verbs of *reminding*, *remembering*, *forgetting*, and *pitying*, usually take the *genitive* of the object remembered, forgotten, &c.; e. g.,

Rĕmīniscŏr bĕnĕfĭcii tuī, *I remember your kindness.*

Rem.—Most of these verbs, except those signifying *to pity*, sometimes take the accusative instead of the genitive.

403. VOCABULARY.

Alĭquandŏ, *some time or other.*
Bĕnĕfĭcium, I, *benefit.*
Flāgĭtium, I, *crime.*
Fungī, funct, *to discharge.*
Lŏquī, lŏcūt, *to speak.*
Mălĕ, *badly.*
Mĭsĕrērī, mĭsĕrĭt, *or* **misert**, *to pity.*
Oblīviscī, oblīt, *to forget.*
Odium, I, *hatred.*
Offĭcium, I, *duty.*
Post (*prep. with accus.*), *after.*
Pŏtīrī, pŏtīt, *to get possession.*
Rĕcordārī, āt, *to remember, to recall to mind.*
Sempĭternŭs, ă, ŭm, *eternal.*
Ūtī, ūs, *to use.*

404. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Christianōrum est miserēri paupĕrum. 2. Homo imprŏbus aliquando cum dolōre flagitiōrum suōrum recordabĭtur. 3. Multi beneficiis male utuntur. 4. Vincāmus odium, pacĕque potiāmur. 5. Christiāni est injuriārum oblivisci. 6. Beātus est, qui omnĭbus vitae officiis fungĭtur. 7. Elegantiam loquendi legendis oratoribus et poētis auxĕrant.

(*b*) 1. Let the Christian discharge all the duties of life. 2. Let us use our horses. 3. The good after death will enjoy eternal life. 4. Will not the good after death enjoy eternal life? 5. Is the life that we now enjoy eternal? 6. Let boys learn to discharge all the duties of life. 7. Have you not spared the conquered?* 8. Spare (*pl.*) the conquered. 9. Let us spare the conquered. 10. We will resist anger. 11. Will you not resist anger? 12. Let Caius, who sold

* Participles as well as adjectives (117) are sometimes used substantively.

his country for gold, be condemned to death. 13. Let the wicked, who sold their country for gold, be accused of treason.

LESSON LXXI.

Irregular Verbs.

405. THE irregular verbs are those which deviate from the ordinary rules, not only in the formation of their roots, but also in the inflection of some of their tenses.

406. The irregular verb *possĕ* (to be able), compounded of *pŏt* (pŏtĭs, able) and *essĕ* (to be), is conjugated like the simple *essĕ*, except,

1) *T* before *s* becomes *s*; as, *possŭm* (potsŭm).
2) The *f* in the second root is dropped; as, *pŏtu* (potfu).
3) In the *present infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive* there is a contraction; as, *possĕ* (for pŏtessĕ), *possĕm* (for pŏtessĕm).

407. Paradigm.

Possĕ, *to be able*; 2d root, *pŏtu*.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. **Possŭm, pŏtĕs, pŏtest, possŭmŭs, pŏtestĭs, possunt.**
Imp. **pŏtĕrăm;** ***Fut.*** **pŏtĕrŏ;** ***Perf.*** **pŏtu-ī;** ***Pluperf.*** **pŏtu-ĕrăm;** ***Fut. Perf.*** **pŏtu-ĕrŏ.**

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. **possīm;** ***Imp.*** **possĕm;** ***Perf.*** **pŏtu-ĕrĭm;** ***Pluperf.*** **pŏtu-issĕm.**

INFINITIVE.

Pres. **possĕ;** ***Perf.*** **pŏtu-issĕ.**

PARTICIPLE.

Pŏtens (*used as an adjective, powerful*).

408. The various forms of *possĕ* are often best translated by the auxiliaries, *can*, *could*, &c.; e. g.,

Egŏ făcĕrĕ possŭm, *I can do* (am able to do).

Rem.—When a past tense of *possĕ* is thus translated by *could*, any present infinitive depending upon it must be translated by the English perfect; e. g.,

Egŏ făcĕrĕ pŏtuī, *I could have done.*

409. The irregular verb vellĕ, *to will*, or *be willing*, and its compounds, nollĕ, *to be unwilling* (from *nōn* and *vellĕ*), and mallĕ, *to wish rather*, *to prefer* (from *măg* [*măgis*, more] and *vellĕ*), are conjugated as in the following:

410. Paradigms.

Vellĕ. 2d root, *vŏlu.*	Nollĕ. 2d root, *nōlu.*	Mallĕ. 2d root, *mālu.*
	INDICATIVE.	
	PRESENT.	
Vŏlŏ, Vīs, Vult; Vŏlŭmŭs, Vultĭs, Vŏlunt.	Nōlŏ, Nonvīs, Nonvult; Nōlŭmŭs, Nonvultĭs, Nōlunt.	Malŏ, Mavīs, Mavult; Malŭmŭs, Mavultĭs, Malunt.
	IMPERFECT.	
Vŏl-ēbăm, bās, &c.	Nōl-ēbăm, bās, &c.	Mal-ēbăm, bās, &c.
	FUTURE.	
Vŏl-ăm.	Nōl-ăm.	Mal-ăm.
	PERFECT.	
Vŏlu-ī.	Nōlu-ī.	Malu-ī.
	PLUPERFECT.	
Vŏlu-ĕrăm.	Nōlu-ĕrăm.	Malu-ĕrăm.
	FUTURE PERFECT.	
Vŏlu-ĕrŏ.	Nōlu-ĕrŏ.	Malu-ĕrŏ.

PARADIGMS—*continued.*

	SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	PRESENT.	
Vĕl-īm, īs, &c.	Nōl-īm, īs, &c.	Mal-īm, īs, &c.
	IMPERFECT.	
Vell-ĕm, ēs, &c.	Noll-ĕm.	Mall-ĕm.
	PERFECT.	
Vŏlu-ĕrĭm.	Nōlu-ĕrĭm.	Malu-ĕrĭm.
	PLUPERFECT.	
Vŏlu-issĕm.	Nōlu-issĕm.	Malu-issĕm.
	IMPERATIVE.	
	Nōl-ī *or* ītŏ, Nōl-ītĕ, ītōtĕ.	
	INFINITIVE.	
Pres. Vellĕ. *Perf.* Vŏlu-issĕ.	Nollĕ. Nōlu-issĕ.	Mallĕ. Malu-issĕ.
	PARTICIPLES.	
Vŏlens.	Nōlens.	

411. Vocabulary.

Anĭmăl, ālis, *animal.*
Corrĭgĕrĕ, correx, correct, *to correct, reform.*
Cŏr, cordĭs, *n., heart.*
Mallĕ, mālu, *to prefer wish rather.*
Nollĕ, nōlu, *to be unwilling.*
Nullŭs, ă, ŭm (113, R.), *no, not any.*
Occīdĕrĕ, occīd, occīs, *to kill.*
Possĕ, pŏtu, *to be able.*
Praetĕrĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, *past; praeterĭtă (neut. pl.), the past.*
Prŏbŭs, ă, ŭm, *honest, upright.*
Scīpiŏ, ōnĭs, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*
Sĭnĕ, *without.*
Vellĕ, vŏlu, *to wish.*

412. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Haec facĕre possŭmus. 2. Haec facĕre potuisti. 3. Multum discĕre vult. 4. Nolui hoc facĕre.

5. Praeterĭta mutāre non possŭmus. 6. Nullum animal quod sanguĭnem habet, sine corde esse potest. 7. Discat ut possit docēre. 8. Num puĕri regendae civitātis (382) perīti esse possunt? 9. Si vis beātus esse, anĭmo impĕra. 10. Probi semper vitam corrigĕre volunt. 11. Scipio dicēbat, malle se unum civem servāre, quam mille hostes occidĕre.

(*b*) 1. Do you wish to change the past? 2. We do not wish to change the past. 3. You (*pl.*) cannot change the past. 4. We cannot shun death. 5. Let us learn, that we may be able to teach others. 6. They wish to be happy. 7. We all wish to be happy. 8. Could you not have seen the king? 9. We might have learned much. 10. We were unwilling to accuse you. 11. Were you not unwilling to accuse the king?

LESSON LXXII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

413. The irregular verb, ferrĕ, *to bear*, drops *e* between two *r*'s, as *ferrĕ* for *ferĕrĕ*, and *i* in the endings of the second and third sing. act., and of the third sing. pass. It borrows its second and third roots from other verbs.

414. Paradigm.

Ferrĕ, *to bear;* 2d root, *tŭl;* 3d, *lāt.*

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Active.	*Passive.*
Fĕr-ō, fer-s, fer-t, fĕr-ĭmŭs, fer-tĭs, fĕr-unt.	Fĕr-ŏr, fer-rĭs, fer-tŭr, fĕr-ĭmŭr, fĕr-ĭmĭnī, fĕr-untŭr.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

IMPERFECT.

Active.	*Passive.*
Fĕr-ēbăm, bās, &c.	Fĕr-ēbăr, bārĭs, &c.

FUTURE.

Fĕr-ăm, ēs, &c.	Fĕr-ăr, ērĭs, &c.

PERFECT

Tŭl-ī, istī, &c.	Lat-ŭs sŭm, ĕs, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Tŭl-ĕrăm, ās, &c.	Lat-ŭs ĕrăm, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tŭl-ĕrŏ, &c.	Lat-ŭs ĕrŏ, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fĕr-ăm, ās, &c.	Fĕr-ăr, ārĭs, &c.

IMPERFECT

Fer-rĕm, rēs, &c.	Fer-rĕr, rērĭs, &c.

PERFECT.

Tŭl-ĕrĭm, &c.	Lat-ŭs sĭm, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Tŭl-issĕm.	Lat-ŭs essĕm, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Fĕr, *or* fertŏ, Fer-tŏ; Fer-tĕ, *or* fer-tōtĕ. Fĕr-untŏ.	Fer-rĕ, *or* fer-tŏr, Fer-tŏr; Fĕr-ĭmĭnī, Fĕr-untŏr.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fer-rĕ, *Perf.* Tŭl-isse, *Fut.* Lat-ūrŭs essĕ.	Fer-rī, Lat-ŭs essĕ, Lat-ŭm īrī.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

PARTICIPLES.

Active.		*Passive.*	
Pres.	Fĕr-ens,	*Perf.*	Lat-ŭs (ă, ŭm).
Fut.	Lat-ūrŭs (ă, ŭm).	*Fut.*	Fĕr-endŭs (ă, ŭm).

GERUND.

Fĕr-endī, dō, dŭm, dō.

SUPINE.

Lat-ŭm.	Lat-ū.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrĕ* are conjugated like the simple verb.

415. The irregular verb, fiĕrī, *to become, be made,* is used as the passive of făcĕrĕ, and, in the tenses for completed action, has the regular forms of the passive of that verb.

416. Paradigm.

Fiĕrī, *to become, be made.*

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
PRESENT.	
Fīō, fīs, fīt, &c.	Fī-ăm, fī-ās, fī-ăt, &c.
IMPERFECT.	
Fī-ēbăm, ēbās, &c.	Fī-ĕrĕm, ĕrēs, &c.
FUTURE.	
Fī-ăm, ēs, &c.	
PERFECT.	
Fact-ŭs sŭm, &c.	Fact-ŭs sĭm, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	
Fact-ŭs ĕrăm, &c.	Fact-ŭs essĕm, &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
Fact-ŭs ĕrō, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. Fī, *or* fī-tō, Fī-tō.	*Plur.* Fītĕ, *or* fī-tōtĕ, Fī-untō.

PARADIGM—*continued.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fĭĕrī; *Perf.* Fact-ŭs essĕ; *Fut.* Fact-ŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ŭs (ă, ŭm); *Fut.* Făciendŭs (ă, ŭm).

417. VOCABULARY.

Afferrĕ, attŭl, allāt, *to bring, to bring to.*
Auctŏr, ōrĭs, *author.*
Călămĭtās, ātĭs, *misfortune, calamity.*
Crēbĕr, bră, brŭm, *frequent, numerous.*
Ferrĕ, tŭl, lāt, *to carry, bear, endure.*
Fĭĕrī, fact, *to become, be made.*
Inferrĕ, intŭl, illāt, *to bring against, to wage.*
Itĕrŭm, *again.*
Rĕferrĕ, rĕtŭl, rĕlāt, *to bring back, to relate.*
Rūmŏr, ōrĭs, *report, rumor.*
Tertiŭs, ă, ŭm, *third.*
Utĭlĭtās, ātĭs, *profit, advantage.*

418. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Quid fers manu, mi fili? 2. Is labor utĭlis est qui auctōri laudem fert, aliis utilitātem. 3. Tertio die auxilium tulērunt. 4. Crebri ad eum rumōres afferebantur. 5. Dixit Gallos sibi bellum intulisse. 6. His responsis ad Caesărem relātis, itĕrum ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 7. Brutus consul factus est.

(*b*) 1. He has been made king. 2. Do you wish to become king? (*No.*) 3. Many reports will be brought to you. 4. What reports have been brought to you? 5. Your father has become poor. 6. Shall you not bring us aid? 7. Do you not wish to carry aid to your brother? 8. Caesar waged many wars. 9. Caesar is said to have waged many wars. 10. He has endured many misfortunes. 11. Do you wish to wage war against your father? (*No.*) 12. We were unwilling to wage war against our country.

LESSON LXXIII.

Irregular Verbs, continued.

419 THE irregular verb, īrĕ, *to go*, is regular in the parts from the first root.

PARADIGM.

Irĕ, *to go;* 2d root, *īv;* 3d, *ĭt.*

PRESENT.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Eŏ, īs, ĭt; īmŭs, ītĭs, eunt.	Eăm, eās, &c.
IMPERFECT.	
Ibăm, ībās, &c.	Irĕm, īrēs, &c.
FUTURE.	
Ibŏ, ībĭs, &c.	
PERFECT.	
Iv-ī, īv-istī, &c.	Iv-ĕrĭm, ĕrĭs, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	
Iv-ĕrăm, ĕrās, &c.	Iv-issĕm, issēs, &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
Iv-ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. I, *or* ītŏ, Itŏ.	*Plur.* Itĕ, *or* ītōtĕ, Euntŏ.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irĕ; *Perf.* Iv-issĕ; *Fut.* Itūrŭs, essĕ.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (*gen.* euntĭs); *Fut.* Itūrŭs, ă, ŭm.

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Eundī, dō, dŭm, dō.	Itŭm, ĭtū.

REM.—The compounds of *irĕ* are conjugated like the simple verb, but generally contract the perfect *ivi* into *ii*, and most of them want the supine.

420. Edĕrĕ, *to eat*, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essĕ*. These are as follows:

	Regular.	*Irregular.*
Pres.	Edŏ, &c.	Es, est, estĭs.
Imperat.	Edĕ, &c.	Es, estŏ, estĕ, estōtĕ.
Subj. Imp.	Edĕrĕm, &c.	Essĕm, essēs, &c.
Infin.	Edĕrĕ.	Essĕ.

421. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The words *dŏmŭs* and *rūs*, together with the genitives *hŭmī*, *bellī*, and *mīlĭtiae*, are construed like names of towns (see 227); e. g.,

Dŏmŭm rĕdiit, *he returned home.*

422. VOCABULARY.

Abīrĕ, i, ĭt, *to go away, depart.*
Dŏmī (*gen. of dŏmŭs*), *at home.*
Edĕrĕ (essĕ), ēd, ēs, *to eat.*
Et—ĕt, *both—and.*
Evŏlarĕ, āv, āt, *to fly away, to flee.*
Irĕ, īv, ĭt, *to go.*
Mīlĭtiae (*gen. of mīlĭtia*), *on service, in the field.*
Nĕc—nĕc, *neither—nor.*
Rĕdīrĕ, i, ĭt, *to return.*
Rūs, rūrĭs, *field, country.*

423. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Fracto puĕri brachio, abit. 2. Fundo in tres partes divīso, redit Athenas. 3. Puĕri venātum[18] ivērunt. 4. Est (*edit*) ut vivat. 5. Nonne estis ut vivātis? 6. Abeat Romam. 7. Scriptis epistŏlis, abiērunt. 8. Balbus, *quum* manus in aquam *immersisset*, abiit. 9. Caius rus ex urbe evolavĕrit. 10. Caius nondum rure rediit. 11. Et Caesar et Balbus Romam rediērunt. 12. Vēnit sacerdos, ut aram florĭbus cingĕret.

(*b*) 1. Caesar has not yet returned to Rome. 2. The

boys have gone a hunting.[11] 3. Do you wish to go a hunting? 4. They say he has gone a hunting. 5. He says that he wishes to go a hunting. 6. Do you not eat to live? 7. He says that he eats to live. 8. Balbus, having crowned the boy's head with a garland, went away. 9. Caesar, having conquered his enemies, will return to Rome. 10. They all wish to return to Rome. 11. Do you wish to return home? 12. Balbus is at his own house. 13. He was with me both at home and on service. 14. You have lived many years in the country.

LESSON LXXIV.

Periphrastic Conjugations.

424. There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rŭs* and *dŭs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essĕ*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., Scriptūrŭs sŭm, *I am about to write.*

425. The second periphrastic conjugation expresses *duty* or *necessity;* e. g., Virtūs cŏlendă est, *virtue must be cultivated.*

426. Rule of Syntax.—The agent, or *person by whom*, is put in the *dative* with the *part. in dŭs;* with other words it is generally governed in the ablative by *ā* or *ăb*.

427. Rule of Syntax.—Many adjectives are followed by the *dative* of the object to which the quality

is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., Pax mihĭ grā-tissĭmă ĕrăt, *peace was very acceptable to me.*

428. VOCABULARY.

Bĭbĕrĕ, bĭb, bĭbĭt, *to drink.*
Dēlērĕ, ēv, ēt, *to destroy.*
Ignārŭs, ă, ŭm, *ignorant.*
Inūtĭlĭs, ĕ, *useless, unfit for.*
Mărīnŭs, ă, ŭm, *marine, of the sea.*
Prŏpiŏr, ŭs (*comp.*), *nearer.*
Pŭtārĕ, āv, āt, *to think, regard.*
Simplex, ĭcĭs, *simple.*
Subvĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent, *to go to the assistance of, to aid.*

429. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Tondendae sunt oves, non deglubendae. 2. Exercenda est virtus. 3. Nonnĕ claudendae sunt urbis portae? 4. Sapientia ars vivendi putanda est. 5. Puer Romam mittendus est. 6. Pauperĭbus qui ne grano quidem uno fraudandi sunt, subveniāmus. 7. Quid factūri estis? 8. Simplex cibus puĕris utilissĭmus est. 9. Luna terrae propior est quam sol. 10. Aqua ma-rīna inutĭlis est bibendo. 11. Inutĭles sunt libri ignāro legendi.

(*b*) 1. They must be sent to Athens. 2. They must be sent into the country. 3. We must be taught by the wise. 4. The city must be destroyed. 5. The gates must be shut. 6. Must not virtue be learned? 7. Must not virtue be practised? 8. Every opportu-nity of practising virtue[14] must be seized. 9. The poor must not be defrauded of even a single grain. 10. Has he not defrauded the poor? 11. Let not the poor be defrauded of a single grain. 12. Is not the moon nearer the earth than the sun?

LESSON LXXV.

Impersonal Verbs.

430. IMPERSONAL verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I*, *thou*, *he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it;* e. g.,

Oportĕt, *it behooves.*
Taedĕt mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

431. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally;* e. g.,

Constăt, *it is known.*
Juvăt, *it delights.*

432. The impersonal verb lĭcĕt, *it is lawful*, or *is allowed*, denotes *permission*, and may be translated by *may* and *might;* e. g.,

Lĭcĕt, *may* (it is allowed).
Lĭcuĭt, *might* (it was allowed).

Mihĭ īrĕ lĭcĕt,	*I may go.*
Tĭbĭ īrĕ lĭcĕt,	*You may go.*
Illī īrĕ lĭcĕt,	*He may go.*
Nōbīs īrĕ lĭcĕt,	*We may go.*
Vōbīs īrĕ lĭcĕt,	*You may go.*
Illīs īrĕ lĭcĕt,	*They may go.*
Mihĭ īrĕ lĭcuĭt,	*I might have gone.*
Tĭbĭ īrĕ lĭcuĭt,	*You might have gone.*

REM. 1.—The dative in these examples is the indirect object after *lĭcĕt.*

REM. 2.—The present infinitive must be translated by the English perfect after *lĭcuĭt*, *might*, as in the above examples. (See also 408, Rem.)

(*Eng.*) I may go. (*Lat. Id.*) It is allowe me to go.
(*Eng.*) I might *have gone.* (*Lat. Id.*) It was allowed
me (*then*) to go.

433. The impersonal verb ŏportĕt, *it behooves*, denotes *duty* or *propriety*, and may be translated by *ought;* e. g.,

Mē īrĕ ŏportĕt,	*I ought to go.*
Tē īrĕ ŏportĕt, &c.	*You ought to go.*
Mē īrĕ ŏportuĭt,	*I ought to have gone.*
Tē īrĕ ŏportuĭt,	*You ought to have gone.*

Rem. 1.—Observe that here, too, the present infinitive is to be translated by the perfect after a past tense.

Rem 2.—The infinitive after *ŏportĕt* takes a subject accusative.

434.

	English.	*Latin Idiom.*
(*a*)	**I repent of my folly,**	**It repents me of my folly.**
	I am vexed at my folly,	**It vexes me of my folly.**
	I am ashamed of my folly,	**It shames me of my folly.**
	I pity the poor,	**It pities me of the poor.**
	I am weary of life,	**It irks me of life.**
(*b*)	**Mē meae stultĭtiae poenĭtĕt,**	**I repent of my folly.**
	Mē meae stultĭtiae pĭgĕt,	**I am vexed at my folly.**
	Mē meae stultĭtiae pŭdĕt,	**I am ashamed of my folly.**
	Mĭsĕrĕt mē paupĕrŭm,	**I pity the poor.**
	Taedĕt mē vītae,	**I am weary of life.**

435. Rule of Syntax.—The *impersonal* verbs of feeling, *mĭsĕrĕt, poenĭtĕt, pŭdĕt, taedĕt,* and *pĭgĕt,* take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling. (See examples above.)

436. Vocabulary.

Adessĕ, ădfŭ, ***to be present.***
Amīcĭtiă, ae, ***friendship.***
Constăt, ***it is known, is an admitted fact.***
Dīlĭgens, entĭs, ***diligent.***
Hăbĭtarĕ, av, at, ***to inhabit, dwell.***
Immortalĭs, ĕ, ***immortal.***
Lĭcĕt, ***it is lawful, is permitted.***

Mĭsĕrĕt, *one pities;* **tuī mē mĭsĕrĕt,** *I pity you.*
Oportĕt, *it behooves, one ought.*
Pĭgĕt, *one is grieved at;* **mē pĭgĕt,** *I am grieved.*
Poenĭtĕt, *it repents, one repents.*
Praestăt, *it is better.*
Rĕcĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, cept, *to receive.*
Saepĕ, *often.*
Sŏnŭs, ī, *sound, noise.*
Tardŭs, ă, ŭm, *slow.*
Vēlox, ōcĭs, *swift.*

437. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Constat sonum luce tardiōrem esse. 2. Saepe facĕre praestat quam loqui. 3. Nonne licet Romae habitāre? 4. Nonne licuit Athēnis habitāre? 5. Nunquam licet peccāre. 6. Num licet Christiānis gloriae servīre? 7. Puĕros oportet diligentes esse. 8. Amicitiam immortālem esse oportet. 9. Tui me misĕret; mei piget. 10. Sapientia semper eo contenta est quod adest. 11. Ne multa loquĕre. 12. Miserēre nostri. 13. Natūra omnes propensi sumus ad discendum.

(*b*) 1. It is well known that light is swifter than sound. 2. Is it not well known that the moon is nearer the earth than the sun? 3. Is it not well known that sound is slower than light? 4. He repents of his folly. 5. I repented of my folly. 6. Ought not Christians to do good to *as many as possible?* 7. Ought not Balbus to have kept[m] his word? 8. Ought not Caius to have been condemned to death? 9. I have received many letters from you. 10. The bird has flown away from my hands.

LESSON LXXVI.

Impersonal Periphrastic.

438. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e. g.,

Mihĭ scrībendŭm est,	*I must* or *should write.*
Tĭbĭ scrībendŭm est,	*you must* or *should write.*
Illī scrībendŭm est,	*he must* or *should write.*
Nōbīs scrībendŭm est,	*we must* or *should write.*
Vōbīs scrībendŭm est,	*you must* or *should write.*
Illīs scrībendŭm est,	*they must* or *should write.*

439. Here too the agent is put in the dative (see 426) when expressed. It is omitted.

1) When it means every body or people in general, though it may be translated by *we* or *you*; e g.,

Edendŭm est, *we* or *you* (every body) *must eat.*

2) When the persons meant are not likely *to be mistaken.*

440. In the impersonal periphrastic construction, if the verb is one which governs a dative (396), its *agent* (the person by whom) must not be expressed; e. g.,

Crēdendŭm est Caiō.

We must believe Caius (*not*, Caius must believe).

REM.—If, in any instance, it is necessary to express the agent, it must either be done by means of the ablative with *ā* or *ăb*, or the form of the expression must be changed. The two datives would leave it doubtful *which* was the *agent.*

441. Vocabulary.

Etiăm, *even.*
Lăbōrārĕ, āv, āt, *to labor, toil.*
Mĕtuĕrĕ, u, *to fear.*
Sĕnex, sĕnĭs, *an old man;* pl. *the aged.*

442. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Mihi discendum est. 2. Etiam senĭbus discendum est. 3. Imprŏbis metuendum est. 4. Tibi evolandum est ex urbe. 5. Manendum est Romae. 6. Totam hiĕmem manendum est Carthagĭne. 7. Ambulandum est per urbem. 8. Laborandum est, ut discas. 9. Nonne laborandum est, ut discāmus? 10.

Num semper ludendum est? 11. Nonne resistendum est irae? 12. Num credendum est imprŏbis? 13. Nonne resistendum est anĭmo? 14. Non omnes ad discendum propensi sunt. 15. Discendum est, ut possis docēre. 16. Edendum est, ut possīmus vivĕre.

(*b*) 1. We must dwell *in the country.* 2. We must remain *at home.* 3. We must fly from the city (into) the country. 4. The unlearned must labor, that they may learn. 5. We must fight, that we may preserve our lives. 6. The girls must walk through the city. 7. True greatness of mind must be valued at-a-very-high-price. 8. We should spare the conquered. 9. We should resist anger. 10. Should we not resist anger? 11. We should obey the laws of our country. 12. We must not spare even Balbus. 13. We must pardon both Caius and Balbus. 14. We must not believe even Caesar himself. 15. Having written his letter, he will go a-hunting.

LESSON LXXVII.

Impersonal Passive Verbs.—Prepositions.

443. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e.g.,

Mihĭ crēdĭtŭr,	*I am believed.*
Tĭbĭ crēdĭtŭr,	*Thou art believed.*
Illī crēdĭtŭr,	*He is believed.*
Nōbīs crēdĭtŭr,	*We are believed.*
Vōbīs crēdĭtŭr,	*You are believed.*
Illīs crēdĭtŭr,	*They are believed.*

444. Prepositions, as we have already seen (200), show the relation of objects to each other; e. g., ĭn urbĕ hăbĭtăt, *he dwells in the city.*

445. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., Ad, adversŭs, antĕ, ăpŭd, circā *or* circŭm, cĭs *or* cĭtrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intĕr, intrā, juxtā, ŏb, pĕnĕs, pĕr, pōnĕ, post, praetĕr, prŏpĕ, proptĕr, sĕcundŭm, sŭprā, trans, ultrā, versŭs (*rare*).

446. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., A (ăb *or* abs), absquĕ, cōrăm, cŭm, dē, ē *or* ex, pălăm, prae, prō, sĭnĕ, tĕnŭs.

447. RULE OF SYNTAX.—The five prepositions, clăm, ĭn, sŭb, subtĕr, and sŭpĕr, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM.—*In* and *sŭb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtĕr* generally takes the accusative. *Sŭpĕr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

448 VOCABULARY.

Cĭs, *on this side.*
Coelŭm, ī, *heaven, the heavens.*
Cōrăm, *before, in the presence of.*
Ergā, *towards.*
Fĭrmŭs, ă, ŭm, *firm, sure.*
Infrā, *below.*
Intrā, *within.*
Paucŭs, ă, ŭm, *few, little.*
Piĕtas, ātĭs, *loyalty, faithfulness.*
Prae, *before, in comparison with.*
Suprā, *above.*
Terră, ae, *the earth.*

449. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Vobis non credĭtur. 2. Bonis credĭtur. 3. Gloriae tuae invidētur. 4. Irae resistĭtur. 5. Pauci veniunt ad senectūtem. 6. Nulla est firma amicitia

inter malos. 7. Piĕtas erga patriam conservanda est. 8. Galli cis Rhenum habĭtant. 9. Intra muros habitābat. 10. Coram popŭlo loquētur. 11. Argentum prae auro contemnĭtur. 12. Caecus de colorĭbus judicāre non potest. 13. Supra nos coelum conspicĭmus; infra nos terram.

(b) 1. The good are always envied. 2. The wicked should never be believed. 3. The conquered must be spared. 4. We are envied. 5. They will be envied. 6. He was buried within the walls. 7. They wish to be buried on-this-side-of the Rhine. 8. Let us walk through the city. 9. They have returned from the city into the country. 10. Do you wish to go into the city? 11. My father will remain in the city the whole winter.

LESSON LXXVIII.

Conjunctions.

450. CONJUNCTIONS are merely *connectives;* as, pătĕr *et* fīliŭs, *the father* and *son.* Certain combinations of these require some attention.

451. *Et* followed by another *ĕt; tŭm* or *quŭm* followed by *tŭm*, are *both—and.*

452. Nōn sōlŭm—sĕd ĕtiăm, *not only—but also.*

453. Tăm—quăm, { *so—as; as—as.* / *as well—as.* / *both—and.* }

454. Etiăm, *even, also;* ĕtiăm atquĕ ĕtiăm, *again and again;* quŏquĕ, *also, too* (follows the word it belongs to).

455. Aut, *or;* aut—aut, vĕl—vĕl, *either—or.*
Sīvĕ—sīvĕ, seu—seu, *either—or, whether—or.*

456. Nĕc—nĕc, nĕquĕ—nĕquĕ, *neither—nor.*
Vĕl, *or,* sometimes *even;* with superlatives, *very, extremely, possible.*

457. At, sĕd, autĕm, vērŭm, vērŏ, *but.*
Attămĕn, tămĕn, vēruntămĕn, *yet, but, but yet.*

458. Atquī, *but, now* (as used in reasoning).

459. Năm, namquĕ, ĕnĭm, *for.*

Ergŏ,	*therefore, then.*
Igĭtŭr, ĭdeō,	*therefore.*
Ităquĕ,	*accordingly, and so, therefore.*
Quārē,	*wherefore.*

460. VOCABULARY.

Amphĭbiŭm, ī, *amphibious animal.*	**Nascī, nāt,** *to be born.*
Audax, ācĭs, *audacious, daring.*	**Nĭmiŭs, ă, ŭm,** *excessive, too much.*
Dēterrērĕ, u, ĭt, *to deter.*	**Pŭdŏr, ōrĭs,** *shame, sense of shame.*
Inceptŭm, ī, *purpose, undertaking.*	**Somnŭs, ī,** *sleep.*
Impĕdīrĕ, īv, īt, *to impede, hinder.*	

461. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Et discet puer et docēbit. 2. Et Romae vixi et Carthagĭne. 3. Lupus quum ovem tum canem momordĕrat. 4. Ovem non solum totondit, sed etiam deglupsit. 5. Nec timĭdus est, nec audax. 6. Nimius somnus neque anĭmo, neque corpŏri prodest. 7. Non deterreor ab incepto, sed pudōre impedior. 8. Nihil labōras; ideo nihil habes. 9. Nemo tam pauper vivit, quam natus est. 10. Amphibia et in aqua et in terra vivunt.

(*b*) 1. We shall go both to Rome and to Carthage. 2. Will you also accuse me? 3. Will they even con-

demn the king to death? [No.] 4. We must both learn and teach. 5. Do you not wish both to learn and to teach? 6. We might have condemned not only the father, but also the son. 7. He will either remain at Rome, or go to Athens. 8 Dogs as well as wolves sometimes bite sheep. 9. He sent his son to Rome, but was unwilling to go himself. 10. Caius has been accused of treason, but he will never be condemned. 11. He will not go a hunting, for he has buried his son.

LESSON LXXIX.

Subjunctive Mood with ŭt, nē, *and* quō.

462. Ut with subj.
- 1. *in order that, that, so that.*
- 2. *the infin.* (expressing purpose).
- 3. *as,* with *infinitive.*
- 4. *granting that, although.*
- 5. *that,* after to fear *that not.*

463. When *ŭt* introduces a *purpose,* the subjunctive may be rendered by *may, might;* when it introduces a *consequence* (as after *so, such*), it may be rendered by the *indicative* or *infinitive.*

464. Ut with the indicative is *as, when, since, after, how*

465. Nē with subj.
- 1. *lest, that not.*
- 2. *not with the infinitive.*
- 3. *not with the imperative.*
- 4. after to fear *that.*

466. Nē with the imperative or subjunctive used imperatively, is simply *not;* as, *nē scrībās,* or *nē scrībĕ,* do not write.

467. After verbs of fearing, *ŭt* and *nē* appear to change meanings; ŭt, *that—not;* nē, *that* or *lest.*

468. After verbs of fearing, the *subjunctive present* must generally be rendered by the *future;* as, *vĕreŏr ŭt făciăm*, I fear that I shall *not* do, *vĕreŏr nē făciăm*, I fear that I shall do.

469. Quō with the subjunctive is used to express purpose in sentences containing a comparative degree; as, *mĕdĭcō ălĭquĭd dandŭm est, quō sĭt stŭdĭōsiŏr*, something should be given to the physician, that he may be the more attentive.

☞ **For the use of tenses in the subjunctive, see 265 and 266.**

470. VOCABULARY.

Căvērĕ, cāv, caut, *to take care, be careful.*
Cŏgnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, *known.*
Effĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fect, *to effect, accomplish.*
Fămēs, ĭs, *hunger.*
Incŏgnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, *unknown.*
Mĕdĭcŭs, ī, *physician.*
Mŏnērĕ, mŏnu, mŏnĭt, *to advise, warn.*
Multĭtūdŏ, ĭnĭs, *multitude.*
Nŭmĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to number.*
Quŏ, *that, in order that.*
Sătĭs (substantively), *enough.*
Stellă, ae, *star.*
Sustĭnērĕ, tĭnu, tent, *to sustain, to endure.*
Vĕrērī, vĕrĭt, *to fear.*

471. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Multi alios laudant, ut ab aliis laudentur. 2. Stellārum tanta multitūdo est, ut numerāri non possint. 3. Medĭcis alĭquid dandum est, quo sint studiosiōres. 4. Cave ne incognĭta pro cognĭtis habeas. 5. Ne tentes quod effĭci non possit. 6. Vereor, ne labōres tuos augeam. 7. Vereor ne brevi tempŏre fames in urbe sit. 8. Timeo ut labōres tantos sustineas. 9. Avārus semper verētur, ut satis habeat. 10. Verebamĭni ut pax firma esset.

(*b*) 1. The cold is so great that the snow will not melt. 2. He praised us, in-order-that he might be praised by us. 3. The multitude of men was so great that it could not be numbered. 4. The multitude is so great that it cannot be numbered. 5. He has come to aid you. 6. They have gone to Rome to aid their father. 7. I sent him home, that he might not be bitten by the dog. 8. He warned his sons not to break the laws. 9. We fear we shall increase your labors. 10. They feared that he would not be acquitted.

LESSON LXXX.

Subjunctive with quōmĭnŭs, quīn, *and other Conjunctions.*

472. After verbs of *hindering*, quōmĭnŭs is more common with the subjunctive than nē. It may generally be translated by *from*, the verb being turned into the participial substantive.

Rem.—Quōmĭnŭs (quō and mĭnŭs) means literally, *by which the less*, or, *so that the less*; e. g.,

> Caiō nihĭl obstăt quōmĭnŭs sĭt beātŭs.
> (*Nothing opposes Caius by which he should be the less happy.*)
> Nothing prevents Caius from being happy.

473. Quīn with subj.—
1. *but* (as used after *negatives*).
2. *the relative* with *not*.
3. *as not* with *infinitive*.
4. *that* after *doubt*, *deny* in *negative sentences*.
5. *from* or *without* with the *participial substantive*, after *prevent*, *escape*, &c.

474. Quīn coincides very nearly with *but;* it is, however, generally better translated by some of the other forms given above; e. g.,

1) There is nobody, quīn pŭtĕt { *but thinks.* / *who does not think.* }
2) No one is so mad, quīn pŭtĕt, *as not to think.*
3) I do not deny, quīn turpĕ sĭt, *that it is disgraceful.*
4) They never saw him, quīn rīdērĕt, *without laughing.*

Rem.—Quīn with the subjunctive is generally used after negative expressions and those which imply doubt.

475. The following conjunctions are used with the subjunctive; viz.,

Dŭm, mŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ, *provided, if only.*
Lĭcĕt, *although.*
O sī (*O if*), ŭtĭnăm, *would that.*
Quamvīs, *however much, however.*
Quăsĭ, tanquăm, *as if.*

Rem.—*Not* after *provided, &c.,* is expressed by *nē.*

476. Rule of Syntax.—Verbs signifying *to abound,* or *be destitute of,* take the ablative; e. g., Nēmŏ ăliōrŭm ŏpĕ cărērĕ pŏtest, *no one can be* (do) *without the assistance of others.*

477. Vocabulary.

Dŭbĭtarĕ, āv, āt, *to doubt.*
Interdŭm, *sometimes.*
Obstārĕ, stĭt, stăt, *to oppose, prevent.*
Prōvĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, *prudent, cautious.*
Terrērĕ, terru, terrĭt, *to terrify.*

478. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Nihil impĕdit, quomĭnus id facĕre possīmus. 2. Quid obstat, quomĭnus Caius sit beātus? 3. Non

me terrēbis, quomĭnus illud faciam. 4. Sapiens nunquam dubitābit, quin immortālis sit anĭmus. 5. Nemo est tam bonus ac provĭdus, quin interdum peccet. 6. O si sapiens virtūtem colat! 7. Utĭnam hoc verum sit. 8. Sic agis, quăsi me ames.

(*b*) 1. Nothing prevents you from being happy. 2. Nothing prevents him from doing this. 3. Does any thing prevent you from doing this? 4. We have never doubted that the soul is immortal. 5. Do you doubt that the soul is immortal? 6. There is no one who does not think (473, 2) that you were engaged in the battle. 7. He never saw the shepherd without laughing at him (474, 4). 8. Would that all citizens would observe the laws.

LESSON LXXXI.

Interrogative Sentences.

479. All interrogatives take the indicative when the question is put *directly*; as, *nŭm crēdĭs*, do you believe?

480. Nŭm and nē are merely interrogative particles, and are not construed in direct questions.

481. All interrogatives take the subjunctive when the question is put *indirectly* or *doubtfully*, especially when it depends upon another verb.

482. Double questions take two different constructions, viz.:

1) The first clause is introduced by *nŭm*, *ŭtrŭm*, or *nĕ*, and the second by *ăn*.

2) The first clause has no interrogative word, and the second has *ăn* or *nĕ*.

483. Vocabulary.

Enŭmĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to enumerate, to count up.*
Ignĭs, ĭs, *m., fire, heat.*
Immōbĭlĭs, ĕ, *immovable, fixed.*
Lŏcŭplēs, ētĭs, *rich.*
Majŏr, ŭs, ōrĭs (*comp. of* magnus), *larger, greater.*
Mĭnŏr, ŭs, ōrĭs (*comp. of* parvus), *smaller.*
Mōbĭlĭs, ĕ, *movable.*
Misĕr, ĕră, ĕrŭm, *unhappy, miserable.*
Mortālĭs, ĕ, *mortal.*
Nescīrĕ, īv, īt, *to be ignorant, not to know.*
Olĭm, *formerly.*
Quaestiŏ, ōnĭs, *question.*
Rŏtundŭs, ă, ŭm, *round.*
Undĕ, *whence.*

484. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Estne anĭmus immortālis? 2. Visne miser esse? 3. Quis enumĕret artium multitudĭnem? 4. Nescio, unde sol ignem habeat. 5. Quid dicam nescio. 6. Olim quaestio erat, num terra rotunda esset. 7. Utrum major est sol, an minor, quam terra? 8. Num sol mobĭlis, an immobĭlis? 9. Sumusne immortāles, an mortāles?

(*b*) 1. Who has come? 2. I do not know who has come. 3. Do not all men wish to live? 4. Do you fear that the king will be conquered? 5. Do you not fear that we shall be condemned to death? 6. What did he say? 7. We do not know what he said. 8. Are they rich or poor? 9. You do not know whether we are rich or poor. 10. Whence does the moon derive (*habēre*) her light? 11. He does not know whence the moon derives her light. 12. Who knows whence the sun derives his light?

LESSON LXXXII.

Conditional Sentences.—Subjunctive in Relative Clauses and with Quum.

485. Every conditional sentence consists of two parts, *the condition* and *the consequence;* e. g.,

Sī quĭd hăbeăt, dăbĭt.
If he has any thing, he will give it.

Rem.—Here *sī quĭd hăbeăt* is the *condition*, and *dăbĭt* the consequence.

486. Conditional sentences are of three kinds:

1) Those which assume the *condition* to be *true;* e. g.,

   Sī quĭd hăbĕt, dăt.
   If he has any thing, he gives it.

2) Those which represent the condition as *possible;* e. g.,

   Sī quĭd hăbeăt, dăbĭt.
   If he has any thing, he will give it.

3) Those which represent the condition as *impossible;* e. g.,

   1. Sī quĭd hăbērĕt, dărĕt.
   If he had any thing, he would give it.

   2. Sī quĭd hăbuissĕt, dĕdissĕt.
   If he had had any thing, he would have given it.

487. It must be observed:

1) That *the condition* is expressed in the first of the above classes by the *indicative*, in the second by the *subjunctive present* or *perfect*, and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

2) That *the consequence* is expressed in the first two of these classes by the *indicative* (or sometimes by the *imperative*), and in the third by the *subjunctive imperfect* or *pluperfect*.

488. The relative clause takes the subjunctive:

1) When it expresses a *purpose* or *result;* e. g.,

1. Lēgātōs mīsērunt, quī dīcĕrent.
They sent ambassadors to say (*that they might say*).

2. Nĕquĕ ĕnĭm tū ĭs ĕs quī nesciās.
Nor indeed are you such an one as not to know (*who may not know*).

2) When it *defines* or *explains* some indefinite antecedent, whether affirmative or negative; e. g.

1. Sunt quī pŭtent.
There are (some) who think, *or* some persons think.

2. Nēmŏ est, quī haud intĕllĭgăt.
There is no one who does not understand.

489. Quŭm (cŭm) takes the subjunctive when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g.,

Quae *cŭm* ĭtă sint.
Since these things (*lit.* which things) are so.

490. Quum, as an adverb of time (*when*), takes the indicative; e. g.,

Itĕr făciēbăm *quŭm* Balbŭm vĭdēbăm.
I was travelling *when* I saw Balbus.

The use of *quŭm* with the *perfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive* to supply the place of a perfect active participle, has already been noticed (367).

491. Vocabulary.

Consŭlĕrĕ, sŭlu, sult, *to consult, ask advice.*
Nātiō, ōnĭs, *nation.*
Pertĭmescĕrĕ, tĭmu, *to fear greatly.*
Suādērĕ, suās, suās, *to advise.*
Sustĭnērĕ, tĭnu, tent, *to sustain, withstand.*
Vulnĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to wound.*

492. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Peccāvit, si id fecit. 2. Peccābit, si id faciat. 3. Peccārent, si id facĕrent. 4. Peccavissent, si id fecissent. 5. Si vis beātus, impĕra anĭmo. 6. Si me consŭlis, suadeo. 7. Patriam auro, si potuisset, vendidisset. 8. Sunt qui rideant. 9. Erant qui saltavissent. 10. Caesar equitātum, qui sustinēret hostium impĕtum, misit. 11. Nulla est enim natio quam pertimescāmus

(*b*) 1. If he is alive (*lives*), he is now at Athens. 2. If he remains at Athens, he will learn much. 3. If he had gone to Rome, he would have been killed. 4. They would have sold their country, if they could. 5. If the king had been in the city, he would have pardoned you. 6. There were some who were wounded. 7. Since we cannot remain at Rome, we will go to Athens. 8. Caesar had sent two legions to attack (make an attack upon) the enemy.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Participles.

493. Participles assume an assertion which may be formally stated in a sentence whenever it is necessary or convenient to do so; thus, *puĕr rīdens*, may be vari-

ously translated, according to the connection; as, *the boy who laughs, the boy when he laughs, &c.*

494. Participles may sometimes be translated by a relative clause; e. g.,

1. Puĕr rīdens { *the boy who laughs.* / *the boy who was laughing.* }
2. Puĕr rīsūrŭs, { *the boy who is going to laugh.* / *the boy who will laugh.* }
3. Puĕr ămātŭs, *the boy who is* (or *was*) *loved.*
4. Puĕr ămandŭs, *the boy who ought to be loved.*

495. If no substantive is expressed, supply *man*, *men*, *he*, *she*, or *those*, &c.; e. g.,

1. Rīdentĭs, *of him who laughs.*
2. Rīdentiŭm, *of those who laugh.*

496. With a neuter plural participle, supply things; e. g.,

Praeterĭtūră, { *things that will pass away.* / *what will pass away.* }

REM.—Participles, being parts of verbs, of course govern the same cases.

497. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *when* or *while;* e. g.,

Rīdens, *when* (or *while*) *he is* (or *was*) *laughing.*

REM.—In a sentence with *when* or *while*, we often omit the auxiliary verb; e. g.,

Rīdens, *when laughing.*

498. If the participle stands alone, *he*, *they*, *a man*, *men*, or *one*, &c., must be supplied as the subject of the verb; e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *when he* (or *one*) *is laughing.*
2. Rīdentēs, *when men* (or *they*) *are laughing.*

499. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *if;* e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *if a man* (*he* or *one*) *laughs.*
2. Amātŭs, *if a man* (*he* or *one*) *is loved.*

500. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs with *because, for, since,* or by participial substantives with *from* or *through.*

501. Dŭbĭtans,
1. *because I doubt.*
2. *for I doubt.*
3. *since I doubt.*
4. *from doubting.*
5. *through doubting.*

502. VOCABULARY.

Adūlātŏr, ōrĭs, *flatterer.*
Disjungĕrĕ, junx, junct, *to separate.*
Dūrārĕ, āv, at, *to last.*
Expellĕrĕ, pŭl, puls, *to expel, banish.*
Fēlĭcĭtās, ātĭs, *happiness*
Immensŭs, ă, ŭm, *immense.*
Innoxiŭs, ă, ŭm, *harmless.*
Intervallŭm, ī, *distance, space.*
Perfĭdiă, ae, *perfidy.*
Perpĕtuō, *for ever.*
Pervĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*
Piŭs, ă, ŭm, *pious.*
Plăcēre, plăcu, plăcĭt, *to please.*
Rĕvertĕrĕ, vert, vers, *to return, turn back.*
Sătiārĕ, āv, āt, *to satisfy.*
Vĭdērī, vīs, *to seem.*
Vĭtŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to reprove, criticise.*

503. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Sapiens bona semper placitūra laudat. 2. Pii homĭnes ad felicitātem perpetuo duratūram pervenient. 3. Adulātor aut laudat vituperanda, aut vitupĕrat laudanda. 4. Leōnes satiāti (497) innoxii sunt. 5. Equum emptūrus (499) cave ne decipiāris. 6. Roma expulsus Carthagĭne puĕros docēbit. 7. Respondent

se perfidiam verĭtos (501) revertisse. 8. Stellae nobis parvae videntur, immenso intervallo a nobis disjunctae.

(b) 1. He who does wrong (494) is never happy. 2. Those who read this book will learn much. 3. There are some who think (488, 2) little of happiness which will not last. 4. The wise prize very highly the happiness which will last for ever. 5. They learned much while remaining at Rome (497). 6. If you love your parents (499), you will obey them. 7. We shall pardon him if condemned. 8. He fled from the city, because he had been accused of bribery (501).

LESSON LXXXIV.

Participles—continued.

504. PARTICIPLES may sometimes be translated by verbs with *though* or *although;* e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though he laughs.*
2. Amātŭs, *though he is* (*was,* &c.) *loved.*

505. We often omit the auxiliary verb after *though,* e. g.,

1. Rīdens, *though laughing.*
2. Amātŭs, *though loved.*

506. Participles may sometimes be translated by verbs or participial nouns, with *after;* e. g.,

1. Passŭs (Act.), { 1. *after he has* (*had*) *suffered.* 2. *after suffering.* }

2. Amātŭs, { 1. *after he was* (*has been*) *loved.* 2. *after he had been loved.* 3. *after having been loved.* }

507. Participles may sometimes be translated by corresponding verbs followed by the conjunction *and;* e.g.

1. Rīdens exclāmăt.
   He laughs and exclaims (*lit.* laughing he exclaims).
2. Rīdens exclāmāvĭt.
   He laughed and exclaimed.

Rem.—In the above examples the participle is construed by the same tense as the accompanying verb; sometimes, however, a different tense must be used; e. g.,

Correptŭm lĕpŏrĕm lăcĕrăt.
He *has seized* the hare and is mangling it.

508. Participles with *nōn* may be translated by participial substantives depending upon the preposition *without;* e. g.,

1. Nōn rīdens, *without laughing.*
2. Nōn amātŭs, { 1. *without being loved.* 2. *without loving him.* }
3. Vĭtŭpĕrăt lĭbrōs nōn intellectōs.
   He censures books (*not understood*) without understanding them.

509. Participles in the ablative absolute may be construed like participles in any other construction, the Latin substantive being translated either by the nominative or the objective; e. g.,

Tarquĭniō rēgnantĕ, *when Tarquin was king.*
Tē sĕdentĕ, *as you were sitting.*
Captā Tўrō, *after Tyre was taken.*

510. Participles may often be translated by substantives of kindred meaning; e. g.,

Lēgēs viŏlātae, *the violation of the laws* (lit. *the violated laws*).

Vērĕ apprŏpinquantĕ, *on the approach of spring.*

511. Vocabulary.

Adventŭs, ūs, *approach.*
Antĕ (*prep. with accus.*), *before.*
Apprŏpinquārĕ, āv, āt, *to approach.*
Coenă, ae, *supper, feast.*
Cŏgnoscĕrĕ, nōv, nĭt, *to ascertain.*
Comprehendĕrĕ, hend, hens, *to arrest, comprehend.*
Intellĭgĕrĕ, lex, lect, *to understand.*
Pōnĕrĕ, pŏsu, pŏsĭt, *to place.*
Prŏfĭciscī, prŏfect, *to set out, to start.*
Transīrĕ, ī, ĭt, *to pass over.*
Vēr, vēris, *n., spring.*

512. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Ad coenam vocātus, nondum venit. 2. Multa transīmus ante ocŭlos posĭta. 3. Ocŭlus, se non videns, alia videt. 4. Cum legionĭbus profectus celerĭter adĕro. 5. Comprehensum homĭnem Romam ducēbant. 6. Non petens regnum accēpit. 7. Multi vitupĕrant libros non intellectos. 8. His responsis datis, itĕrum ad eum Caesar legātos mittit. 9. Cognĭto Caesăris adventu, legātos ad eum mittunt.

(*b*) 1. He will not be condemned, although he has been accused of treason. 2. Although invited to the feast, they will not come. 3. They were accused and (507) condemned. 4. He will receive the government without seeking it (508). 5. We censure these boys without knowing them. 6. They were put to death without having been condemned. 7. Having ascertained the approach of our army, the enemy fled. 8. Birds will return on the approach of spring.

LESSON LXXXV.

Derivation of Nouns.

513. WORDS may be formed in two ways; viz.,

1) By *derivation*, i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the roots of other words; e. g., *moerŏr*, sadness, formed by the addition of *ŏr* to *moer*, the root of *moerērĕ*, to be sad.
2) By *composition*, i. e., by the union of two or more words, or their roots; e. g., *bĕnĕvŏlens*, benevolent, well-wishing, from *bĕnĕ*, well, and *vŏlens*, wishing.

514. Nouns may be derived from other nouns, and from adjectives and verbs.

515. The endings, *lŭs*, *lă*, *lŭm*, added to the root of nouns, with a connecting vowel (sometimes *ĭ* or *ŏ*, but generally *u*, which sometimes takes *c* before it), form *diminutives*; e. g., *hortŭlŭs* (hortus), a little garden.

516. The masculine endings, *ĭdēs* (or *īdēs*), *ădēs*, and *iădēs*, and the feminine *ăs* and *ĭs*, added to the root of names of persons, form *patronymics* or *names of descent*; e. g., *Priămĭdēs* (Priamus), a son or descendant of Priam; *Tantălĭs* (Tantalus), daughter of Tantalus.

517. *Atŭs*, *ĭtās*, and *ūră*, added to the root of nouns, denote *office*, *rank*, or *body of men*; e. g., *consŭlātŭs* (consul), consulship; *cīvĭtās* (civis), state, body of citizens.

518. *Iŭm*, added to the root of nouns, denotes the *state* or *condition* of the objects expressed by the primitive; sometimes an *assemblage* of those objects; e. g., *servĭtiŭm* (servus), either servitude or domestics.

519. The endings, *ĭtās*, *iă*, *ĭtiă*, *ĭtūdŏ*, and *tūs* (gen.

tūtis), added to the root of adjectives, form *abstract* nouns; e. g., *bŏnĭtās* (bonus), goodness; *dīlĭgentiă* (diligens), diligence; *multĭtūdō* (multus), multitude; *virtūs* (vir), virtue, manliness.

520. The endings, *ă* and *ō*, added to the first root of verbs, and *ŏr* (fem. *rix*) to the third, denote the *agent* or *person who;* e. g., *scrībă* (scrībĕre), a scribe; *bĭbo* (bibĕre), a drunkard; *victŏr* (vincĕre), a conqueror.

521. *Or* and *iŭm*, added to the first root, and *iō*, *ŭs*, and *ūră* to the third, denote the *action* or *state* expressed by the verb; e. g., *păvŏr* (pavēre), fear; *gaudiŭm* (gaudēre), joy; *actiō* (agĕre, act), an action, &c.

522. *Idō* and *īgō*, added to the first root, denote the *abstract* of the primitive; e. g., *cŭpīdō* (cupĕre), desire.

523. *Mĕn* and *mentŭm*, added to the first root, denote the *thing done*, *that by which it is done*, or *that which does;* e. g., *tĕgmĕn* (tegĕre), a covering; *flūmĕn* (fluĕre), a stream, river.

524. *Um*, added to the third root, denotes the *action* of the verb, or the *means* or *result* of it; e. g., *tectŭm* (tegĕre), roof, covering; *scriptŭm* (scribĕre), a writing.

525. VOCABULARY.

Adjŭvārĕ, jūv, jūt, *to aid, help.*
Adventŭs, ūs (advenīre), *approach, arrival.*
Circumdărĕ, dĕd, dăt, *to surround.*
Cīvĭtās, ātis (civis), *state.*
Dīlĭgentiă, ae (diligens), *diligence.*
Fŭgārĕ, āv āt, *to put to flight.*
Hortŭlŭs, ī (hortus), *a little garden.*
Impĕrātŏr, ōrĭs (imperare), *commander.*
Multĭtūdō, ĭnĭs (multus), *multitude.*
Nuntiārĕ, āv, āt, *to announce, report.*
Pastŏr, ōrĭs (pascĕre), *shepherd.*
Sĕnātŭs, ūs (senex), *senate.*

526. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Hortŭli nostri multos flores habent. 2. Imperātor quam maxĭmas copias comparāvit. 3. Diligentia tua labōrem patris adjūvit. 4. Hic nuntius adventum tuum nuntiavĕrat. 5. Cicerōnem magna popŭli multitūdo circumdĕdit. 6. Pastor fugāvit lupum qui ovem unam momordĕrat.

(*b*) 1. Have you seen the shepherd's dog? 2. We went to see the boy's little garden. 3. Let them not come into the senate. 4. He has announced the arrival of the king. 5. Did you not announce the arrival of the leaders? 6. Caesar said that he would put to flight the forces of the enemy. 7. The commander has sent messengers to Rome. 8. The leaders will collect as large forces as possible. 9. The laws of the state have been violated by the commander.

LESSON LXXXVI.

Derivation of Adjectives.

527. ADJECTIVES may be derived from nouns and verbs.

528. The endings, *ālĭs*, *ārĭs*, *ĭcŭs*, *īlĭs*, and *iŭs*, added to the root of nouns = *of, belonging to, related to;* e. g., *rēgālĭs* (rex), regal; *pŏpŭlārĭs* (populus), popular; *cīvīlĭs* (civis), civil, &c.

529. *Aceŭs*, *iciŭs*, *eŭs*, and *inŭs*, denote the *material;* the first two sometimes *origin*, and the last two sometimes *similarity;* e. g., *pătrĭciŭs* (pater), patrician; *aureŭs* (aurum), golden, &c.

530. *Osus* and *lentus* (often with connecting vowel *u*), denote *fulness, abundance;* e. g., *ăquōsŭs* (aqua), watery; *lŭtŭlentŭs* (lutum), full of mud.

531. *Aeŭs, ānŭs* (*iānŭs*), *iensĭs*, and *īnŭs*, added to the root of proper names of places, denote *native of, occupant of;* e. g., *Rōmānŭs* (Roma), a Roman; *Athēniensĭs* (Athenae), an Athenian, &c.

532. *Arĭŭs* (generally used substantively), denotes *occupation*, sometimes *pertaining to;* e. g., *consĭlĭārĭŭs* (consilium), counselling, or a counsellor.

533. *Atŭs, ītŭs*, and *ūtŭs* = *furnished with*, &c.; e. g., *aurātŭs* (aurum), gilt; *turrītŭs* (turris), turreted, &c.

534. *Stŭs* = *being in, having in* one's self; e. g., *rōbustŭs* (robur), robust.

535. Adjectives may be derived from verbs by the use of the following endings:

1) *Ax* = *having a propensity* to perform the action of the verb; e. g., *ĕdax* (edĕre), voracious.
2) *Bundŭs* and *cundŭs* = the *strengthened* meaning of the present participle used adjectively; e. g., *mīrābundŭs* (mirāri), full of admiration, &c.
3) *Idŭs* (and sometimes *uŭs*) = the *quality* indicated by the verb; e. g., *algĭdus* (algēre), cold.
4) *Ilĭs* and *bĭlĭs* = *capable of being, easy to be;* e. g., *dŏcĭlĭs* (docēre), easy to be taught, docile; *crēdĭbĭlĭs* (credĕre), capable of being believed, credible.

536. VOCABULARY.

Anŭlŭs, ī, *a ring.*
Athēniensĭs, ĕ (Athēnae), *Athenian.*
Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĕ (Carthago), *Carthaginian.*
Cīvīlĭs, ĕ (civis), *civil.*
Fallax, ācĭs (fallĕre), *false, deceptive.*
Fabŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm (fabŭla), *fabulous.*

Gallĭcŭs, ă, ŭm (Gallia), *Gallic, pertaining to Gaul.*
Incrēdĭbĭlĭs, ĕ (in and credĕre), *incredible.*
Narrārĕ, āv, āt, *to relate.*
Narrātiō, ōnĭs (narrare), *narrative, story.*
Octō, *eight.*
Pŏpŭlārĭs, ĕ (pŏpŭlus), *popular.*
Sŏcrătēs, ĭs, *Socrates,* a celebrated Athenian philosopher
Spĕciōsŭs, ă, ŭm (species), *specious, plausible.*
Vincīrĕ, vinx, vinct, *to bind.*

537. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Haec narratio est fabulōsa. 2. Non sum tam imprūdens, ut verbis speciōsis decipiar. 3. Spe fallāci decepti estis; cavēte ne itĕrum decipiamĭni. 4. Quis credat illud quod incredibĭle est? 5. Caesar octo libris bellum Gallĭcum, tribus civīle narrāvit. 6. Athenienses Socrătis damnāti (506) pedem ferro vinxērunt.

(*b*) 1. Many have been deceived by false hopes. 2. Let us not be deceived by false words. 3. These narratives are incredible. 4. He has given his sister two gold rings. 5. The Romans waged many wars. 6. The Carthaginians were conquered by the Romans. 7. The Athenians condemned Socrates to death. 8. They cannot deceive the judge by specious words. 9. The senator wishes to be popular. 10. They are waging a civil war.

LESSON LXXXVII.

Derivation of Verbs and Adverbs.

538. Verbs may be derived from nouns and adjectives, and from other verbs.

539. Verbs derived from nouns and adjectives are generally called *denominatives.*

540. Transitive denominatives end in *ārĕ* (dep. ārī) or īrĕ; e. g., *cūrārĕ* (cura), to take care of; *fīnīrĕ* (finis), to finish.

541. Intransitive denominatives end in *ērĕ* or *scĕrĕ;* e. g., *flōrērĕ* (flos), to bloom; *mātūrescĕrĕ* (maturus), to become ripe.

REM.—The ending *scĕrĕ* is joined to the root by means of a connecting vowel; *e* is the connecting vowel in the above example.

542. Verbs derived from other verbs comprise four distinct classes, viz.: *frequentatives, inchoatives, desideratives,* and *diminutives.*

543. Frequentatives denote *repeated* or *continued* action, and are formed by the addition of *ārĕ* or *ĭtārĕ* to the third root, except in the first conjugation, where they add *itārĕ* to the first root; e. g., *hăbĭtārĕ* (habēre), to inhabit; *vŏlĭtārĕ* (volāre), to fly often, to flit.

544. Inchoatives denote the *beginning* or *increase* of an action, and are formed by the addition of *scĕrĕ* to the first root with a connecting vowel; e. g., *clārescĕrĕ* (clarēre), to grow bright, or clear.

545. Desideratives denote a *desire* to do the action of the primitive, and are formed by adding *ŭrīrĕ* to the third root; e g., *ēsŭrīrĕ* (edĕre), to desire to eat.

546. Diminutives denote a *feeble* action, and are formed by adding *illārĕ* to the first root; e. g., *cantillārĕ* (cantāre), to sing in a feeble voice.

547. Derivative adverbs generally take one of the following endings, viz.:

1) When derived from nouns, *tĭm, ĭtŭs;* e. g., *grĕgātĭm* (grex), in flocks; *fundĭtŭs* (fundus), from the foundation.
2) When derived from adjectives, *ē, ĕ, o, tĕr* (con-

necting vowel *i* except after *n*); e. g., *vērē* (verus), truly; *făcĭlĕ* (facilis), easily; *cĭtŏ* (citus), quickly; *fortĭtĕr* (fortis), bravely.

3) When derived from verbs, *ĭm* added to the third root; e. g., *stătĭm* (stare, stat), immediately.

548. Vocabulary.

Cantārĕ, av, at (canĕre), *to sing.*
Cūrārĕ, av, at (cura), *to take care of.*
Custōdīrĕ, īv, īt (custos), *to guard.*
Fīnīrĕ, īv, īt (finis), *to finish.*
Flōrescĕrĕ (flōrērĕ), *to begin to bloom.*
Fortĭtĕr (fortis), *bravely.*
Germānĭă, ae, *Germany.*
Hăbĭtārĕ, av, at (habēre), *to inhabit, dwell.*
Lūdŭs, ī, *play, sport,* pl. *games.*
Nuntiārĕ, av, at (nuntius), *to announce, report.*
Occultārĕ, av, at (occulĕre), *to hide, conceal.*
Prōvincĭă, ae (pro and vincĕre), *province.*
Pūgnārĕ, av, at (pugna), *to fight.*
Saevīrĕ, īv *or* i, īt (saevus), *to rage, to be cruel.*
Spectārĕ, av, at (spĕcĕrĕ), *to see, look at.*
Stătĭm (stare), *immediately.*
Tectŭm, ī (tegĕre), *a covering, roof, house.*
Vĭgĭlārĕ, av, at (vigil), *to watch, remain awake.*

549. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Labōrem nostrum finivĭmus. 2. Canes tecta nostra custodivērunt. 3. Bellum saevit per Germaniam. 4. Dormivistīne, an vigilâsti? 5. Puellae in horto cantābant. 6. Corpŏra nostra curaverāmus. 7. Puĕri ludos spectavērunt. 8. Arbŏres florescunt. 9. Hic ad summam gloriam florescēbat. 10. Decrevĭmus habitāre in provincia. 11. Consilia sua occultavērunt. 12. Si te vidĕrit, statim curret ad te.

(*b*) 1. Have they announced your arrival? 2. Who will announce the arrival of the king? 3. Caesar sent

very large forces to guard the city. 4. They have gone into the country to witness the games. 5. They have finished the war. 6. We wish to finish the work. 7. The enemy are said to have fought bravely. 8. The flowers are beginning to bloom in our garden. 9. Do you wish to live (dwell) in the city? 10. We wish to live in the country.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

Composition of Words.

550. Prepositions often enter into composition with other words, as prefixes.

Rem.—Many prepositions undergo no change of form on entering into composition, and merely impart to the simple word their own force. These, of course, require no special notice; others, however, present some peculiarities.

1) A, ăb, abs — *away from;* e. g., abstĭnērĕ (abs and tĕnērĕ), *to abstain from.* In substantives and adjectives, it denotes *privation;* e. g., *āmens* (ā and mens), without mind, mad.
2) Ad — *to* (*d* often assimilated before consonants, except *d*, *j*, *m*, and *v*); e. g., *accĭpĕrĕ* (ad and căpĕrĕ), to accept.
3) Cŏn (cŭm) — *with, together,* sometimes *completely* (*co* before *h* and *vowels; com* before *b*, *p*, and sometimes before a vowel; *n* assimilated before *l*, *m*, and *r*); e. g., *condūcĕrĕ* (con and dūcĕrĕ), to lead together, collect.
4) Dē — *from, down;* e. g., *dēdūcĕrĕ* (dē and dūcĕrĕ), to deduce. In substantives and adjectives, *privation;* e. g., *dēmens* (de and mens), mad.
5) E, ex — *out of, thoroughly* (*e* before liquids and *b*, *d*, *g*, and *v; ef* before *f*); e. g., *expugnāre* (ex and pugnāre), to vanquish, storm.
6) In — *into, on, against* (*im* before *b* and *p; i* before *gn; n* assimilated before *l*, *m*, and *r*); e. g., *incurrĕrĕ* (in and currĕrĕ),

to attack. In adjectives, *not;* e. g., *indĭgnŭs* (in and dignus), unworthy.

7) Ob — *against* (*b* assimilated before *c, f,* and usually *p*); e. g., *oppōnĕrĕ* (ob and ponĕrĕ), to place against, to oppose.

8) Prō — *for, forth* (*prod* before vowels); e. g., *prōpōnĕrĕ* (pro and ponĕre), to set forth, propose.

9) Sŭb — *under, from below, somewhat* (*b* assimilated before *c, f, g,* and sometimes *m, p,* and *r; sus* in a few words); e. g., *subjĭcĕrĕ* (sub and jacĕre), to throw under, to subject.

551. The inseparable prepositions, *amb,* around, about; *dĭs* or *dī,* asunder; *rĕ* (*rĕd* before vowels), back, again, away; *sē,* without, apart from; and *vē,* not, often occur as prefixes in compound words; e. g., *ámbīrĕ* (amb and ire), to go round; *dispōnĕrĕ* (dis and ponĕre), to put asunder, to distribute; *rĕdīrĕ* (red and ire), to return; *sēdūcĕrĕ* (se and ducĕre), to lead apart; *vēsānŭs* (ve and sanus), not sane, insane.

552. Adverbs are sometimes used as prefixes; e. g., *bĕnĕvŏlens* (bene and volens), benevolent; *mălĕvŏlens* (male and volens), wishing ill, malevolent.

553. Certain vowel-changes often take place in forming compound words; thus, *a, e* and *ae* are often changed into *i* (*a* sometimes into *e*); e. g., *accĭpĕrĕ* (ad and capĕre), *abstĭnērĕ* (abs and tenēre), *occīdĕrĕ* (ob and caedĕre).

REM. 1.—Having examined the prefixes, we pass to notice a few terminations of frequent occurrence in compound words.

REM. 2.—When the first part of a compound is a noun, the connecting vowel is generally short *i,* as in *ăgrĭcŏlă* (ager and colĕre), a husbandman.

554. From *făcĕrĕ,* to do, are derived, (1) *fex,* agent; e. g., *artĭfex* (ars and facĕre), an artist; (2) *fĭciŭm,* corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *artĭfĭciŭm,* an art; (3) *fĭcŭs,* he who does (*adjectively*); e. g., *bĕnĕfĭcŭs,* beneficent.

555. From *căpĕrĕ*, to take, are derived, (1) *ceps*, agent; e. g., *princeps* (primus and capĕre), one who takes the first (place), a prince, a leader; (2) *cĭpiŭm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *princĭpiŭm*, a beginning.

556. From *dīcĕrĕ*, to speak, are derived, (1) *dex*, agent, one who speaks: e. g., *index*, an informer; (2) *dĭciŭm*, corresponding substantive of thing; e. g., *indĭciŭm*, a disclosure; (3) *dĭcŭs* (*adj.*), speaking; e. g., *mălĕdĭcŭs*, slanderous.

557. From *cănĕrĕ*, to sing; *cĕn*, agent; e. g., *tŭbĭcĕn* (tuba and canĕre), a trumpeter.

558. From *vellĕ*, to wish; *vŏlens* and *vŏlŭs* (*adj.*), wishing; e. g., *bĕnĕvŏlens* and *bĕnĕvŏlŭs* (bene and velle), benevolent.

559. From *ferrĕ* and *gĕrĕrĕ*, to bear; *fĕr* and *gĕr*, one who bears; e. g., *Lūcĭfĕr* (lux and ferre), Venus as morning star, the bearer of light; *armĭgĕr* (arma and gerĕre), armor-bearer.

560. From *cŏlĕrĕ*, to cultivate; *cŏlă*, one who cultivates, or dwells in; e. g., *ăgrĭcŏlă* (ager and colĕre), a field-tiller, a husbandman.

561. VOCABULARY.

Addūcĕrĕ, dux, duct (ad and ducĕre), *to bring to.*

Attingĕrĕ, tĭg, tact (ad and tangĕre), *to reach, attain.*

Condĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt (con and dare), *to found.*

Convĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent (con and venīre), *to assemble, convene.*

Expūgnārĕ, āv, āt (ex and pugnāre), *to take by storm.*

Incertŭs, ă, ŭm (in and certus), *uncertain.*

Incŏlă, ae, *m.* & *f.* (in and colĕre), *an inhabitant.*

Invādĕrĕ, vās, vās (in and vadĕre), *to go against, invade.*

Ităliă, ae, *Italy.*

Obsĕs, ĭdĭs, *m.* & *f.*, *hostage.*

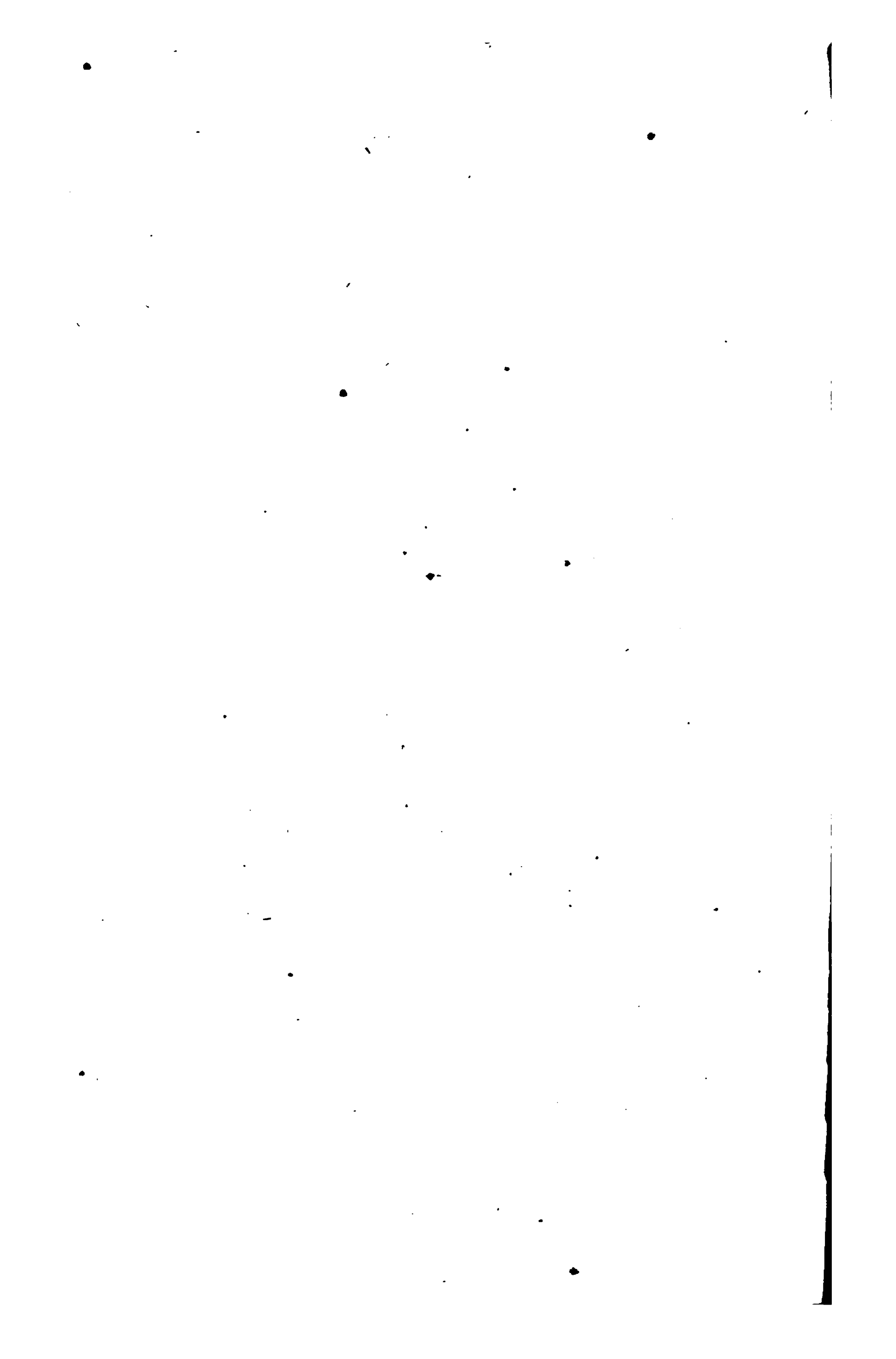
Occĭdĕrĕ, cĭd, cās (ob and cadĕre), *to fall, set.*

Occīdĕrĕ, cīd, cīs (ob and caedĕre), *to kill.*
Phĭlŏsŏphŭs, ī, *philosopher.*
Possīdĕrĕ, ēd, ess, *to possess.*
Princeps, ĭpĭs (primus and capĕre), *the first, a leader, chief.*
Vērŭm, ī, *truth.*

562. *Exercises.*

(*a*) 1. Multi philosŏphi verum non attigērunt. 2. Rex portas urbis clausit hostĭbus invadentĭbus. 3. Has terras possidēmus; illas expugnabĭmus. 4. Galli Romam expugnavērunt. 5. Sol post montes illos in mare occĭdit. 6. Hic unus miles duos aut tres occīdit. 7. Incŏlae ad eum legātos misērunt. 8. Caesar omnem senātum ad se convenīre, principumque libĕros obsĭdes ad se addūci jussit. 9. Incertum est quo tempŏre Dido Carthagĭnem condidĕrit.

(*b*) 1. The commander will collect large forces and invade Italy. 2. After having waged war for many years, they took the city by storm. 3. Caesar had ordered all the inhabitants to assemble in his presence. 4. Let us put the invading enemy to flight. 5. Romulus is said to have founded Rome. 6. It is uncertain at what time Carthage was founded. 7. I do not know at what time he returned home. 8. They say that Caius was killed in the first battle.



PARADIGMS.

Nouns.—Five Declensions.

563. Endings of the Genitive Singular.

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV	Dec. V.
ae,	ī,	ĭs,	ūs	ēī.*

Rem.—Some Greek nouns are exceptions.

564. Gender in Latin is,

1) Natural, when determined by sex, as in English; as, *hŏmŏ*, a man, *masc.*; *mŭlĭĕr*, a woman, *fem.*
2) *Grammatical*, when not determined by sex; as, *sermŏ*, a discourse, *masc.*; *laurŭs*, a laurel, *fem.*

565. Natural Gender.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

566. The grammatical gender of nouns is determined partly by their signification, but principally by their endings.

567. Grammatical Gender, when not determined by nom. ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns and clauses used as nouns.

Rem.—Grammatical gender, as determined by the endings of nouns, will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

568. *First Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ae*.
2. Nominative endings: Latin *a*; Greek *e*, *as*, and *es*.
3. Grammatical gender: *a* and *e*, fem.; *as* and *es*, masc.

Rem.—Cases coming under previous rules (565 and 567) are, of course, excepted.

---

* In this ending *e* is long, except in spĕī, fĭdĕī, and rĕī.

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ă,	ae,	ae,	ăm,	ă,	ā.
Plur.	ae,	ārŭm,	īs,	ās,	ae,	īs.

REM.—The declension of Greek nouns presents some exceptions.

5. Paradigms.

1. Mūsă, *a muse.*

	Sing.	Plur.
N.	Mūs-ă,	Mūs-ae.
G.	Mūs-ae,	Mūs-ārŭm.
D.	Mūs-ae,	Mūs-īs.
A.	Mūs-ăm,	Mūs-ās.
V.	Mūs-ă,	Mūs-ae.
A.	Mūs-ā,	Mūs-īs.

2. Epitome, *an abridgment.*

	Sing.	Plur.
N.	Epĭtŏm-ē,	Epĭtŏm-ae.
G.	Epĭtŏm-ēs,	Epĭtŏm-ārŭm.
D.	Epĭtŏm-ae,	Epĭtŏm-īs.
A.	Epĭtŏm-ēn,	Epĭtŏm-ās.
V	Epĭtŏm-ē,	Epĭtŏm-ae.
A.	Epĭtŏm-ē,	Epĭtŏm-īs.

3. Aenēas (*a man's name*).

N. Aenē-ās.
G. Aenē-ae.
D. Aenē-ae.
A. Aenē-ām (ān).
V. Aenē-ā.
A. Aenē-ā.

4. Anchīsēs (*a man's name*).

N. Anchīs-ēs.
G. Anchīs-ae.
D. Anchīs-ae.
A. Anchīs-ēn.
V. Anchīs-ē (ā).
A. Anchīs-ē (ā).

569. *Second Declension.*

1. Characteristic ŏ.

2. Nominative endings: Latin, *er*, *ir*, *us*, *um*; Greek, *os* and *on*.

3. Grammatical gender: *um* and *on*, neut.; the rest masculine, except,

1) Alvŭs, dŏmŭs, hŭmŭs, and vannŭs, which are *feminine*; pĕlă-gŭs and vīrŭs, *neuter*; and vulgŭs, generally *neuter*, but sometimes masculine.

2) Such as come under previous rules.

4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	Nom. end.	ī,	ō,	ŭm,	ĕ (or like nom.),	ō,
Plur.	ī (*neut.* ă),	ōrŭm,	īs,	ōs (*neut.* ă),	ī (*neut* ă),	īs.

REM.—A few Greek nouns are exceptions.

5. Paradigms.

Servŭs, *slave.*	Rĕgnŭm, *kingdom.*	Gĕnĕr, *son-in-law.*	Agĕr, *field.*
		SINGULAR.	
Serv-ŭs.	Rĕgn-ŭm.	Gĕnĕr.	Agĕr.
Serv-ī.	Rĕgn-ī.	Gĕnĕr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ō.	Rĕgn-ō.	Gĕnĕr-ō.	Agr-ō.
Serv-ŭm.	Rĕgn-ŭm.	Gĕnĕr-ŭm.	Agr-ŭm.
Serv-ĕ.	Rĕgn-ŭm.	Gĕnĕr.	Agĕr.
Serv-ō.	Rĕgn-ō.	Gĕnĕr-ō.	Agr-ō.
		PLURAL.	
Serv-ī.	Rĕgn-ă.	Gĕnĕr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-ōrŭm.	Rĕgn-ōrŭm.	Gĕnĕr-ōrŭm.	Agr-ōrŭm.
Serv-īs.	Rĕgn-īs.	Gĕnĕr-īs.	Agr-īs.
Serv-ōs.	Rĕgn-ă.	Gĕnĕr-ōs.	Agr-ōs.
Serv-ī.	Rĕgn-ă.	Gĕnĕr-ī.	Agr-ī.
Serv-īs.	Rĕgn-īs.	Gĕnĕr-īs.	Agr-īs.

REM.—Vĭr, *a man*, is declined like *gĕnĕr*.

6. Paradigms of Greek nouns.

1. Iliŏn, *n.* (*name of a city*).	2. Dēlŏs, *f.* (*name of an island*).
N. Ili-ŏn.	N. Dēl-ŏs.
G. Ili-ī.	G. Dēl-ī.
D. Ili-ō.	D. Dēl-ō.
A. Ili-ŏn.	A. Dēl-ŏn.
V. Ili-ŏn.	V. Dēl-ĕ.
A. Ili-ō.	A. Dēl-ō.

570. *Third Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ĭs.*
2. Nominative endings: *a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.*
3. Table of gender in the third declension.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
er, or, os, es *increasing in gen. and* o, *except do, go,* and *io.*	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s *impure,* es *not increasing in gen. and* x.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, *and* us.

For exceptions, see 579.

4. Classification of nouns of the third declension, according to the formation of root from nominative ending.

Class I.	Class II.	Class III.	Class. IV.
Root like Nom.	Root adds a letter.	Root drops nom. ending.	Root changes nom ending.

5. **Masculine and feminine case-endings.**

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	..	ĭs,	ī,	ĕm, (īm),	..	ĕ (ī),
Plur.	ēs,	ŭm (iŭm),	ĭbŭs,	ēs,	ēs,	ĭbŭs.

REM. 1.—The inclosed endings *īm* and *ī* belong only to a few words.

REM. 2.—The ending *iŭm* of the genitive plural occurs in the following classes of nouns; viz.,

1) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*; as, *mărĕ*, *mărĭŭm*; *ănĭmăl*, *ănĭmălĭŭm*.
2) Nouns in *is* and *es* of Class III.; as, *hostis*, *hostiŭm*; *nūbēs*, *nūbiŭm*.
3) All monosyllables in *s* or *x* preceded by a consonant; as, *urbs*, *urbiŭm*; *arx*, *arciŭm*.
4) Nouns in *ns* and *rs* (though in these *ŭm* is sometimes used); as, *cliens*, *clientiŭm*; *cohors*, *cohortiŭm*.

6. **Neuter case-endings.**

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	..	ĭs,	ī,	..	..	ĕ (ī),
Plur.	ă (iă),	ŭm (iŭm),	ĭbŭs,	ă (iă),	ă (iă),	ĭbŭs.

REM.—The inclosed endings belong to neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*.

571. CLASS I. comprises nouns in *c*,* *l*, *n*, *r*, *t*, and *y*. These either have the root the same as the nominative singular, or form it (with a few exceptions) by one of the following slight vowel-changes:

1) Nouns in *tĕr* and *bĕr* generally drop *e* in the root: as, *pătĕr*, a father; root, *patr*.
2) Nouns in *ĕn* generally change *ĕ* into *ĭ* in the root; as, *flūmĕn*, a river; root, *flūmĭn*.
3) Nouns in *ŭt* change *ŭ* into *ĭ* in the root; as, *căpŭt*, a head; root, *căpĭt*.

REM.—The quantity of the radical vowel is sometimes changed; this is the case in most nouns in *ăl* and *ŏr*, which generally lengthen the vowel in the root.

572. CLASS II. comprises nouns of the third declension in *a*, *o*, and a few in *i*. These form the root by adding a letter to the nominative singular.

1) Nouns in *a*, and a few in *i*, add *t*; as, *poēmă*, a poem; root, *poēmăt*: *hydrŏmĕlĭ*, mead; root, *hydrŏmĕlĭt*.
2) Nouns in *o* add *n*; as, *leŏ*, a lion; root, *leōn*.

REM. 1.—*O* is long in the root.

REM. 2.—Nouns in *do* and *go* change *o* into *ĭ*, before *n* in the root; as, *virgo*, a virgin; root, *virgĭn*.

---

* There are only two nouns of this ending, one of which belongs to Class II.

573. Class III. comprises nouns of the third declension in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *is*, *ys*, *e*, a few in *i*,* and a few in *es*. They form the root by dropping the nominative ending.

1) Nouns in *bs*, *ms*, *ps*, and *ys*, drop *s*; as, *urbs*, a city; root, *urb*; *hiems*, winter; root, *hiĕm*.
2) Nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*) drop the *s* in *x*; as, *vox* (*cs*), a voice; root, *vōc*; *rex* (*gs*), a king; root, *rēg*.
3) Nouns in *is*, *e*, and a few in *es*, drop those endings; as, *hostĭs*, an enemy; root, *host*: *nūbēs*, a cloud; root, *nūb*: *mărĕ*, a sea; root, *măr*.

574. Class IV. comprises nouns of the third declension in *as*, *os*, *us*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*. These form the root by changing *s* into *r*, *t*, or *d*.

1) Nouns in *as*, *ls*, *ns*, *rs*, and most of those in *es*, *generally* change *s* into *t*; as, *piĕtās*, piety; root, *piĕtāt*: *mons*, a mountain; root, *mont*: *ăbiēs*, a fir-tree; root, *ăbiĕt*: *mīlĕs*, a soldier; root, *mīlĭt*. (See Rem. 2, below.)

Rem. 1.—Masculines in *as*, of Greek origin, insert *n* before *t* in the root; as, *ĕlĕphās*, an elephant; root, *ĕlĕphant*.

Rem. 2.—Many nouns in *es* change *e* into *i*, before *t*, in the root; as, *mīlĕs*; root, *mīlĭt*.

2) Nouns in *os* and *us* generally change *s* into *r* or *t*; as, *flōs*, a flower; root, *flōr*: *săcerdōs*, a priest; root, *săcerdōt*: *virtūs*, virtue; root, *virtūt*: *gĕnŭs*, a kind; root, *gĕnĕr*: *tempŭs*, time; root, *tempŏr*.

Rem.—Most nouns in *us* change *s* into *r*, and *u* of the nominative becomes *ĕ* or *ŏ* in the root, as in these examples.

575. Paradigms.

Mŭlĭĕr, *f.*, *a woman.* (root, *same as nom.* [126].)

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	Mŭlĭĕr,	Mŭlĭĕr-ēs.
G.	Mŭlĭĕr-ĭs,	Mŭlĭĕr-ŭm.
D.	Mŭlĭĕr-ī,	Mŭlĭĕr-ĭbŭs.
A.	Mŭlĭĕr-ĕm,	Mŭlĭĕr-ēs.
V.	Mŭlĭĕr,	Mŭlĭĕr-ēs.
A.	Mŭlĭĕr-ĕ,	Mŭlĭĕr-ĭbŭs.

Virgō, *f.*, *a virgin.* (root, *virgin* [131, 2. Rem. 2].)

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	Virgō,	Virgĭn-ēs.
G.	Virgĭn-ĭs,	Virgĭn-ŭm.
D.	Virgĭn-ī,	Virgĭn-ĭbŭs.
A.	Virgĭn-ĕm,	Virgĭn-ēs.
V.	Virgō,	Virgĭn-ēs.
A.	Virgĭn-ĕ,	Virgĭn-ĭbŭs.

* Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin: most of these are indeclinable; a few form the root by dropping *i*, and a few by adding *t* (572, 1).

Rex (gs), *m.*, *a king.*
(root, *rĕg* [134, 2].)

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	Rex,	Rēg-ēs.
G.	Rēg-ĭs,	Rēg-ŭm.
D.	Rēg-ī,	Rēg-ĭbŭs.
A.	Rēg-ĕm,	Rēg-ēs.
V.	Rex,	Rēg-ēs.
A.	Rēg-ĕ,	Rēg-ĭbŭs.

Corpŭs, *n.*, *a body.*
(root, *corpŏr* [137, 2].)

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ă.
G.	Corpŏr-ĭs,	Corpŏr-ŭm.
D.	Corpŏr-ī,	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs.
A.	Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ă.
V.	Corpŭs,	Corpŏr-ă.
A.	Corpŏr-ĕ,	Corpŏr-ĭbŭs

GREEK NOUNS.

Pĕrĭclēs (*a man's name*).

N.	Pĕrĭcl-ēs.
G.	Pĕrĭcl-ĭs.
D.	Pĕrĭcl-ī.
A.	Pĕrĭcl-ĕm (eă).
V.	Pĕrĭcl-ēs (ē).
A.	Pĕrĭcl-ĕ.

Hērōs, *a hero.*

	Singular.	Plural.
N.	Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
G.	Hērō-ĭs,	Hērō-ŭm.
D.	Hērō-ī,	Hērō-ĭbŭs.
A.	Hērō-ĕm (ă),	Hērō-ēs (ăs).
V.	Hērō-s,	Hērō-ēs.
A.	Hērō-ĕ,	Hērō-ĭbŭs.

576. *Fourth Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ŭs.*
2. Nominative endings: *us* and *u.*
3. Grammatical Gender: *u*, neuter; *us*, masculine; except

Acŭs, a needle; *dŏmŭs*, a house; *mănŭs*, a hand; *īdŭs*, the ides; *portĭcŭs*, a gallery; *trĭbŭs*, a tribe; which are feminine.

4. Masculine and feminine case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ŭs,	ūs,	uī,	ŭm,	ŭs,	ū.
Plur.	ūs,	uŭm,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*),	ūs,	ūs,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*).

5. Neuter case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ū,	ūs,	ū,	ū,	ū,	ū.
Plur.	uă,	uŭm,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*),	uă,	uă,	ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs*).

* This ending is used only in a few words.

6. Paradigms.

Fructŭs, *m.*, *fruit.* (root, *fruct.*)			Cornū, *n.*, *a horn.* (root, *corn.*)		
	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
N.	Fruct-ŭs,	Fruct-ūs.	N.	Corn-ū,	Corn-uă.
G.	Fruct-ūs,	Fruct-uŭm.	G.	Corn-ūs,	Corn-uŭm.
D.	Fruct-uī,	Fruct-ĭbŭs.	D.	Corn-ū,	Corn-ĭbŭs.
A.	Fruct-ŭm,	Fruct-ūs.	A.	Corn-ū,	Corn-uă.
V.	Fruct-ŭs,	Fruct-ūs.	V.	Corn-ū,	Corn-uă.
A.	Fruct-ū,	Fruct-ĭbŭs.	A.	Corn-ū,	Corn-ĭbŭs.

577. *Fifth Declension.*

1. Characteristic *ē.**
2. Nominative ending: *es.*
3. Grammatical gender *feminine*, except *diēs*, a day (*m.* and *f.* in singular, and *m.* in plural), and *mĕrīdiēs*, mid-day (*masc.*).
4. Case-endings.

	Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Accus.	Voc.	Abl.
Sing.	ēs,	ēī,*	ēī,*	ĕm,	ēs,	ē.
Plur.	ēs,	ērŭm,	ēbŭs,	ēs,	ēs,	ēbŭs.

5. Paradigms.

Rēs, *f.*, *a thing.* (root, *r.*)			Diēs, *m.* and *f.*, *a day.* (root, *di.*)		
	Singular.	Plural.		Singular.	Plural.
N.	R-ēs,	R-ēs.	N.	Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
G.	R-ĕī,	R-ērŭm.	G.	Di-ēī,	Di-ērŭm.
D.	R-ĕī,	R-ēbŭs.	D.	Di-ēī,	Di-ēbŭs.
A.	R-ĕm,	R-ēs.	A.	Di-ĕm,	Di-ēs.
V.	R-ēs,	R-ēs.	V.	Di-ēs,	Di-ēs.
A.	R-ē,	R-ēbŭs.	A.	Di-ē,	Di-ēbŭs.

578. *Case-endings of Substantives.*

SINGULAR.

	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.
	F.	*M.*	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*N.*	*F.*
N.	ă.	ŭs, ĕr, ĭr,	ŭm.	various.		ŭs.	ū.	ēs.
G.	ae.	ī.		ĭs.		ūs.		ēī.*
D.	ae.	ō.		ī.		uī.	ū.	ēī.*
A.	ăm.	ŭm.		ĕm (ĭm),	like nom.	ŭm.	ū.	ĕm.
V.	ă.	ĕ, ĕr, ĭr,	ŭm.	like nom.		ŭs.	ū.	ēs.
A.	ā.	ō.		ĕ (ī).		ū.		ē.

* In the ending of the gen. and dat. sing. *e* is long, except in *spĕi* (where it is short), *fidei*, and *rei* (where it is common).

PLURAL.

	Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		Dec. V.
	F.	*M.*	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*N.*	*F.*
N.	ae.	ī.	ă.	ēs.	ă *or* iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.
G.	ārŭm.	ōrŭm.		ŭm (iŭm).		uŭm.		ērŭm.
D.	īs.	īs.		ĭbŭs.		ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs).		ēbŭs.
A.	ās	ōs.	ă.	ēs.	ă *or* iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.
V.	ae	ī.	ă.	ēs.	ă *or* iă.	ūs.	uă.	ēs.
A.	īs.	īs.		ĭbŭs.		ĭbŭs (ŭbŭs).		ēbŭs.

Rem.—The above table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

579. *Table of Genders.*

I. Natural Gender.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Common.
Names of males.	Names of females.	Names applicable to both sexes.

II. Grammatical Gender, independent of nominative ending.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Most names of rivers, winds, and months.	Most names of countries, towns, islands, and trees.	Indeclinable nouns, and clauses used as nouns.

III. Grammatical Gender, as determined by nominative ending.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Dec. I.	as, es.	a, e.	
Dec. II.	er, us, os.*		um, on.
Dec. III.	er, or, os, es, *increasing in gen.*, o *except* do, go, and io.	do, go, io, as, is, ys, aus, s *impure*, x, es *not increasing in gen.*	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
Dec. IV.	us.		u.
Dec. V.		es.	

Principal Exceptions.†

SECOND DECLENSION.

Alvŭs, dŏmŭs, hŭmŭs, and vannŭs, are *feminine;* pĕlăgŭs and vīrŭs, *neuter;* vulgŭs, generally *neuter*, sometimes *masculine.*

---

* Nouns in *ir* have natural gender.

† This list of exceptions contains some whose gender is not grammatical. They are given here for convenience of reference.

THIRD DECLENSION.

1) MASCULINES.

(*do* and *go.*) Cardŏ, cŏmĕdŏ, harpăgŏ, ordŏ, ūnĕdŏ, lĭgŏ, *and* margŏ (the last sometimes *fem.*).

(*as.*) As and Greek nouns in *as* (gen. *antis*).

(*is.*) Amnĭs, anguĭs, axĭs, cassĭs, cĭnĭs (or *f.*), collĭs, crīnĭs, ensĭs, fascĭs, fīnĭs (or *f.*), follĭs, fūnĭs, ignĭs, lăpĭs, mensĭs, orbĭs, pānĭs, piscĭs, postĭs, pulvĭs, sanguĭs, torrĭs, unguĭs, vectĭs, *and* vermĭs.

(*s impure.*) Adeps, dens, fons, forceps (or *f.*), mons, pons, quadrans, *and* rŭdens.

(*x.*) Călix, cōdex, cortex, grex, pollex, thōrax, *and* vertex.

(*l.*) Săl *and* sōl.

(*n.*) Liēn, pectĕn, rēn, and many words of Greek origin.

(*ur.*) Furfŭr, turtŭr, *and* vultŭr.

(*us.*) Lĕpŭs *and* mūs.

2) FEMININES.

(*or* and *os.*) Arbŏr, cōs, *and* dōs.

(*es increasing.*) Compēs, mercēs, mergĕs, quiēs, rĕquiēs, sĕgĕs, *and* tĕgĕs.

(*o.*) Cărŏ, ēchō, *and* Argō.

(*us.*) Grŭs (*m.*), incūs, jŭventūs, pălūs, pĕcŭs (ŭdĭs), sălūs, sĕnectūs, servĭtūs, sūs (*m.*), tellūs, *and* virtūs.

3) NEUTERS.

(*er.*) Cădāvĕr, ĭtĕr, tūbĕr, ūbĕr, vēr, verbĕr, and names of plants in *er.*

(*or.*) Adŏr, aequŏr, cŏr, *and* marmŏr.

(*as* and *es.*) Fās, nĕfās, vās, *and* aes.

(*os.*) Os (ōrĭs), ŏs (ossĭs), and the Greek words, *chaŏs, ĕpŏs, ēthŏs,* and *mĕlŏs.*

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Acŭs, īdŭs, mănŭs, portĭcŭs, and trĭbŭs, are feminine.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Diēs and mĕrīdiēs are masculine, though the former is sometimes *fem.* in *sing.*

580. *Adjectives.—First and second Declension.*

1. Case-endings of adjectives of the first and second declension.

	Singular.			Plural.			A few‡ have Sing. thus:		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
	2.*	1.	2.	2.	1.	2.			
N.	ŭs, ĕr,†	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ŭs, ĕr,	ă,	ŭm.
G.	ī,	ae,	ī.	ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.	īŭs,	īŭs,	īŭs.
D.	ō,	ae,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ī,	ī,	ī.
A.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.	ōs,	ās,	ă.	ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm.
V.	ĕ, ĕr,†	ă,	ŭm.	ī,	ae,	ă.	ĕ, ĕr,	ă,	ŭm.
A.	ō,	ā,	ō.	īs,	īs,	īs.	ō,	ā,	ō.

2. Paradigms.

Bŏnŭs, *good.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Bŏn-ŭs,	ă,	ŭm;	Bŏn-ī,	ae,	ă.
G.	Bon-ī,	ae,	ī;	Bŏn-ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.
D.	Bon-ō,	ae,	ō;	Bŏn-īs,	īs,	īs.
A.	Bon-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm;	Bŏn-ōs,	ās,	ă.
V.	Bon-ĕ,	ă,	ŭm;	Bŏn-ī,	ae,	ă.
A.	Bon-ō,	ā,	ō;	Bŏn-īs,	īs,	īs.

Tĕnĕr, *tender:* root, *tĕnĕr* (*e* not dropped).

	Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Tĕnĕr,	ă,	ŭm;	Tĕnĕr-ī,	ae,	ă.
G.	Tĕnĕr-ī,	ae,	ī;	Tĕnĕr-ōrŭm,	ārŭm,	ōrŭm.
D.	Tĕnĕr-ō,	ae,	ō;	Tĕnĕr-īs,	īs,	īs.
A.	Tĕnĕr-ŭm,	ăm,	ŭm;	Tĕnĕr-ōs,	ās,	ă.
V.	Tĕnĕr,	ă,	ŭm;	Tĕnĕr-ī,	ae,	ă.
A.	Tĕnĕr-ō,	ā,	ō;	Tĕnĕr-īs,	īs,	īs.

REM. 1.—Most adjectives in *ĕr* drop *ĕ* before *r* of the *root* in all genders.

REM. 2.—The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *īŭs* (the *ĭ* is generally short in *alterius*), and the dative singular in *ī* in all genders, viz.: *ălĭŭs*, another; *nullŭs*, no one; *sōlŭs*, alone; *tōtŭs*, the whole; *ullŭs*, any; *ūnŭs*, one; *altĕr*, the other; *neutĕr*, neither; and *ŭtĕr*, which (of the two).

581. *Adjectives of the Third Declension.*

1. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes, viz.:

---

* The declensions of the different genders are here indicated by numerals.

† In adjectives in *ĕr*, the *masc. nom. sing.* is generally the root (*ĕ* is sometimes dropped): *ĕr*, therefore, is not properly a *case-ending;* it is given merely to show the termination of the *nom.* and *voc. sing.*, without regard to the root (107).

‡ See list, 113, REM.

1) Those which have three different forms in the nominative singular (one for each gender).
2) Those which have two (the *masc.* and *fem.* being the same).
3) Those which have but one (the same for all genders).

2. Adjectives of the third declension are declined in their several genders like nouns of the same *declension*, *gender*, and *ending*. It must, however, be observed,

1) That those which have only one form in the nominative singular have the abl. sing. in ĕ or ī, and the rest, with the exception of comparatives, in ī only.
2) That all except comparatives have, in the *plural*, the *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* *neuter* in *iă*, and the *genitive* in *iŭm*.

3. Paradigms.

CLASS I.

Acĕr, *sharp*.

	Singular.				Plural.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*		*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Acĕr,	ācr-ĭs,	ācr-ĕ.	N.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iă.
G.	Acr-ĭs,	ācr-ĭs,	ācr-ĭs.	G.	Acr-iŭm,	ācr-iŭm,	ācr-iŭm.
D.	Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.	D.	Acr-ĭbŭs,	ācr-ĭbŭs,	ācr-ĭbŭs.
A.	Acr-ĕm,	ācr-ĕm,	ācr-ĕ.	A.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iă.
V.	Acĕr,	ācr-ĭs,	ācr-ĕ.	V.	Acr-ēs,	ācr-ēs,	ācr-iă.
A.	Acr-ī,	ācr-ī,	ācr-ī.	A.	Acr-ĭbŭs,	ācr-ĭbŭs,	ācr-ĭbŭs.

CLASS II.

1. Tristĭs, *sad*.

	Singular.			Plural.	
	M. & F.	*N.*		*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	Trist-ĭs	trist-ĕ.	N.	Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
G.	Trist-ĭs,	trist-ĭs.	G.	Trist-iŭm,	trist-iŭm.
D.	Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	D.	Trist-ĭbŭs,	trist-ĭbŭs.
A.	Trist-ĕm,	trist-ĕ.	A.	Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
V.	Trist-ĭs,	trist-ĕ.	V.	Trist-ēs,	trist-iă.
A.	Trist-ī,	trist-ī.	A.	Trist-ĭbŭs,	trist-ĭbŭs.

2. Tristiŏr (*comparative*), *more sad*.

N.	Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	N.	Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ă.
G.	Tristiōr-ĭs,	tristiōr-ĭs.	G.	Tristiōr-ŭm,	tristiōr-ŭm.
D.	Tristiōr-ī,	tristiōr-ī.	D.	Tristiōr-ĭbŭs,	tristiōr-ĭbŭs.
A.	Tristiōr-ĕm,	tristiŭs.	A.	Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ă.
V.	Tristiŏr,	tristiŭs.	V.	Tristiōr-ēs,	tristiōr-ă.
A.	Tristiōr-ĕ (ī),	tristiōr-ĕ (ī).	A.	Tristiōr-ĭbŭs,	tristiōr-ĭbŭs.

CLASS III.

Fēlix, *happy*.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	M. & F.	*N.*	*M. & F.*	*N.*
N.	Fēlix,	fēlix.	Fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīc-iă.
G.	Fēlīc-ĭs,	fēlīc-ĭs.	Fēlīc-iŭm,	fēlīc-iŭm.
D.	Fēlīc-ī,	fēlīc-ī.	Fēlīc-ĭbŭs.	fēlīc-ĭbŭs.
A.	Fēlīc-ĕm,	fēlix.	Fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīc-iă.
V.	Fēlix,	fēlix.	Fēlīc-ēs,	fēlīc-iă.
A.	Fēlīc-ĕ (ī),	fēlīc-ĕ (ī).	Fēlīc-ĭbŭs,	fēlīc-ĭbŭs.

582. *Comparison of Adjectives.*

In Latin, adjectives are compared by adding to the root of the positive the following endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
iŏr,	iŏr,	iŭs.	issĭmŭs,	issĭmă,	issĭmŭm.

Examples.	Root.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Altŭs (*high*),	alt.	altiŏr (iŏr, iŭs),	altissĭmŭs (ă, ŭm).
Mītĭs (*mild*),	mīt.	mītiŏr (iŏr, iŭs),	mītissĭmŭs (ă, ŭm).

REM. 1.—Adjectives in *ĕr* add *rĭmŭs* (ă, ŭm) to the positive, to form the superlative; e. g.,

Pulchĕr, pulchriŏr, pulcherrĭmŭs.

REM. 2.—A few adjectives in *lĭs* form the superlative by adding *ĭmŭs* to the root of the positive; e. g.,

Făcĭlĭs (*easy*),	făcĭliŏr,	făcillĭmŭs.
Diffĭcĭlĭs (*difficult*),	diffĭcĭliŏr,	diffĭcillĭmŭs.
Sĭmĭlĭs (*like*),	sĭmĭliŏr,	sĭmillĭmŭs.
Dissĭmĭlĭs (*unlike*),	dissĭmĭliŏr,	dissĭmillĭmŭs.

REM. 3.—The following adjectives are quite irregular in their comparison, viz.:

Bŏnŭs (*good*),	mĕliŏr,	optĭmŭs.
Mălŭs (*bad*),	pejŏr,	pessĭmŭs.
Măgnŭs (*great*),	majŏr,	maxĭmŭs.
Parvŭs (*little*),	mĭnŏr,	mĭnĭmŭs,
Multŭs (*much*),	plūs (pl. plūrēs, plūră),	plūrĭmŭs.

583. *Numerals.**

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.	Adverbs.
1	Unŭs, *one*	Prīmŭs, *first.*	Singŭlī, *one by one.*	Sĕmĕl, *once.*
2	Duŏ.	Sĕcundŭs.	Bīnī.	Bĭs.
3	Trēs.	Tertiŭs.	Ternī.	Tĕr.

* See Numerals, p. 145.

4	Quătuŏr.	Quartŭs.	Quăternī.	Quătĕr.
5	Quinquĕ.	Quintŭs.	Quīnī.	Quinquiēs.
6	Sex.	Sextŭs.	Sēnī.	Sexiēs.
7	Septĕm.	Septĭmŭs.	Septēnī.	Septiēs.
8	Octŏ.	Octāvŭs.	Octōnī.	Octiēs.
9	Nŏvĕm.	Nōnŭs.	Nŏvēnī.	Nŏviēs.
10	Dĕcĕm.	Dĕcĭmŭs.	Dēnī.	Dĕciēs.

584. *Substantive Pronouns*

SINGULAR.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
N.	Egŏ, *I.*	Tū, *thou.*	
G.	Meī, *of me.*	Tuī, *of thee.*	Suī, *of himself, herself, itself.*
D.	Mihĭ, *to* or *for me.*	Tĭbĭ, *to* or *for thee.*	Sĭbĭ, *to himself,* &c.
A.	Mē, *me.*	Tē, *thee.*	Sē, *himself.*
V.		Tū, *O thou.*	
A.	Mē, *with,* &c., *me.*	Tē, *with thee.*	Sē, *with himself.*

PLURAL.

N.	Nōs *we.*	Vōs, *ye* or *you.*	
G.	Nostrŭm, or Nostrī, *of us.*	Vestrŭm or Vestrī, *of you.*	Suī, *of themselves.*
D.	Nōbīs, *to us.*	Vōbīs, *to you.*	Sĭbĭ, *to themselves.*
A.	Nōs, *us.*	Vōs, *you.*	Sē, *themselves.*
V.		Vōs, *O ye* or *you.*	
A.	Nōbīs, *with us.*	Vōbīs, *with you.*	Sē, *with themselves.*

585. *Adjective Pronouns.*

I. The *Possessive Pronouns* (so called because they denote possession), *mĕŭs, meă, meŭm; tuŭs, tuă, tuŭm; suŭs, suă, suŭm; nostĕr, nostră, nostrŭm; vestĕr, vestră, vestrŭm,* are declined, as we have already seen (114, Rem. 3), like adjectives of the first and second declension.

II. *Demonstrative Pronouns* (so called because they point out or specify the objects to which they refer), are *hīc, illĕ, istĕ, ĭs,* and *their compounds,* and are declined as follows:

1. Hīc, *this.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Hīc,	haec,	hŏc.	Hī,	hae,	haec.
G.	Hujŭs,	hujŭs,	hujŭs.	Hōrŭm,	hārŭm,	hōrŭm.
D.	Huīc,	huīc,	huīc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.
A.	Hunc,	hanc,	hŏc.	Hōs,	hās,	haec.
V.						
A.	Hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	Hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

2. Illĕ, *he* or *that*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Illĕ,	illă,	illŭd.	Illī,	illae,	illă.
G.	Illīŭs,	illīŭs,	illīŭs.	Illōrŭm,	illārŭm,	illōrŭm.
D.	Illī,	illī,	illī.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.
A.	Illŭm,	illăm,	illŭd.	Illōs,	illās,	illă.
V						
A.	Illō,	illā,	illō.	Illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

3. Istĕ, *that*.

Istĕ, *that*, is declined like *illĕ*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

4. Is, *he* or *that*.

(Less specific than *illĕ*.)

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Is,	eă,	ĭd.	Iī,	eae,	eă.
G.	Ejŭs,	ejŭs,	ejŭs.	Eōrŭm,	eārŭm,	eōrŭm.
D.	Eī,	eī,	eī.	Iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs.
A.	Eŭm,	eăm,	ĭd.	Eōs,	eās,	eă.
V.						
A.	Eō,	eā,	eō.	Iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs,	iīs *or* eīs.

5. Idĕm, *the same*.

(Formed by annexing *dĕm* to *ĭs*.)

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Idĕm,	eădĕm,	ĭdĕm.	Iīdĕm,	eaedĕm,	eădĕm.
G.	Ejusdĕm,	ejusdĕm,	ejusdĕm.	Eōrundĕm,	eārundĕm,	eōrundĕm.
D.	Eīdĕm,	eīdĕm,	eīdĕm.	Eisdĕm, *or* Iisdĕm,	eisdĕm, *or* iisdĕm,	eisdĕm, *or* iisdĕm.
A.	Eundĕm,	eandĕm,	ĭdĕm.	Eōsdĕm,	eāsdĕm,	eădĕm.
V.						
A.	Eōdĕm,	eādĕm,	eōdĕm.	Eisdĕm, *or* Iisdĕm,	eisdĕm, *or* iisdĕm.	eisdĕm, *or* iisdĕm.

III. The *Intensive Pronoun*, ipsĕ, himself, is so called because it is used to render an object *emphatic*. It is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Ipsĕ,	ipsă,	ipsŭm.	Ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsă.
G.	Ipsīŭs,	ipsīŭs,	ipsīŭs.	Ipsōrŭm,	ipsārŭm,	ipsōrŭm.
D.	Ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.
A.	Ipsŭm,	ipsăm,	ipsŭm.	Ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsă.
V.						
A.	Ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	Ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

IV. The *Relative Pronoun, quī*, who, is so called because it always relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent. It is declined as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	*F.*	*N.*	*M.*	*F.*	*N.*
N.	Quī,	quae,	quŏd.	Quī,	quae,	quae.
G.	Cujŭs,	cujŭs,	cujŭs.	Quōrŭm,	quārŭm,	quōrŭm.
D.	Cuī,	cuī,	cuī.	Quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs.
A.	Quĕm,	quăm,	quŏd.	Quōs,	quās,	quae.
V.						
A.	Quō,	quā,	quō.	Quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs,	quĭbŭs.

V. The *Interrogative* Pronouns, *quĭs* and *quī*, are so called because they are used in asking questions. *Quī* (which? what?) is used *adjectively*, and is declined like the relative. *Quĭs* (who? which? what?) is generally used *substantively*, and is declined like the relative, except in the forms *quĭs*, nom. masc., and *quĭd*, nom. and acc. neut.

VI. *Indefinite Pronouns* are so called because they do not definitely specify the objects to which they refer; e. g., *quĭdăm*, a certain one; *ălĭquĭs*, some one; *quisquĕ*, every one; *sīquĭs*, if any, &c. They are compounds either of *quĭs* or *quī*, and are declined in nearly the same manner as the simple pronouns.

REM.—The compounds of *quĭs* generally take *quĭd* in the *neut. sing.* when used *substantively*, and *quŏd* when used *adjectively*. Some of those compounds, as *ălĭquĭs*, *sīquĭs*, take *quă* (*not* quae) in the *fem. sing.* and *neut. plur.*

586. *Paradigm of the verb Essĕ.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*am*).

Singular.	Plural
Sŭm, *I am.*	Sŭmŭs, *we are.*
Es, *thou art.*	Estĭs, *you are.*
Est, *he is.*	Sunt, *they are.*

IMPERFECT (*was*).

Singular.	Plural.
Ĕrăm, *I was.*	Ĕrāmŭs, *we were.*
Ĕrās, *thou wast.*	Ĕrātĭs, *you were.*
Ĕrăt, *he was.*	Ĕrant, *they were.*

FUTURE (*shall* or *will be*).

Ĕrŏ, *I shall be.*	Ĕrĭmŭs, *we shall be.*
Ĕrĭs, *thou wilt be.*	Ĕrĭtĭs, *you will be.*
Ĕrĭt, *he will be.*	Ĕrunt, *they will be.*

PERFECT (*have been* or *was*).

Fuī, *I have been.*	Fuĭmŭs, *we have been.*
Fuistī, *thou hast been.*	Fuistĭs, *you have been.*
Fuĭt, *he has been.*	Fuērunt, Fuēre, } *they have been.*

PLUPERFECT (*had been*).

Fuĕrăm, *I had been.*	Fuĕrāmŭs, *we had been.*
Fuĕrās, *thou hadst been.*	Fuĕrātĭs, *you had been.*
Fuĕrăt, *he had been.*	Fuĕrant, *they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT (*shall* or *will have been*).

Fuĕrŏ, *I shall have been.*	Fuĕrĭmŭs, *we shall have been.*
Fuĕrĭs, *thou wilt have been.*	Fuĕrĭtĭs, *you will have been.*
Fuĕrĭt, *he will have been.*	Fuĕrint, *they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT (*may* or *can be*).

Sĭm, *I may be.*	Sīmŭs, *we may be.*
Sīs, *thou mayest be.*	Sītĭs, *you may be.*
Sĭt, *he may be.*	Sint, *they may be.*

IMPERFECT (*might*, *could*, *would*, or *should be*).

Essĕm, *I might be.*	Essēmŭs, *we might be.*
Essēs, *thou mightest be.*	Essētĭs, *you might be.*
Essĕt, *he might be.*	Essent, *they might be.*

PERFECT (*may have been*).

Fuĕrĭm, *I may have been.*	Fuĕrĭmŭs, *we may have been.*
Fuĕrĭs, *thou mayest have been.*	Fuĕrĭtĭs, *you may have been.*
Fuĕrĭt, *he may have been.*	Fuĕrint, *they may have been.*

PLUPERFECT (*might*, *could*, *would*, or *should have been*).

Fuissĕm, *I might have been.*	Fuissēmŭs, *we might have been.*
Fuissēs, *thou mightest have been.*	Fuissētĭs, *you might have been.*
Fuissĕt, *he might have been.*	Fuissent, *they might have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.
Es, *or* estŏ, *be thou.*	Estĕ *or* estōtĕ, *be ye.*
Estŏ, *let him be.*	Suntŏ, *let them be.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRESENT,	Essĕ, *to be.*
PERFECT,	Fuissĕ, *to have been.*
FUTURE,	Fŭtūrŭs (ă, ŭm) essĕ, *to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

FUTURE,	Fŭtūrŭs, ă, ŭm, *about to be.*

587. *Regular Verbs.—Four Conjugations.*

1. Infinitive endings.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ārĕ,	ērĕ,	ĕrĕ,	īrĕ.

2. Favorite vowels.

1.	2.	3.	4.
ā,	ē,	ĕ (ĭ),	ī.

588. FIRST CONJUGATION (Inf. ending *ārĕ*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2.	3.
āv,	āt.

2. Paradigm.

Amārĕ, *to love:* 1st root, *ăm;* 2d, *ămāv;* 3d, *ămāt.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active, *I love.*		Passive, *I am loved.*	
Singular.	Plural	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ŏ,	Am-āmŭs,	Am-ŏr,	Am-āmŭr,
Am-ās,	Am-ātĭs,	Am-ārĭs (rĕ),	Am-āmĭnī,
Am-ăt	Am-ant.	Am-ātŭr;	Am-antŭr.

IMPERFECT, *was loving; was loved.*

Am-ābăm,	Am-ābāmŭs,	Am-ābăr,	Am-ābāmŭr,
Am-ābās,	Am-ābātĭs,	Am-ābārĭs (rĕ),	Am-ābāmĭnī,
Am-ābăt;	Am-ābant.	Am-ābātŭr;	Am-ābantŭr.

FUTURE, *will love; will be loved.*

Singular	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ābŏ,	Am-ābĭmŭs,	Am-ābŏr,	Am-ābĭmŭr,
Am-ābĭs,	Am-ābĭtĭs,	Am-ābĕrĭs (rĕ),	Am-ābĭmĭnī,
Am-ābĭt;	Am-ābunt.	Am-ābĭtŭr;	Am-ābuntŭr.

PERFECT, *have loved; have been loved.*

Amāv-ī,	Amāv-ĭmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs sŭm,*	Amāt-ī sŭmŭs,
Amāv-istī,	Amāv-istĭs,	Amāt-ŭs ĕs,	Amāt-ī estĭs,
Amāv-ĭt;	Amāv-ērunt (ērĕ).	Amāt-ŭs est;	Amāt-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had loved; had been loved.*

Amāv-ĕrăm,	Amāv-ĕrāmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs ĕrăm,*	Amāt-ī ĕrāmŭs,
Amāv-ĕrās,	Amāv-ĕrātĭs,	Amāt-ŭs ĕrās,	Amāt-ī ĕrātĭs,
Amāv-ĕrăt;	Amāv-ĕrant.	Amāt-ŭs ĕrăt;	Amāt-ī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *will have loved; will have been loved.*

Amāv-ĕrŏ,	Amāv-ĕrĭmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs ĕrŏ,*	Amāt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,
Amāv-ĕrĭs,	Amāv-ĕrĭtĭs,	Amāt-ŭs ĕrĭs,	Amāt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,
Amāv-ĕrĭt;	Amāv-ĕrint.	Amāt-ŭs ĕrĭt;	Amāt-ī ĕrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may love; may be loved.*

Am-ĕm,	Am-ēmŭs,	Am-ĕr,	Am-ēmŭr,
Am-ēs,	Am-ētĭs,	Am-ērĭs (rĕ),	Am-ēmĭnī,
Am-ĕt;	Am-ent.	Am-ētŭr;	Am-entŭr.

IMPERFECT, *might love; might be loved.*

Am-ārĕm,	Am-ārēmŭs,	Am-ārĕr,	Am-ārēmŭr,
Am-ārēs,	Am-ārētĭs,	Am-ārērĭs (rĕ),	Am-ārēmĭnī,
Am-ārĕt	Am-ārent.	Am-ārētŭr;	Am-ārentŭr.

PERFECT, *may have loved; may have been loved.*

Amāv-ĕrĭm,	Amāv-ĕrĭmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs sĭm,†	Amāt-ī sīmŭs,
Amāv-ĕrĭs,	Amāv-ĕrĭtĭs,	Amāt-ŭs sīs,	Amāt-ī sītĭs,
Amāv-ĕrĭt;	Amāv-ĕrint.	Amāt-ŭs sĭt;	Amāt-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have loved; might have been loved.*

Amāv-issĕm,	Amāv-issēmŭs,	Amāt-ŭs essĕm,†	Amāt-ī essēmŭs,
Amāv-issēs,	Amāv-issētĭs,	Amāt-ŭs essēs,	Amāt-ī essētĭs,
Amāv-issĕt;	Amāv-issent.	Amāt-ŭs essĕt;	Amāt-ī essent.

* See 331, N. † See 332, N.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Am-ā, *or* ăm-ātŏ,	Am-ātĕ, *or* ăm-ātōtĕ,	Am-ārĕ, *or* ăm-ātŏr,	Am-āmĭnī,
Am-ātŏ;	Am-antŏ.	Am-ātŏr;	Am-antŏr.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

	Active	Passive
Pres.	Am-ārĕ.	Am-ārī.
Perf.	Amāv-issĕ.	Amāt-ŭs essĕ.
Fut.	Amāt-ūrŭs essĕ.	Amāt-ŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Am-ans.	Perf.	Amāt-ŭs.
Fut.	Amāt-ūrŭs.	Fut.	Am-andŭs.

GERUND.

Am-andī, andō, andŭm, andō.

SUPINES.

Amāt-ŭm.	Amāt-ū.

589. Second Conjugation (Inf. ending *ērĕ*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots

2.	3
u (ēv),*	ĭt.

2. Paradigm.

Mŏnērĕ, *to advise:* 1st root, *mŏn;* 2d, *mŏnu;* 3d, *mŏnĭt.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Active, *I advise.*		Passive, *I am advised.*	
Singular	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mŏn-eŏ,	Mŏn-ēmŭs,	Mŏn-eŏr,	Mŏn-ēmŭr,
Mŏn-ēs,	Mŏn-ētĭs,	Mŏn-ērĭs (rĕ),	Mŏn-ēmĭnī,
Mŏn-ĕt;	Mŏn-ent.	Mŏn-ētŭr;	Mon-entŭr.
Imperfect, *was advising; was advised.*			
Mŏn-ēbăm,	Mŏn-ēbāmŭs,	Mŏn-ēbăr,	Mŏn-ēbāmŭr,
Mŏn-ēbās,	Mŏn-ēbātĭs,	Mŏn-ēbārĭs (rĕ),	Mŏn-ēbāmĭnī,
Mŏn-ēbăt;	Mŏn-ēbant.	Mŏn-ēbātŭr;	Mŏn-ēbantŭr.
Future, *shall advise; shall be advised.*			
Mŏn-ēbŏ,	Mŏn-ēbĭmŭs,	Mŏn-ēbŏr,	Mŏn-ēbĭmŭr,
Mŏn-ēbĭs,	Mŏn-ēbĭtĭs,	Mŏn-ēbĕrĭs (rĕ),	Mŏn-ēbĭmĭnī,
Mŏn-ēbĭt;	Mŏn-ēbunt.	Mŏn-ēbĭtŭr;	Mŏn-ēbuntŭr.

---

* See 192, N.

PERFECT, *have advised; have been advised.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Mŏnu-ī,	Mŏnu-ĭmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sŭm,*	Mŏnĭt-ī sŭmŭs,
Mŏnu-istī,	Mŏnu-istĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕs,	Mŏnĭt-ī estĭs,
Mŏnu-ĭt;	Mŏnu-ērunt (ērĕ).	Mŏnĭt-ŭs est;	Mŏnĭt-ī sunt.

PLUPERFECT, *had advised; had been advised.*

Mŏnu-ĕrăm,	Mŏnu-ĕrāmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrăm,*	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrāmŭs
Mŏnu-ĕrās,	Mŏnu-ĕrātĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrās,	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrātĭs,
Mŏnu-ĕrăt;	Mŏnu-ĕrant.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrăt;	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have advised; shall have been advised.*

Mŏnu-ĕrŏ,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrŏ,*	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,
Mŏnu-ĕrĭs,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭtĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,
Mŏnu-ĕrĭt;	Mŏnu-ĕrint.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs ĕrĭt;	Mŏnĭt-ī ĕrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may advise; may be advised.*

Mŏn-eăm,	Mŏn-eāmŭs,	Mŏn-eăr,	Mŏn-eāmŭr,
Mŏn-eās,	Mŏn-eātĭs,	Mŏn-eārĭs (rĕ),	Mŏn-eāmĭnī,
Mŏn-eăt;	Mŏn-eant.	Mŏn-eātŭr;	Mŏn-eantŭr.

IMPERFECT, *might advise; might be advised.*

Mŏn-ērĕm,	Mŏn-ērēmŭs,	Mŏn-ērĕr,	Mŏn-ērēmŭr,
Mŏn-ērēs,	Mŏn-ērētĭs,	Mŏn-ērērĭs (rĕ),	Mŏn-ērēmĭnī,
Mŏn-ērĕt;	Mŏn-ērent.	Mŏn-ērētŭr;	Mŏn-ērentŭr.

PERFECT, *may have advised; may have been advised.*

Mŏnu-ĕrĭm	Mŏnu-ĕrĭmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sĭm,†	Mŏnĭt-ī sīmŭs,
Mŏnu-ĕrĭs,	Mŏnu-ĕrĭtĭs.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sīs,	Mŏnĭt-ī sītĭs,
Mŏnu-ĕrĭt;	Mŏnu-ĕrint.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs sĭt;	Mŏnĭt-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have advised; might have been advised.*

Mŏnu-issĕm,	Mŏnu-issēmŭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕm,†	Mŏnĭt-ī essēmŭs,
Mŏnu-issēs,	Mŏnu-issētĭs,	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essēs,	Mŏnĭt-ī essētĭs,
Mŏnu-issĕt;	Mŏnu-issent.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕt;	Mŏnĭt-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Mŏn-ē,	Mŏn-ētĕ,	Mŏn-ērĕ,	Mŏn-ēmĭnī,
or mŏn-ētŏ,	*or* mŏn-ētōtĕ.	*or* mŏn-ētŏr,	
Mŏn-ētŏ;	Mŏn-entŏ.	Mŏn-ētŏr;	Mŏn-entŏr.

---

* See 331 N. † See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres.	Mŏn-ērĕ.	Mŏn-ērī.
Perf.	Mŏnu-issĕ.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs essĕ.
Fut.	Mŏnĭt-ūrŭs essĕ.	Mŏnĭt-ŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Mŏn-ens.	Mŏnĭt-ŭs.
Fut	Mŏnĭt-ūrŭs.	Mŏn-endŭs.

GERUND.

Mŏn-endī, endō, endŭm, endō.

SUPINES.

Mŏnĭt-ŭm.	Mŏnĭt-ū.

590. Third Conjugation (Inf. ending *ĕrĕ*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, *s*, or *like* 1*st;* 3d, *t*, sometimes *s*.

2. Paradigm.

Rĕgĕrĕ, *to rule:* 1st root, *rĕg;* 2d, *rex;* 3d, *rect.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Act., *I rule.*		Pass., *I am ruled.*	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rĕg-ō,	Rĕgĭmŭs,	Rĕg-ŏr,	Rĕg-ĭmŭr,
Rĕg-ĭs,	Rĕg-ĭtĭs,	Rĕg-ĕrĭs (rĕ),	Rĕg-ĭmĭnī,
Rĕg-ĭt;	Rĕg-unt.	Rĕg-ĭtŭr;	Rĕg-untŭr.

Imperfect, *was ruling; was ruled.*

Rĕg-ēbăm,	Rĕg-ēbāmŭs,	Rĕg-ēbăr,	Rĕg-ēbāmŭr,
Rĕg-ēbās,	Rĕg-ēbātĭs,	Rĕg-ēbārĭs (rĕ),	Rĕg-ēbāmĭnī,
Rĕg-ēbăt;	Rĕg-ēbant.	Rĕg-ēbātŭr;	Rĕg-ēbantŭr.

Future, *shall rule; shall be ruled.*

Rĕg-ăm,	Rĕg-ēmŭs,	Rĕg-ăr,	Rĕg-ēmŭr,
Rĕg-ēs,	Rĕg-ētĭs,	Rĕg-ērĭs (rĕ),	Rĕg-ēmĭnī,
Rĕg-ĕt;	Rĕg-ent.	Rĕg-ētŭr;	Rĕg-entŭr.

Perfect, *have ruled; have been ruled.*

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Rex-ī,	Rex-ĭmŭs,	Rect-ŭs sŭm,*	Rect-ī sŭmŭs,
Rex-istī,	Rex-istĭs,	Rect-ŭs ĕs,	Rect-ī estĭs,
Rex-ĭt;	Rex-ērunt (ērĕ).	Rect-ŭs est;	Rect-ī sunt.

Pluperfect, *had ruled; had been ruled.*

Rex-ĕrăm,	Rex-ĕrāmŭs,	Rect-ŭs ĕrăm,*	Rect-ī ĕrāmŭs,
Rex-ĕrās,	Rex-ĕrātĭs,	Rect-ŭs ĕrās,	Rect-ī ĕrātĭs,
Rex-ĕrăt;	Rex-ĕrant.	Rect-ŭs ĕrăt;	Rect-ī ĕrant.

Future Perfect, *shall have ruled; shall have been ruled.*

Rex-ĕrŏ,	Rex-ĕrĭmŭs,	Rect-ŭs ĕrŏ,*	Rect-ī ĕrĭmŭs,
Rex-ĕrĭs,	Rex-ĕrĭtĭs,	Rect-ŭs ĕrĭs,	Rect-ī ĕrĭtĭs,
Rex-ĕrĭt;	Rex-ĕrint.	Rect-ŭs ĕrĭt;	Rect-ī ĕrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present, *may rule; may be ruled.*

Rĕg-ăm,	Rĕg-āmŭs,	Rĕg-ăr,	Rĕg-āmŭr,
Rĕg-ās,	Rĕg-ātĭs,	Rĕg-ārĭs (rĕ),	Rĕg-āmĭnī,
Rĕg-ăt;	Rĕg-ant.	Rĕg-ātŭr;	Rĕg-antŭr.

Imperfect, *might rule; might be ruled.*

Rĕg-ĕrĕm,	Rĕg-ĕrēmŭs,	Rĕg-ĕrĕr,	Rĕg-ĕrēmŭr,
Rĕg-ĕrēs,	Rĕg-ĕrētĭs,	Rĕg-ĕrērĭs (rĕ),	Rĕg-ĕrēmĭnī.
Rĕg-ĕrĕt;	Rĕg-ĕrent.	Rĕg-ĕrētŭr,	Rĕg-ĕrentŭr.

Perfect, *may have ruled; may have been ruled.*

Rex-ĕrĭm,	Rex-ĕrĭmŭs,	Rect-ŭs sĭm,†	Rect-ī sīmŭs,
Rex-ĕrĭs,	Rex-ĕrĭtĭs,	Rect-ŭs sīs,	Rect-ī sītĭs,
Rex-ĕrĭt;	Rex-ĕrint.	Rect-ŭs sĭt;	Rect-ī sint.

Pluperfect, *might have ruled; might have been ruled.*

Rex-issĕm,	Rex-issēmŭs,	Rect-ŭs essĕm,†	Rect-ī essēmŭs,
Rex-issēs,	Rex-issētĭs,	Rect-ŭs essēs,	Rect-ī essētĭs,
Rex-issĕt;	Rex-issent.	Rect-ŭs essĕt;	Rect-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Rĕg-ĕ,	Rĕg-ĭtĕ,	Rĕg-ĕrĕ,	Rĕg-ĭmĭnī,
or rĕg-ĭtŏ,	*or* rĕg-ĭtōtĕ,	*or* rĕg-ĭtŏr,	
Rĕg-ĭtŏ;	Rĕg-untŏ.	Rĕg-ĭtŏr;	Rĕg-untŏr.

* See 331, N. † See 332, N.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Rĕg-ĕrĕ.		Rĕg-ī.
PERF.	Rex-issĕ.		Rect-ŭs essĕ.
FUT.	Rect-ūrŭs essĕ.		Rect-ŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Rĕg-ens.	PERF.	Rect-ŭs.
FUT.	Rect-ūrŭs.	FUT.	Rĕg-endŭs.

GERUND.

Rĕg-endī, endō, endŭm, endō.

SUPINES.

Rect-ŭm. | Rect-ū.

3. Paradigm of verbs in i ŏ of the third conjugation.

Căpĕrĕ, *to take:* 1st root, *căp;* 2d, *cēp;* 3d, *capt.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Active.		*Passive.*	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Căp-iŏ,	Căp-ĭmŭs,	Căp-iŏr,	Căp-ĭmŭr,
Căp-ĭs,	Căp-ĭtĭs,	Căp-ĕrĭs (rĕ),	Căp-ĭmĭnī,
Căp-ĭt;	Căp-iunt.	Căp-ĭtŭr;	Căp-iuntŭr.

IMPERFECT.

Căp-iēbăm,	Căp-iēbāmŭs,	Căp-iēbăr,	Căp-iēbāmŭr,
Căp-iēbās,	Căp-iēbātĭs,	Căp-iēbārĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iēbāmĭnī,
Căp-iēbăt;	Căp-iēbant.	Căp-iēbātŭr;	Căp-iēbantŭr.

FUTURE.

Căp-iăm,	Căp-iēmŭs,	Căp-iăr,	Căp-iēmŭr,
Căp-iēs,	Căp-iētĭs,	Căp-iērĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iēmĭnī,
Căp-iĕt	Căp-ient.	Căp-iētŭr;	Căp-ientŭr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

Căp-iăm,	Căp-iāmŭs,	Căp-iăr,	Căp-iāmŭr,
Căp-iās,	Căp-iātĭs,	Căp-iārĭs (rĕ),	Căp-iāmĭnī,
Căp-iăt ·	Căp-iant.	Căp-iātŭr;	Căp iantŭr.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

3d Pl. Căp-iuntŏ.	3d Pl. Căp-iuntŏr.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Căp-iens.	Fut. Căp-iendŭs.

GERUND.

Căp-iendī, dō, &c.

☞ The other parts of verbs in iŏ are entirely regular.

591. Fourth Conjugation (Inf. ending *īrĕ*).

1. Regular endings of the 2d and 3d roots.

2d, *īv*; 3d, *īt*.

2. Paradigm.

Audīrĕ, *to hear:* 1st root, *aud;* 2d, *audīv;* 3d, *audīt.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Act., *I hear.*		Pass., *I am heard.*	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Aud-iŏ,	Aud-īmŭs,	Aud-iŏr,	Aud-īmŭr,
Aud-īs,	Aud-ītĭs,	Aud-īrĭs (rĕ),	Aud-īmĭnī,
Aud-ĭt;	Aud-iunt.	Aud-ītŭr;	Aud-iuntŭr.

Imperfect, *was hearing; was heard.*

Aud-iēbăm,	Aud-iēbāmŭs,	Aud-iēbăr,	Aud-iēbāmŭr,
Aud-iēbās,	Aud-iēbātĭs,	Aud-iēbārĭs (rĕ),	Aud-iēbāmĭnī,
Aud-iēbăt;	Aud-iēbant.	Aud-iēbātŭr;	Aud-iēbantŭr.

Future, *shall hear; shall be heard.*

Aud-iăm,	Aud-iēmŭs,	Aud-iăr,	Aud-iēmŭr,
Aud-iēs,	Aud-iētĭs,	Aud-iērĭs (rĕ),	Aud-iēmĭnī,
Aud-iĕt;	Aud-ient.	Aud-iētŭr;	Aud-iēntŭr.

Perfect, *have heard; have been heard.*

Audīv-ī,	Audīv-ĭmŭs,	Audīt-ŭs sŭm,*	Audīt-ī sŭmŭs,
Audīv-istī,	Audīv-istĭs,	Audīt-ŭs ĕs,	Audīt-ī estĭs,
Audīv-ĭt;	Audīv-ērunt (ērĕ).	Audīt-ŭs est;	Audīt-ī sunt.

* See 331, N.

PLUPERFECT, *had heard; had been heard.*

Audīv-ĕrăm,	Audīv-ĕrāmŭs,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrăm,*	Audīt-ī ĕrāmŭs,
Audīv-ĕrās,	Audīv-ĕrātĭs,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrās,	Audīt-ī ĕrātĭs,
Audīv-ĕrăt;	Audīv-ĕrant.	Audīt-ŭs ĕrăt;	Audīt-ī ĕrant

FUTURE PERFECT, *shall have heard; shall have been heard.*

Audīv-ĕrŏ,	Audīv-ĕrĭmŭs,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrŏ,*	Audīt-ī ĕrĭmŭs,
Audīv-ĕrĭs,	Audīv-ĕrĭtĭs,	Audīt-ŭs ĕrĭs,	Audīt-ī ĕrĭtĭs,
Audīv-ĕrĭt;	Audīv-ĕrint.	Audīt-ŭs ĕrĭt;	Audīt-ī ĕrunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT, *may hear; may be heard.*

Aud-iăm,	Aud-iāmŭs,	Aud-iăr,	Aud-iāmŭr,
Aud-iās,	Aud-iātĭs,	Aud-iārĭs (rĕ),	Aud-iāmĭnī,
Aud-iăt;	Aud-iant.	Aud-iātŭr;	Aud-iantŭr.

IMPERFECT, *might hear; might be heard.*

Aud-īrĕm,	Aud-īrēmŭs,	Aud-īrĕr,	Aud-īrēmŭr,
Aud-īrēs,	Aud-īrētĭs,	Aud-īrērĭs (rĕ),	Aud-īrēmĭnī,
Aud-īrĕt;	Aud-īrent.	Aud-īrētŭr;	Aud-īrentŭr.

PERFECT, *may have heard; may have been heard.*

Audīv-ĕrĭm,	Audīv-ĕrĭmŭs,	Audīt-ŭs sĭm,†	Audīt-ī sīmŭs,
Audīv-ĕrĭs,	Audīv-ĕrĭtĭs,	Audīt-ŭs sīs,	Audīt-ī sītĭs,
Audīv-ĕrĭt;	Audīv-ĕrint.	Audīt-ŭs sĭt;	Audīt-ī sint.

PLUPERFECT, *might have heard; might have been heard.*

Audīv-issĕm,	Audīv-issēmŭs,	Audīt-ŭs essĕm,†	Audīt-ī essēmŭs,
Audīv-issēs,	Audīv-issētĭs,	Audīt-ŭs essēs,	Audīt-ī essētĭs,
Audīv-issĕt	Audīv-issent.	Audīt-ŭs essĕt;	Audīt-ī essent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Aud-ī, *or* aud-ītŏ,	Aud-ītĕ, *or* aud-ītōtĕ,	Aud-īrĕ, *or* aud-ītŏr,	Aud-īmĭnī,
Aud-ītŏ;	Aud-iuntŏ.	Aud-ītŏr;	Aud-iuntŏr.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Aud-īrĕ.	Aud-īrī.
PERF.	Audīv-issĕ.	Audīt-ŭs essĕ.
FUT.	Audīt-ūrŭs essĕ.	Audīt-ŭm īrī.

---

* See 331, N. † See 332, N

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Aud-iens.	Perf.	Audit-ŭs.
Fut.	Audit-ūrŭs.	Fut.	Aud-iendŭs.

GERUND.

Aud-iendī, iendō, iendŭm, iendō.

SUPINES.

Audit-ŭm.	Audit-ū.

592. *Formation of Second Root.*

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
REGULAR.			
āv.	u or ēv.	s or like 1st root.	īv
FIRST IRREGULARITY.			
Radical vowel lengthened.	radical vowel lengthened.	radical vowel lengthened (and often changed).	radical vowel lengthened.
SECOND IRREGULARITY.			
Reduplication.	reduplication.	reduplication.	
THIRD IRREGULARITY.			
Analogy of 2d conj.	analogy of 3d conj.	analogy of 2d or 4th conj.	analogy of 2d or 3d conj.

593. *Deponent Verbs.*

Deponent verbs are such as have a *passive form,* but an *active meaning.* They take, however, all the four participles; e. g.,

1) Lŏquens, *speaking;* 2) lŏcūtŭs, *having spoken;* 3) lŏcūtūrŭs, *about to speak;* 4) lŏquendŭs, *to be spoken.*

REM.—The past participle of a deponent verb is the participle of the *perfect active.* which other verbs do not have.

Irregular Verbs.

594. Paradigm of *Possĕ,** to be able.

2d root, *pŏtu.*

INDICATIVE.

Pres. Possŭm, pŏtĕs, pŏtest, possŭmŭs, pŏtestĭs, possunt.
Imp. pŏtĕrăm; *Fut.* pŏtĕrŏ; *Perf.* pŏtu-ī; *Pluperf.* pŏtu-ĕrăm; *Fut. Perf* pŏtu-ĕrŏ.

* For the conjugation of the simple verb, *essĕ*, see 586.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. possĭm; *Imp.* possĕm; *Perf.* pŏtu-ĕrĭm; *Pluperf.* pŏtu-issĕm.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. possĕ; *Perf.* pŏtu-issĕ.

PARTICIPLE.

Pŏtens (*used as an adjective, powerful*).

595. Paradigms of *Vellĕ* (to be willing) and its compounds.

Vellĕ. 2d root, *vŏlu.*	Nollĕ. 2d root, *nōlu.*	Mallĕ. 2d root, *mālu.*
INDICATIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Vŏlŏ, Vīs, Vult; Vŏlŭmŭs, Vultĭs, Vŏlunt.	Nōlŏ, Nonvīs, Nonvult; Nōlŭmŭs, Nonvultĭs, Nōlunt.	Mālŏ, Māvīs, Māvult; Mālŭmŭs, Māvultĭs, Mālunt.
IMPERFECT.		
Vŏl-ēbăm, bās, &c.	Nōl-ēbăm, bās, &c.	Māl-ēbăm, bās, &c.
FUTURE.		
Vŏl-ăm.	Nōl-ăm.	Māl-ăm.
PERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ī.	Nōlu-ī.	Mālu-ī.
PLUPERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ĕrăm.	Nōlu-ĕrăm.	Mālu-ĕrăm.
FUTURE PERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ĕrŏ.	Nōlu-ĕrŏ.	Mālu-ĕrŏ.
SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.		
Vĕl-ĭm, īs, &c.	Nōl-ĭm, īs, &c.	Māl-ĭm, īs, &c
IMPERFECT.		
Vell-ĕm, ēs, &c.	Noll-ĕm.	Mall-ĕm.
PERFECT.		
Vŏlu-ĕrĭm.	Nōlu-ĕrĭm.	Mālu-ĕrĭm.
PLUPERFECT.		
Vŏlu-issĕm.	Nōlu-issĕm.	Mālu-issĕm.

IMPERATIVE.

	Nōl-ī *or* ītō. Nōl-ītĕ *or* ītōtĕ.	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. Vellĕ.	Nollĕ.	Mallĕ.
PERF. Vŏlu-issĕ.	Nōlu-issĕ.	Mālu-issĕ.

PARTICIPLES.

Vŏlens.	Nōlens.

596. Paradigm of *Ferrĕ*, to bear.

2d root, *tŭl*; 3d, *lāt*.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

Active.	*Passive.*
Fĕr-ŏ, fer-s, fer-t, fĕr-ĭmŭs, fer-tĭs, fĕr-unt.	Fĕr-ŏr, fer-rĭs, fer-tŭr, fĕr-ĭmŭr, fĕr-ĭmĭnī, fĕr-untŭr.

IMPERFECT.

Fĕr-ēbăm, bās, &c.	Fĕr-ēbăr, bārĭs, &c.

FUTURE.

Fĕr-ăm, ēs, &c.	Fĕr-ăr, ērĭs, &c.

PERFECT.

Tŭl-ī, istī, &c.	Lāt-ŭs sŭm, ĕs, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Tŭl-ĕrăm, ās, &c.	Lāt-ŭs ĕrăm, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Tŭl-ĕrŏ, &c.	Lāt-ŭs ĕrŏ, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Fĕr-ăm, ās, &c.	Fĕr-ăr, ārĭs, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Fer-rĕm, rēs, &c.	Fer-rĕr, rērĭs, &c.

PERFECT.

Tŭl-ĕrĭm, &c.	Lāt-ŭs sĭm, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Tŭl-issĕm.	Lāt-ŭs essĕm, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Active.	*Passive.*
Fĕr, *or* fertŏ,	Fer-rĕ, *or* fer-tŏr,
Fer-tŏ;	Fer-tŏr;
Fer-tĕ, *or* fer-tōtĕ,	Fĕr-ĭmĭnī,
Fĕr-untŏ.	Fĕr-untŏr.

INFINITIVE.

Pres.	Fer-rĕ,	Fer-rī,
Perf.	Tŭl-isse,	Lāt-ŭs essĕ,
Fut.	Lāt-ūrŭs essĕ.	Lāt-ŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres.	Fĕr-ens,	*Perf.*	Lāt-ŭs (ă, ŭm).
Fut.	Lāt-ūrŭs (ă, ŭm).	*Fut.*	Fĕr-endŭs (ă, ŭm).

GERUND.

Fĕr-endī, dō, dŭm, dō.

SUPINE.

Lāt-ŭm.	Lāt-ū.

REM.—The compounds of *ferrĕ* are conjugated like the simple verb.

597. Paradigm of *Fĭĕrī*, to become, be made.

PRESENT.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Fīŏ, fīs, fĭt, &c.	Fī-ăm, fī-ās, fī-ăt, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Fī-ēbăm, ēbās, &c.	Fī-ĕrĕm, ĕrēs, &c.

FUTURE.

Fī-ăm, ēs, &c.

PERFECT.

Fact-ŭs sŭm, &c.	Fact-ŭs sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Fact-ŭs ĕrăm, &c.	Fact-ŭs essĕm, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Fact-ŭs ĕrŏ, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. Fī, *or* fī-tŏ, Fī-tŏ.	*Plur.* Fī-tĕ, *or* fī-tōtĕ. Fī-untŏ.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Fĭĕrī; *Perf.* Fact-ŭs essĕ; *Fut.* Fact-ŭm īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Perf. Fact-ŭs (ă, ŭm); *Fut.* Făciendŭs (ă, ŭm).

598. Paradigm of *Īrĕ*, to go.

2d root, *īv*; 3d, *it.*

PRESENT.

Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Eŏ, īs, ĭt; īmŭs, ītĭs, eunt.	Eăm, eās, &c.

IMPERFECT.

Ibăm, ībās, &c.	Irĕm, īrēs, &c.

FUTURE.

Ibŏ, ībĭs, &c.	

PERFECT.

Iv-ī, īv-istī, &c.	Iv-ĕrĭm, ĕrĭs, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

Iv-ĕrăm, ĕrās, &c.	Iv-issĕm, issēs, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

Iv-ĕrŏ, ĕrĭs, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

Sing. I, *or* ītŏ, Itŏ.	*Plur.* Itĕ, *or* ītōtĕ, Euntŏ.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. Irĕ; *Perf.* Iv-issĕ; *Fut.* Itūrŭs essĕ.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. Iens (*gen.* euntĭs); *Fut.* Itūrŭs, ă, ŭm.

GERUND.	SUPINE.
Eundī, dŏ, dŭm, dŏ.	Itŭm, ītū.

599. *Edĕrĕ*, to eat.

Edĕrĕ, *to eat*, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation, but has also certain forms like those of *essĕ*. These are as follows:

	Regular.	*Irregular.*
Pres.	Edŏ, &c.	Es, est, estĭs.
Imperat.	Edĕ, &c.	Es, estŏ, estĕ, estōtĕ.
Subj. Imp.	Edĕrĕm, &c.	Essĕm, essēs, &c
Infin.	Edĕrĕ.	Essĕ.

600. *Periphrastic Conjugations.*

There are two periphrastic conjugations formed respectively from the future participles in *rŭs* and *dŭs*, combined with the various tenses of the verb *essĕ*. The first periphrastic conjugation represents the action as *future*, or as one that is about to be done; e. g., *scriptūrŭs sŭm*, I am about to write: the second expresses *duty* or *necessity*; e. g., *virtūs cŏlendă est*, virtue must be cultivated.

601. *Impersonal Verbs.*

1. Impersonal verbs are such as are used only in the third person singular, and never take a personal subject (as *I*, *thou*, *he*). The subject in English is generally expressed by the pronoun *it*; e. g.,

Oportĕt, *it behooves.*

Taedĕt mē, *it disgusts me* (I am disgusted with).

2. Besides the verbs which are strictly impersonal, many others are often used *impersonally*; e. g.,

Constăt, *it is known.*

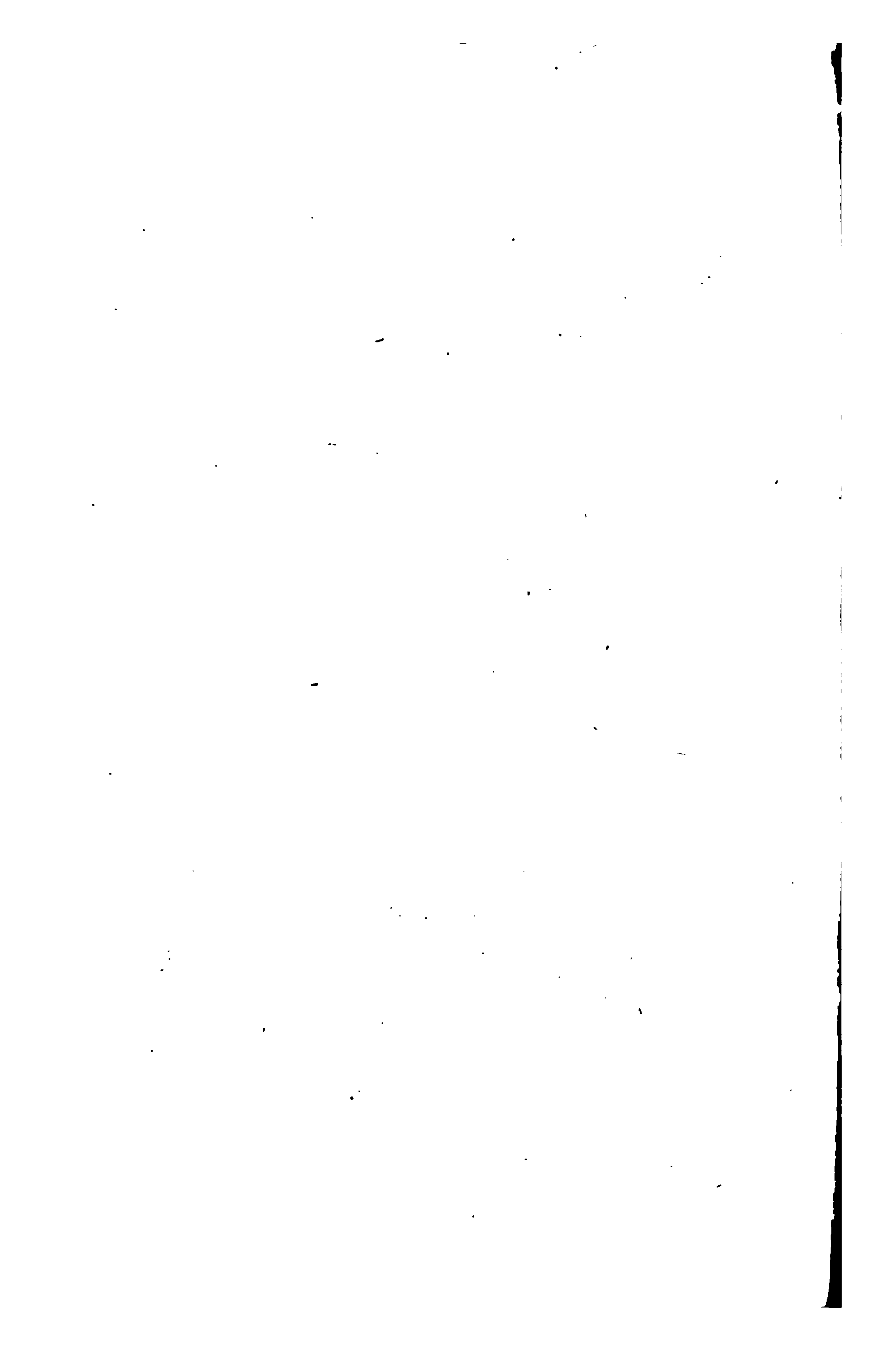
Juvăt, *it delights.*

3. The second periphrastic conjugation is often used impersonally; e. g.,

Mihĭ scrībendŭm est,	*I must* or *should write.*
Tĭbĭ scrībendŭm est,	*you must* or *should write.*
Illī scrībendŭm est,	*he must* or *should write.*
Nōbīs scrībendŭm est,	*we must* or *should write.*
Vōbīs scrībendŭm est,	*you must* or *should write.*
Illīs scrībendŭm est,	*they must* or *should write.*

4. Those verbs which take no direct object in the active, can only be used *impersonally* in the passive; e. g.,

Mihĭ crēdĭtŭr,	*I am believed.*
Tĭbĭ crēdĭtŭr,	*Thou art believed.*
Illī crēdĭtŭr,	*He is believed.*
Nōbīs crēdĭtŭr,	*We are believed.*
Vōbīs crēdĭtŭr,	*You are believed.*
Illīs crēdĭtŭr,	*They are believed.*



SYNTAX.

INTRODUCTION.

602. PARTS of speech (as we have seen, 2), either singly or combined, form propositions; e. g., Amăs, *thou lovest;* puĕr lūdĭt, *the boy plays.*

603. Propositions, either singly or combined, form sentences; e. g., Equŭs currĭt (*one prop.*), *the horse runs;* Puĕr lūdĭt ĕt ĕquŭs currĭt (two propositions).

604. Sentences, in their various forms and combinations, of course, comprise the language.

605. Sentences may be divided into two classes, viz.:

1) Simple sentences, or such as contain a single proposition; e. g., Puĕr lūdĭt.
2) Compound sentences, or such as contain more than one proposition; e. g., Puĕr lūdĭt ĕt ĕquŭs currĭt.

606. In a compound sentence, the propositions which compose it are either,

1) Independent of each other, as in the above example, and are called co-ordinate propositions; or,
2) One of them is used to qualify the other, or some part of it, and is called a dependent or subordinate proposition, while that on which it depends is called a leading or principal proposition; e. g., Servŭs vēnĭt ŭt portās claudăt, *the slave has come to shut the gates.* Here, '*servŭs vēnĭt*' is a principal proposition, and '*ŭt portās claudăt*' is a dependent proposition.

CHAPTER I.

The Essential Elements of Sentences.—Subject and Predicate.

SECTION I.—SUBJECT.

607. EVERY sentence, however simple, consists of two distinct parts, viz..

1) The *Subject*, or that of which it speaks, as, *puĕr*, in the sentence *puĕr lūdĭt.*
2) The *Predicate*, or that which is said of the subject, as *lūdĭt*, in the above sentence.

608. The subject of a sentence must be either,

1) A noun; e. g., *puĕr*, in the sentence *puĕr lūdĭt;* or,
2) A word or clause used as a noun; e. g., *mentīrī*, in the sentence *turpĕ est mentīrī.*

609. RULE I. *The Subject.*—The subject of a finite* verb is put in the nominative; e. g., Equŭs currĭt, *the horse runs.*

610. The subject may either be *simple* or *compound.*

1) The *simple subject* consists either of a single nominative, or of two or more nominatives representing the same person or thing; e. g., (1) Lătīnŭs rēgnābăt, *Latinus was reigning;* (2) Lătīnŭs rex rēgnābăt, *Latinus the king was reigning.*
2) The *compound* subject consists of two or more simple subjects connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., Caesăr ĕt Balbŭs Rōmăm vēnērunt, *Caesar and Balbus came to Rome.*

SECTION II.—PREDICATE.

611. The predicate of a sentence must be either,

1) A verb; e. g., *lūdĭt*, in the sentence *puĕr lūdĭt;* or,
2) The verb essĕ (or sometimes a passive verb) with an attributive† noun or adjective; e. g.,

---

* For the subject of an infinitive see 655.

† By an *attributive* noun is meant one which is used to qualify or describe another noun.

1.

Cĭcĕrŏ fuĭt consŭl, *Cicero was consul.*

Christiānī est nēmĭnĕm viŏlārĕ, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.* Here, *fuĭt consŭl* and *Christiānī est* are the predicates.

2.

Terră est rŏtundă, *the earth is round.*

Hūmānŭm est errarĕ, *to err is human.* Here, *est rŏtundă* and *hūmānŭm est* are the predicates.

612. Rule II. *Finite Verb.*—A finite verb must agree with its subject in number and person; e. g., Puĕr lūdĭt, *the boy plays.*

Rem.—If the subject is *compound*, the verb is generally put in the plural.

613. Rule III. *Attributive Noun.*—An attributive noun in the predicate, after the verb essĕ and a few passive verbs, is put,

1) In the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., Cĭcĕrŏ fuĭt consŭl, *Cicero was consul.*
2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., Christiānī est nēmĭnĕm viŏlārĕ, *it is the duty of a Christian to wrong nobody.*

614. Rule IV. *Adjectives.*—Adjectives and participles (whether in the subject or the predicate) agree in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, with the nouns which they qualify; e. g., Terră est rŏtundă, *the earth is round.*

615. The predicate, like the subject, may be either *simple* or *compound.*

1) The *simple* predicate contains but a single finite verb· e. g., Puĕr currĭt, *the boy runs.*
2) The *compound* predicate consists of two or more simple predicates connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood; e. g., Puĕr currĭt et lūdĭt, *the boy runs and plays.*

616. In principal sentences (including simple sentences) the verb of the predicate may be put in any finite mood.

1) The *indicative* is used, in positive assertions; e. g., Portas claudĭt, *he is shutting the gates.*
2) The *subjunctive* is used,

a) To express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*; e. g., Dărĕt, *he would give it* (i. e., *if he had it, perhaps*).

b) *Sometimes* to express a *wish* or *command*; e. g., Scrībăt, *he may write, may he write,* or *let him write.*

3) The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., Portās claudĕ, *shut the gates.*

617. Rule V. *Vocative.*—The name of the person or thing addressed is put in the vocative; e. g., Quĭd est, Cătĭlīnă? *why is this, Catiline?*

Rem.—This, of course, forms no part of the subject or predicate.

CHAPTER II.

Subordinate Elements.—Modifiers.

Section I.—Use of Modifiers.

618. Both subject and predicate may have qualifying words and clauses connected with them, to limit or modify their meaning; e. g.,

1) Lătīnŭs *rex* rēgnāvĭt, *Latinus the king reigned.* Here the subject is modified by *rex* (59).

2) Mīlĭtēs fortĭtĕr pugnant, *the soldiers fight bravely.* Here the predicate is modified by *fortĭtĕr* (77).

619. Any modifier, whether in the subject or the predicate, may be itself modified; e. g., Lătīnŭs, *bŏnŭs* rex, rēgnāvĭt. Here the modifier, *rex*, is itself modified by *bŏnŭs.*

620. Nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs, are often found with modifiers.

Section II.—Modifiers of Nouns.

621. Nouns, including pronouns, may be modified,

I. By adjectives and participles.

II. By nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives.

622. I. Nouns may be modified by adjectives and participles; e. g.,

Bŏnŭs puĕr, *a good boy.*

See Rule IV.

623. II. Nouns may be modified by nouns and clauses used with the force of adjectives. These are,

1) Limiting nouns.
2) Relative clauses.

624. Rule VI. *Limiting Nouns.*—A noun limiting the meaning of another noun is put,

1) In the same case as that noun, when it denotes the same person or thing; e. g., Lătīnŭs *rex*, Latinus *the king*.
2) In the genitive, when it denotes a different person or thing; e. g., *Rēgĭs* fīlĭŭs, the *king's* son: except,
   a) When it denotes *character* or *quality*; it is then accompanied by an adjective, and is put either in the genitive or ablative; e. g., Puĕr eximiae pulchrĭtūdĭnĭs, *or* Puĕr eximiā pulchrĭtūdĭnĕ, *a boy of remarkable beauty*.

625. Rule VII. *Relative Clauses.*—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number*; e. g., Puĕr quī lūdĭt, *the boy who plays*.

626. The predicate of a relative clause is sometimes in the *indicative* and sometimes in the *subjunctive*. It may be observed, however, that the subjunctive is used,

1) To express *purpose* or *result*; e. g., Lēgātōs mīsērunt *quī dīcĕrent*, they sent ambassadors *to say* (lit., *who might say*).
2) To define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., Sunt quī pŭtent, *there are* (some) *who think*.

Section III.—Modifiers of Adjectives.

627. Adjectives may be modified,

I. By adverbs.
II. By words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs.

628. I. Adjectives may be modified by adverbs; e. g., Haud difficĭlĭs, *not difficult*.

629. Rule VIII. *Adverbs.*—Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs; e. g., Haud diffĭcĭlĭs, *not difficult*; mīlĕs fortĭtĕr pŭgnăt, *the soldier fights bravely*.

Rem.—It will be observed that *adverbs* modify verbs and other adverbs as well as adjectives.

630. II. Adjectives may be modified by words (generally the oblique cases of nouns) used with the force of adverbs. These are,

1) The genitive.
2) The dative.
3) The ablative.
4) The infinitive.

631. RULE IX. *Genitive.*—Many adjectives signifying *desire, knowledge, skill, participation, recollection, fulness,* and the like, together with their *contraries,* take the genitive; e. g., Cŭpĭdŭs laudĭs, *desirous of praise.*

632. RULE X. *Dative.*—Many adjectives are followed by the dative of the object to which the quality is directed, or for which it exists; e. g., Pax mihĭ grātissĭmă ĕrăt, *peace was very acceptable to me.*

633. RULE XI. *Ablative.*—Adjectives may be modified by an ablative denoting *cause, manner,* or *means;* e. g., Aegĕr ăvārĭtiā, *diseased by avarice.*

634. RULE XII. *Ablative.*—The adjectives, *dĭgnŭs, indĭgnŭs, contentŭs, praedĭtŭs, frētŭs,* and *lībĕr,* take the ablative; e. g., Virtūs parvō contentă est, *virtue is content with little.*

635. RULE XIII. *Supine in ū as Ablative.*—The supine in *ū* as a verbal noun in the ablative is used after adjectives signifying *good* or *bad, easy* or *difficult, agreeable* or *disagreeable,* &c.; e. g., Diffĭcĭlĕ dictū (difficult in saying), *difficult to say.*

636. RULE XIV. *Ablative.*—The comparative degree without *quăm* is followed by the ablative; e. g., Clēmentiā dīvīniŭs, *more godlike than clemency.*

OBS.—If *quăm* is expressed, the following noun will be in the same case as that which precedes; e. g., Eurōpă mĭnŏr est quăm Asiă, *Europe is smaller than Asia.*

637. RULE XV. *Infinitive.*—The infinitive sometimes depends upon adjectives; e. g., Dīgnŭs ămārī, *worthy to be loved.*

REM.—Infinitives dependent upon adjectives are generally used as substantives, and as such may be referred to Rule XI. or XII.

SECTION IV.—MODIFIERS OF VERBS.

638. Verbs may be modified,

I. By objects.
II. By adverbial modifiers.

§ 1. *Objects.*

639. Verbs may be modified by objects. These are,

1) The oblique cases of nouns.
2) Infinitives or clauses used as nouns.

640. Verbs may take one or more obliqué cases of nouns as *objects;* e. g., (1) Caiŭs puellăm laudăt, *Caius praises the girl.* (2) Balbŭs puĕrō viăm monstrăt, *Balbus shows the way to the boy.*

641. Rule XVI.—The *accusative* is used as the *direct object* of an action; e. g., Caiŭs puellăm laudăt, *Caius praises the girl.*

642. Rule XVII.—The genitive is used,

1) After verbs of pitying; e. g., Mĭsĕrēmĭnī sŏciōrŭm, *pity the allies.*
2) After verbs of remembering and forgetting; e. g., Mĕmĭnī vīvōrŭm, *I remember the living.*
3) After rēfert and intĕrest; e. g., Intĕrest omniŭm, *it is the interest of all.*

Rem.—Verbs of remembering and forgetting sometimes take the accusative; e. g., Mĕmĭnī Cinnăm, *I remember Cinna.*

643. Rule XVIII.—The dative is used,

1) After essĕ in expressions denoting possession; e. g., Puĕrō est lĭbĕr, *the boy has a book* (lit., *there is a book to the boy*).
2) After the compounds of essĕ, except *possĕ*, to be able; e. g., Mihĭ prōfuĭt, *it profited me.*
3) After the compounds of *bĕnĕ*, *sătis*, and *mălĕ;* e. g., Officiō suō sătĭsfēcĭt, *he has discharged his duty* (lit., *has done enough for*).
4) After the compounds of the prepositions, ăd, antĕ, cŏn, ĭn, intĕr, ŏb, post, prae, sŭb, and sŭpĕr, together with a few others; e. g., Vēnī ŭt mihĭ succurrās, *I have come that you may assist* (succor) *me.*
5) After verbs signifying *to command* or *obey*, *please* or *displease*, *favor* or *injure*, *serve* or *resist*, together with *to indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *believe*, *persuade*, &c.; e. g., Lēgĭbŭs parĕt, *he obeys the laws* (is obedient to the laws).

644. Rule XIX.—The ablative is used,

1) After the deponent verbs, *ūtī*, *frui*, *fungī*, *pŏtīrī*, *vescī*,

dignāri,* and their compounds; e. g., Lactĕ vescuntŭr, *they live upon milk.*

2) After verbs signifying *to abound* or *be destitute of;* e. g., Nēmŏ ăliōrŭm ŏpĕ cărērĕ pŏtest, *no one can be* (do) *without the assistance of others.*

645. Rule XX. *Two Accusatives.*—Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching,* and *concealing,* may take two accusatives, one of the person and one of the thing; e. g., Caesăr frūmentŭm Aeduōs flāgĭtābăt, *Caesar demanded corn of the Aedui.*

646. Rule XXI. *Accusative and Genitive.*— Verbs of *accusing, convicting, acquitting, warning,* and the like, take the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the crime, charge, &c.; e. g., Caiŭm prōdĭtiōnĭs accūsant, *they accuse Caius of treachery.*

Rem.—The genitive is perhaps best explained by making it depend upon the ablative *crīminĕ*, understood. See 214, Note.

647. Rule XXII. *Accusative and Genitive.*—The impersonal verbs of feeling, *mĭsĕrĕt, poenĭtĕt, pŭdĕt, taedĕt,* and *pĭgĕt,* take the accusative of the person, together with the genitive of the object which produces the feeling; e. g., Taedĕt mē vītae, *I am weary of life* (lit., *it wearies me of life*).

648. Rule XXIII. *Accusative and Dative.*—Any transitive verb may take the accusative of the *direct object* and the dative of the *indirect object;* e. g., Balbŭs puĕrō viăm monstrăt, *Balbus shows the way to the boy.*

649. Rule XXIV. *Accusative and two Datives.*—Transitive verbs of *giving, sending, imputing* (dărĕ, mittĕrĕ, vertĕrĕ, &c.), sometimes take a *direct* object in the accusative, together with two *indirect* objects in the dative; e. g., Rēgnŭm suŭm Rōmānīs dōnō dĕdĭt, *he gave his kingdom to the Romans as a present* (for a present).

650. Rule XXV. *Accusative and Ablative.*—Verbs signifying to *separate from,* or *deprive of,* take the accusative of the *direct* object, together with the ablative of that from which it is separated, &c. e. g., Mē lūcĕ prīvant, *they deprive me of light.*

---

* Dīgnāri takes a direct object in connection with the ablative; e. g., Tē hŏnōrĕ dīgnātŭr, *he thinks you worthy of honor.*

651. RULE XXVI. *Two Datives.*—Intransitive verbs signifying *to be*, *to come*, *to go*, and the like, often take two datives, one denoting the object *to which*, and the other the object *for which;* e. g., Caesărī auxĭliō vēnĭt, *he went to the assistance of Caesar.*

652. RULE XXVII. *Dative and Ablative.*—Opŭs est and ūsŭs est, as impersonal verbs signifying need, take the dative of the person and the ablative of the object needed; e. g., Dŭcĕ nōbīs ŏpŭs est, *we need a leader* (lit., *there is need to us of a leader*).

653. Verbs sometimes take an infinitive or clause as object; e. g.,

1. Cŭpĭt pūgnārĕ, *he desires* (what?) *to fight.*
2. Spērō tē essĕ beātŭm, *I hope* (what?) *that you are happy.*
3. Nesciō undĕ sōl īgnĕm hăbeăt, *I know not* (what?) *whence the sun derives its fire.*

654. RULE XXVIII. *Infinitive as Object.*—The infinitive mood, either alone or with other words connected with it, may be used as the object of a verb. (See examples above.)

REM.—The infinitive as *object* is used chiefly after verbs of *perceiving*, *declaring*, *desiring*, and the like.

655. RULE XXIX. *Subject of Infinitive.*—The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; e. g., Spērō tē essĕ beātŭm, *I hope you are happy.*

REM.—In this example *te*, which is the subject of *esse*, is put in the accusative according to rule.

656. RULE XXX. *Dependent Question as Object.*—An *indirect* or *dependent question* may be used as the object of a verb; e. g., Nesciō undĕ sōl īgnĕm hăbeăt, *I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*

657. The verb in dependent questions is put in the subjunctive, as in the above example.

658. RULE XXXI. *Object after Passive Verbs.*—Verbs in the passive voice are followed by the same cases as in the active, except the direct object, which becomes the subject of the passive; e. g., (*Act.*) Balbŭm furtī accūsant, *they accuse Balbus of theft;* (*Pass.*) Balbŭs furtī accūsātŭr, *Balbus is accused of theft.*

659. RULE XXXII. *Agent of Passive Verbs.*—After passive verbs, the agent of the action is expressed by the ablative with *ā* or *ăb*, e. g., Puĕr a Caiō dŏcētŭr, *the boy is taught by Caius;* except,

The second periphrastic conjugation (425), which takes the dative of the agent; e. g., Mihĭ scrībendŭm est, *I must write.*

660. Rule XXXIII. *Impersonal Passive Verbs.*—Verbs which have no direct object in the active voice, are only used impersonally in the passive; e. g., Mihĭ crēdĭtŭr, *I am believed* (lit., *it is believed to me*).

§ II. *Adverbial Modifiers.*

661. Verbs often take adverbial modifiers: these are,

1) Adverbs.
2) Adverbial expressions.

662. Verbs may be modified by adverbs; e. g., Fortĭtĕr pŭgnăt, *he fights bravely.*

See Rule VIII.

Rem.—Adverbial modifiers are the same whether the verb is *active* or *passive.*

663. Verbs may be modified by adverbial expressions: these are,

1) The oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions.
2) Infinitives, or dependent propositions.

664. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) used as adverbial modifiers, may be referred to the following classes, viz.:

1) Adverbial expressions of *manner, means,* &c.
2) Adverbial expressions of *time.*
3) Adverbial expressions of *place.*
4) Miscellaneous adverbial expressions.

665. The oblique cases of nouns (and sometimes of adjectives) may be used as adverbia modifiers denoting *manner, means,* &c.

666. Rule XXXIV. *Manner, Means, &c.*—The *manner* or *cause* of an action, and the *means* or *instrument* employed, are expressed by the ablative; e. g., Dŏmĭnŭm glădiō occīdĭt, *he killed his master with a sword.*

667. Rule XXXV. *Price.*—Price, when expressed by nouns, is usually put in the ablative, and when expressed by adjectives, usually in the genitive; e. g., (1) Avārŭs pătriăm aurō vendĕt, *the avaricious man will sell his country for gold;* (2) Avārŭs pĕcūniăm magnī aestĭmăt, *the avaricious man values money highly.*

668. The oblique cases of nouns may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *time.*

669. Rule XXXVI. *Time.*—Time *when* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition; e. g., Hiĕmĕ ursŭs dormĭt, *the bear sleeps in winter.*

670. Rule XXXVII. *Length of Time.*—Length of time is generally expressed by the accusative; e. g., Caiŭs annŭm ūnŭm vixĭt, *Caius lived one year*

671. The oblique cases of nouns (with or without prepositions) may be used as adverbial modifiers denoting *place.*

672. Rule XXXVIII.—The name of a town where any thing is, or is done, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative; e. g., (1) Caiŭs Cortōnae vixĭt, *Caius lived at Cortona;* (2) Caiŭs Tībŭrĕ vixĭt, *Caius lived at Tibur.*

673. Rule XXXIX.—The name of a place where any thing is, or is done, when not a town, is generally put in the ablative with a preposition; e. g., Ursŭs ĭn antrō dormĭt, *the bear sleeps in a cave.*

674. Rule XL.—After verbs of motion,

1) The place to which the motion is directed, if a town or small island, is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, otherwise by the accusative with one; e. g., (1) Rōmăm vĕnīrĕ, *to come to Rome;* (2) In Itălĭăm vĕnīrĕ, *to come into Italy.*
2) The place from which the motion proceeds, if a town or small island, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition, otherwise by the ablative with one; e. g., (1) Rōmā vĕnīrĕ, *to come from Rome;* (2) Ab Ităliā vĕnīrĕ, *to come from Italy.*

675. Rule XLI.—*Dŏmŭs* and *rūs,* together with the genitives *bellī, hŭmī,* and *mīlĭtiae,* are used like names of towns; e. g., Caiŭs rūrĕ rĕdiĭt, *Caius returned from the country;* Balbŭs ĕt dŏmī ĕt mīlĭtiae fuĭt, *Balbus was with me both at home and on service.*

676. Rule XLII.—The supine in *ŭm,* as a verbal noun in the accusative, follows verbs of motion to express the purpose or object

of that motion; e. g., Mittĭt lēgātōs pacĕm pĕtītŭm, *he sends ambassadors to sue for peace.*

677. The ablative absolute and the oblique cases of nouns with prepositions are used to express various adverbial relations.

678. RULE XLIII. *Ablative Absolute.*—A noun and a participle standing grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence, are put in the ablative absolute; e. g., Caesăr victīs hostĭbŭs, *Caesar having conquered his enemies* (or, *when he had conquered;* lit., *his enemies being conquered*).

REM.—The ablative absolute generally expresses either the adverbial relation of *time* (as in the above example) or that of cause; sometimes, however, it adds an attendant circumstance.

679. RULE XLIV. *Prepositions with Accusative.*—The following twenty-six prepositions govern the accusative; viz., Ad, adversŭs, antĕ, ăpŭd, circā *or* circŭm, cĭs *or* cĭtrā, contrā, ergā, extrā, infrā, intĕr, intrā, juxtā, ŏb, pĕnĕs, pĕr, pōnĕ, post, praetĕr, prŏpĕ, proptĕr, sĕcundŭm, sŭprā, trans, ultrā, versŭs (*rare*).

680. RULE XLV. *Prepositions with Ablative.*—The following eleven prepositions govern the ablative; viz., A (ăb *or* abs), absquĕ, cōrăm, cŭm, dĕ, ē *or* ex, pălăm, prae, prō, sĭnĕ, tĕnŭs.

681. RULE XLVI. *Prepositions with Accusative or Ablative.*—The five prepositions, clăm, ĭn, sŭb, subtĕr, and sŭpĕr, take sometimes the accusative and sometimes the ablative.

REM. 1.—*In* and *sŭb* govern the accusative in answer to *whither* (i. e. after verbs of motion), and the ablative in answer to *where* (i. e. after verbs of rest). *Subtĕr* generally takes the accusative. *Sŭpĕr* takes the accusative after verbs of motion, and also when it signifies *upon*, and the ablative when it signifies *on* or *of* (as of a subject spoken or written about).

REM. 2.—Prepositions in composition often govern the same cases as when they stand alone.

682. Verbs may be modified by infinitives or by dependent propositions.

683. RULE XLVII. *Infinitive as Modifier of Verb.*—The infinitive mood may be used after verbs denoting *custom*, *ability*, and the like; e. g., Nōn făcĕrĕ possŭm, *I am not able to do*, &c.

684. Dependent propositions, as adverbial modifiers, are gene-

rally introduced by conjunctions, and express a great variety of relations, as *time*, *place*, *manner*, *condition*, &c.

685. Dependent propositions take the verb,

1) Sometimes in the indicative; e. g., Itĕr făciēbăm, quŭm hās littĕrās dăbam, *I was making a journey when I gave these letters.*
2) But more commonly in the subjunctive; e. g., Sī quĭd hăbeăt, dăbĭt, *if he has any thing, he will give it.*

Section V.—Modifiers of Adverbs.

686. Adverbs are modified by other adverbs; e. g., Sătĭs bĕnĕ scripsĭt, *he has written sufficiently well.*

687. Prepositions and conjunctions are connectives, and neither modify nor are modified.

688. Interjections are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address, and have no grammatical influence upon the rest of the sentence.

CHAPTER III.

Use of Moods, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.

689. The indicative is used in positive assertions; e. g., Puĕr lūdĭt, *the boy plays.*

Rem.—The indicative is commonly used in principal propositions, but sometimes in dependent ones.

690. The subjunctive is used both in principal and dependent propositions.

691. I. In principal propositions the subjunctive is used,

1) To express a wish or a command; e. g., Scrībăt, *he may write, may he write*, or *let him write.*
2) To express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*; e. g., Dărĕt, *he would give it* (i. e. *if he had it, perhaps*).

692. II. In dependent propositions,

1) With *ŭt*, *nē*, *quō*, *quīn*, *quōmĭnŭs*, to express *purpose* or

consequence; e. g., Vĕnĭt ŭt scrībăt, *he has come to write;* Caiō nihĭl obstăt quōmĭnŭs sĭt beātŭs, *nothing prevents Caius from being happy* (*by which he should be less happy*).

2) With *quŭm* (*cŭm*), when it introduces a *cause* or *reason*, or in any way shows the dependence of one event upon another; e. g., Quae cŭm ĭtă sint, *since these things are so.*

3) With *lĭcĕt*, although, *quăsĭ, tanquăm, ăc sī*, as if, *dŭm, mŏdŏ, dummŏdŏ*, provided, if only, *quamvīs*, however much, however; e. g., Imprŏbŭs ĭtă vīvĭt, *quăsĭ* nesciăt, &c., *the wicked* (man) *lives*, as if *he did not know*, &c.; Nēmŏ, *quamvīs* sĭt lŏcŭplēs, *no one*, however *wealthy he may be.*

4) In conditional sentences, to represent the condition either as *simply possible* or as *impossible;* e. g., Sī quĭd hăbeăt, dăbĭt, *if he has any thing, he will give it.* Sī quĭd hăbērĕt, dărĕt, *if he had any thing, he would give it.*

5) In *indirect* or *dependent* questions; e. g., Nesciŏ undĕ sōl īgnĕm hăbeăt, *I know not whence the sun derives its fire.*

6) In relative clauses, (1) to express *purpose* or *result*, and (2) to define an indefinite antecedent; e. g., (1) Lēgātōs mīsērunt quī *dīcĕrent, they sent ambassadors* to say; (2) Sunt quī *pŭtent, there are* (some) *who* think.

693. *Subjunctive Tenses in Dependent Propositions.*—The subjunctive, (1) when dependent upon a present tense (*pres., perf. def.*, or *fut.*) is put in the *present* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *perfect* to denote a completed action; and (2) when dependent upon a past tense (*imperf., perf. indef.*, or *pluperf.*), in the *imperfect* to denote an incomplete action, and in the *pluperfect* to denote a completed action; e. g.,

1. Nesciŏ quĭd dīcăt, *I know not what he is saying.*
2. Nesciŏ quĭd dixĕrĭt, *I know not what he said.*
3. Nescīvĭt quĭd dīcĕrĕt, *I knew not what he said.*
4. Nescīvĭt quĭd dixissĕt, *I knew not what he had said.*

694. The imperative is used to express a command; e. g., Portas claudĕ, *shut the gates.*

695. The infinitive, which expresses the simple meaning of the verb without reference to person or number, is used,

1) As the subject of another verb; e. g., Diffĭcĭlĕ est jūdĭcārĕ, *it is difficult to judge.*

2) As the object of another verb; e. g., Cŭpiŏ săpĕrĕ, *I desire to be wise.*

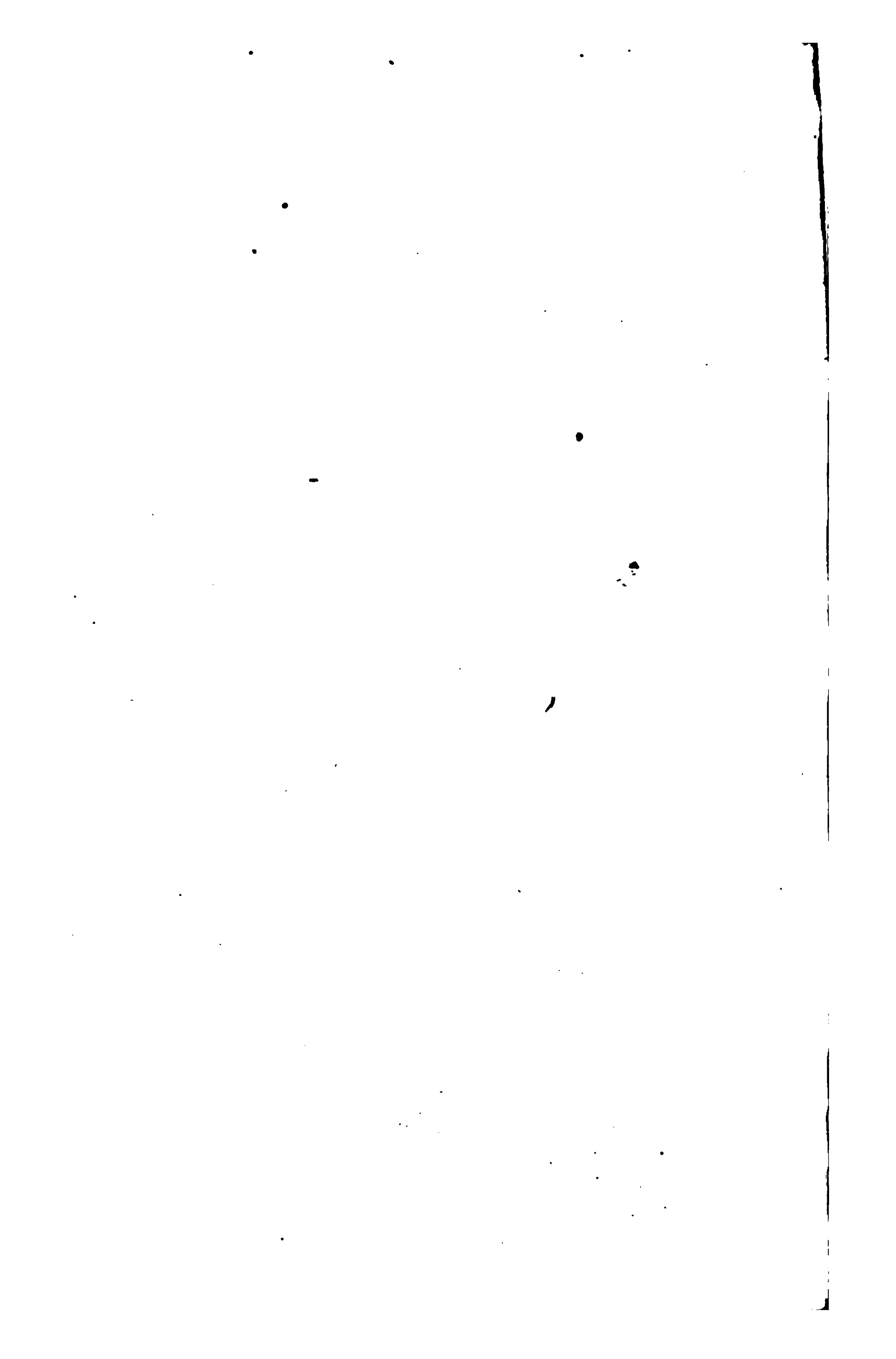
3) As the modifier of an adjective or verb; e. g., (1) Dīgnŭs ămārī, *worthy to be loved;* (2) Nōn făcĕrĕ possŭm; *I am not able to do, &c.*

696. Participles, gerunds, and supines are followed by the various cases of nouns like the other parts of verbs. In regard to their own government, it must be observed,

1) That participles, like adjectives, agree with substantives.

2) That gerunds are governed like the same cases of substantives.

3) That supines, as verbal nouns, are governed like the same cases of other nouns.



DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

	ENGLISH IDIOM.	LATIN IDIOM.
1	To think nothing of.	To reckon at nothing (*nihĭli ducĕre* or *facĕre*).
2.	To value highly.*	To value at a high price (*magni aestĭmāre*).
3.	To think little of.† / To hold cheap.	To value at a little price (*parvi aestĭmāre*).
4.	*No* stability.	*Nothing* of stability (*nihil stabilitātis*).
	Some time.	*Something* of time (*alĭquid tempŏris*).
	Much good.	*Much* of good (*multum boni*).
	How much pleasure.	*How much* of pleasure (*quantum voluptātis*).

REM.—Hence *no*, *some* (when they denote *quantity*, not *number*), *much*, *how much*, are to be translated by *nihil*, *aliquid*, *multum*, *quantum*, followed by the *gen*.

5.	He did it *unwillingly*.	He *unwilling* did it.
6.	*It* is disgraceful to lie.	To lie is disgraceful.
7.	It is the *part* / ——— *duty* / ——— *business* / ——— *mark* / ——— *character* } of a wise man.	It is *of a wise man*.
8.	To condemn a man *to death*.	To condemn a man *of the head*.
9.	As many as *possible*. / ——— *he* can or *could*.	As the most (*quam plurĭmi*).
	The greatest *possible*. / ——— *he* can or *could*.	As the greatest (*quam maxĭmus*).
		[That is, *as many* as the *most*: *as great* as greatest, &c.]
10.	On the *top of* the mountain.	On the mountain *highest*.
	In the *middle of* the water.	In the water *middle* (in *summo* monte; in *media* aqua).

---

* To value *very highly* (*maxĭmi* aestĭmāre).

† The substantive will follow in the *accusative* notwithstanding the *of* for that has nothing to do with the Latin verb.

ENGLISH IDIOM.	LATIN IDIOM.
11. Is going to bed.	Is going *to lie down* (*cubĭtum*, sup.
12. It is hard *to say*.	It is hard *in saying* (difficile est *dictu;* supine).
13. Whilst they were (are, &c.) playing.	During playing (*inter ludendum*).
14. The intention of writing a letter.	The intention of a letter *to-be-written* (scribendae epistŏlae).
15. We must cultivate virtue.	Virtue is *to-be-cultivated* (*colenda* est virtus).
16. Caius must write.	It is to-be-written by Caius (*Caio scribendum est*).
17. We must believe Caius.	It is to-be-believed to Caius (*credendum est Caio*).
18. The ways of expressing the *purpose* are,	
He comes to see the games.	(*a*) Venit ut ludos spectet. (*b*) Venit ludos spectātum (*sup.*). (*c*) Venit ludos spectatūrus. (*d*) Venit ad ludos spectandos. To which add, (*e*) Venit causa (*for the purpose*) ludōrum spectandōrum; and (*f*) Instead of *ut*, the relative may be used: He sent ambassadors, *qui* pacem *petĕrent* (*to sue* for peace).
19. *a*) I may go.	Mihi ire licet (*it is permitted to me* to go).
b) I might *have gone.*	Mihi *ire* licuit (*it was permitted to me* to go).
20. *a*) I ought to go.	Me ire oportet.
b) I ought to have gone.	Me ire oportuit.

CAUTIONS.

---

a. *Him*, *her*, *them* (or *he*, *she*, *they*, when they are to be translated by the *accusative*), must be translated into Latin by the proper case of *suī*, when they and the *nominative of the verb* stand for the *same person*. Also, in the same case, *his*, *hers*, *its*, *theirs*, must be translated by *suŭs*.

b. In a sentence with *that* dependent on a past tense, the perfect is to be translated into Latin by the *present infinitive*, whenever the notion expressed by it is not to be described as *over before the time* of the principal verb.

c. *Would*, *should*, after a past tense are future forms:

{ He *says* that he *will* come.
{ He *said* that he *would* come.

d. *Thing* should be expressed by *res* (fem.), when the adjective alone would leave it doubtful whether *men* or *things* were meant:

Thus, *of many things*, not *multōrum*, but *multārum rerum*.

e. *Cum* is written *after*, and *as one word with* the ablatives me, te, &c.: *mecum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*.

f. Many English verbs *become* transitive by the addition of a *preposition*; for instance, *to smile at*, &c.

g. *Such* in English is often used where *size* is meant, rather than *quality*. It should then be translated into Latin by *tantus*, *quantus*; not *talis*, *qualis*.

h. *That* or *those*, when it stands for a substantive which has been expressed in a preceding clause, is not to be translated.

i. When *that* introduces a *consequence*, *that not* is *ut non*, not *ne*.

That—not { for a *purpose* .... *ne*.
{ for a *consequence* ... *ut non*.

j. After verbs of *fearing*, the Eng. *future* and the *participial substantive* are translated into Latin by the *present* or *imperfect* subjunctive, with *ut* or *nē*.

k. *Who*, *what*, *which*, are often *dependent interrogatives*, especially after verbs of *asking*, *knowing*, *doubting*, &c.

l. ***May, might,*** sometimes mean *can, could,* and must be translated by *possŭm.*

m. The *perf. infin.* must be translated into Latin by the *present infin.* after *might, could, ought,* unless the action is to be represented as *over* before the time to which *might, could,* &c. refer.

n. In English, substantives standing before and spoken of other substantives, are used *adjectively,* and must be translated into Latin by adjectives.

o. ***What*** is sometimes used for *how* (quam); sometimes for *how great* (quantus).

p. ***For*** and *as* are to be untranslated, when the noun that follows can be placed in *apposition* to another noun in the sentence.

q. When *one, two,* &c. mean *one, two,* &c. *apiece,* or *for each,* they must be translated by the *distributive* numerals, *singŭli, bīni,* &c.

r. ***I have*** to do it, must be translated by the part. in *dus.*

(*Eng.*) With whom we *have* to live.

(*Lat.*) With whom *it is to-be-lived* (quibuscum vivendum est).

s. ***It is,*** followed by what is in form the *infin. pass.,* generally expresses *necessity, fitness,* or something *intended.*

t. But *is to be* sometimes means, not *necessity, fitness,* or *intention,* but *possibility;* as, 'the passage *is to be found* in the fifth book,' = the passage *may* or *can* be found in the fifth book.

u. A *present participle* must be translated into Latin by a *perfect participle* (or its substitute, *quum* with *perf.* or *pluperf. subj.*) when the action expressed by it must be *over,* before that expressed by the verb *begins.*

v. The English *present part. act.* is generally translated by the Latin *past partic.,* when the verb is *deponent.*

w. When the action was not done *in,* but only near a town, *at* must be translated by *ad* or *apud.*

x. ***One*** often means *some one* (aliquis) or *a certain one* (quidam).

y. ***Will*** and *would, will not* and *would not,* are often principal verbs, to be translated by *velle* and *nolle* respectively.

They are to be so translated when for

will, *would,* we may substitute

is (are, &c.) *willing,* *was* (were, &c.) *willing.*

z. When an English word is followed by a preposition, consider whether the Latin word to be used is followed by a preposition or by a case and then by what preposition or what case.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A.

A, ăb, abs (*prep. with abl.*), *from, by.*
Abīrĕ, i, ĭt, *to go away, depart.*
Absolvĕrĕ, v, ūt, *to acquit.*
Ac, *and.*
Accēdĕrĕ, cess, cess, *to approach.*
Accĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, cept, *to receive, accept.*
Accĭpĭtĕr, trĭs, *hawk.*
Accūsārĕ, āv, āt, *to accuse.*
Acĕr, ācrĭs, ācrĕ, *sharp, severe.*
Achillēs, ĭs, *Achilles, a Grecian hero.*
Aciēs, ēī, *line of battle.*
Ad (*prep. with acc.*), *to.*
Addūcĕrĕ (*ad* and *ducĕre*), dux, duct, *to lead to.*
Adeō, *so, in such a manner.*
Adessĕ (*ad* and *esse*), fu, fūt, *to be present.*
Adjūmentŭm, ī, *aid, help.*
Adjŭvārĕ, jūv, jūt, *to aid, help.*
Admīrātiŏ, ōnĭs, *admiration.*
Admŏnērĕ, u, ĭt, *to admonish, warn.*
Adūlātiŏ, ōnĭs, *flattery.*
Adūlātŏr, ōrĭs, *flatterer.*
Adventŭs (*advenīre*), ūs, *approach.*
Aedĭfĭcārĕ, āv, āt, *to build.*
Aedĭfĭciŭm, ī, *building, edifice.*
Aenēas, ae, *Aeneas, a Trojan prince.*
Aequĭtās, ātis, *equity, justice.*
Aestās, ātĭs, *summer.*
Aestĭmārĕ, āv, āt, *to value, prize;* māgnī aestĭmārĕ, *to prize highly.*
Afferrŏ (*ad* and *ferre*), attŭl, allāt, *to bring to.*
Agĕr, āgrī, *field.*
Agĕrĕ, ēg, act, *to drive, lead, do;* grātiās ăgĕrĕ, *to render thanks.*
Agnŭs, ī, *lamb.*
Agrĭcŏlă ae, *husbandman.*
Alĭquandŏ, *some time.*
Alĭquĭs, quă, quĭd, *any one, any, some;* ălĭquĭd tempŏrĭs, *some time.*
Aliŭs, ă, ŭd (113. R.), *other.*
Alpēs, iŭm, *the Alps.*
Altŭs, ă, ŭm, *high, lofty.*
Amārĕ, āv, āt, *to love.*
Ambĭtŭs, ūs, *bribery.*
Ambŭlārĕ, āv, āt, *to walk.*
Amĕrĭcānŭs, ă, ŭm, *American.*
Amīcĭtiă, ae, *friendship.*
Amīcŭs, ī, *friend.*
Amittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to lose.*
Amphĭbiŭm, ī, *an amphibious animal.*
Ampliŭs (*adv.*), *more, further.*
Amplŭs, ă, ŭm, *ample, large.*
An, *interrog. part., used in double questions,* 482.
Anchīsēs, ae, *Anchises, the father of Aeneas.*
Anguĭs, ĭs, *m.* or *f.*, *snake.*
Angustiae, ārŭm, *a narrow pass, defile.*
Anĭmăl, ālĭs, *animal.*
Anĭmŭs, ī, *mind, soul.*
Annuĕrĕ, nu, nūt, *to assent, to give assent.*
Annŭs, ī, *year.*
Antĕ (*prep. with acc.*), *before.*
Anteā (*adv.*), *before.*
Antrŭm, ī, *cave.*
Anŭlŭs, ī, *ring.*
Apĕrīrĕ, ĕru, ert, *to uncover, to open.*
Apprŏpinquārĕ, āv, āt, *to approach.*
Aquă, ae, *water.*
Aquārī, āt, *to bring water.*
Aquĭlă, ae, *eagle.*
Ară, ae, *altar.*
Arārĕ, āv, āt, *to plough.*
Arbŏr, ŏrĭs, *f.*, *tree.*
Argentŭm, ī, *silver.*

Armĭgĕr, ī, *armor-bearer*
Arrĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), ĭpu, ept, *to snatch, seize.*
Ars, artĭs, *art.*
Arx, arcĭs, *citadel, tower.*
Ascănĭŭs, ī, *Ascanius, son of Aeneas.*
Asĭnŭs, ī, *ass.*
Aspergĕrĕ (*or* adspergĕrĕ), ers, ers, *to sprinkle.*
At, *but.*
Athēnae, ārŭm, *Athens, city of Greece.*
Athēniensĭs (*Athēnae*), ĕ, *Athenian,* pl., *the Athenians.*
Atquī (*conj.*), *but, now* (as used in reasoning).
Attămĕn, *but, but yet.*
Attingĕrĕ (*ad* and *tangĕre*), tĭg, tact, *to attain, reach.*
Auctŏr, ōrĭs, *author.*
Auctumnŭs, ī, *autumn.*
Audax, ācĭs, *daring, audacious.*
Audīrĕ, īv, īt, *to hear.*
Augērĕ, aux, auct, *to increase.*
Aureŭs (*aurŭm*), ă, ŭm, *golden.*
Aurŭm, ī, *gold.*
Aut, *or;* aut—aut, *either—or.*
Autĕm, *but.*
Auxĭlĭŭm, ī, *aid.*
Avārĭcĭă, ae, *avarice.*
Avārŭs, ă, ŭm, *avaricious.*
Avĭs, ĭs, *bird.*

B.

Balbŭs, ī, *Balbus, a man's name.*
Barbă, ae, *beard.*
Beātē (*beātus*), *happily.*
Beātŭs, ă, ŭm, *happy.*
Bellŭm, ī, *war.*
Bĕnĕ, *well.*
Bĕnĕfĭcĭŭm, ī, *benefit.*
Bĕnignŭs, ă, ŭm, *kind.*
Bĭbĕrĕ, bĭb, bĭbĭt, *to drink.*
Bienniŭm, ī, *two years, space of two years.*
Bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm, *good.*
Brāchiŭm, ī, *arm.*
Brĕvĭs, ĕ, *short.*
Brūtŭs, ī, *Brutus, a Roman consul.*

C.

Cădĕrĕ, cĕcĭd, cās, *to fall.*
Caecŭs, ă, ŭm, *blind.*
Caesăr, ărĭs, *Caesar, a distinguished Roman general.*
Caiŭs, ī, *Caius, a man's name.*
Călămĭtās, ātĭs, *misfortune, calamity.*
Candĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, *white.*
Cănĕrĕ, cĕcĭn, cant, *to sing.*
Cănĭs, ĭs, *c., dog.*
Cantārĕ (*canĕre*), āv, āt, *to sing.*
Căpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, capt, *to take, receive.*
Captīvŭs, ă, ŭm, *captive.*
Căpŭt, ĭtĭs, *head;* căpĭtĭs, *of the head, to death.*
Carpĕrĕ, carps, carpt, *to gather, to pluck, to card.*
Carthāgĭniensĭs (*Carthāgo*), ĕ, *Carthaginian.*
Carthāgŏ, ĭnĭs, *Carthage, an ancient city in northern Africa.*
Castīgārĕ, āv, āt, *to chastise.*
Castră, ōrŭm, *camp.*
Cătēnă, ae, *chain.*
Căvērĕ, cāv, caut, *to take care, to be on one's guard against.*
Cĕlĕbĕr, brĭs, brĕ, *celebrated.*
Cĕlĕrĭtĕr, *quickly.*
Certāmĕn, ĭnĭs, *contest.*
Certŭs, ă, ŭm, *certain.*
Christiānŭs, ī, *Christian.*
Cĭbŭs, ī, *food.*
Cĭcĕrŏ, ōnĭs, *Cicero, the great Roman orator.*
Cingĕrĕ, nx, nct, *to surround.*
Circumdărĕ (*circum* and *dăre*), dĕd, dăt, *to surround.*
Cĭs, *on this side.*
Cīvīlĭs (*cīvĭs*), ĕ, *civil.*
Cīvĭs, ĭs, *citizen.*
Cīvĭtās (*cīvĭs*), ātĭs, *state.*
Claudĕrĕ, claus, claus, *to shut.*
Clēmens, entĭs, *mild, merciful.*
Clēmentiă, ae, *mildness, clemency.*
Clĭpeŭs, ī, *shield.*
Coelŭm, ī, *heaven, the heavens.*
Coenă, ae, *supper, feast.*
Cōgĭtārĕ, āv, āt, *to think, to think about.*
Cōgnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, *known.*

Cŏgnoscĕrĕ, nōv, nĭt, *to ascertain.*
Cŏlĕrĕ, cŏlu, cult, *to till, cultivate, practise.*
Collŏquiŭm, ī, *conference.*
Cŏlŏr ōrĭs, *color.*
Cŏlumbă, ae, *dove.*
Committĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to engage; proeliŭm committĕrĕ, to engage battle.*
Compărārĕ, āv, āt, *to procure, raise, levy.*
Compellĕrĕ, pŭl, puls, *to compel, drive.*
Compescĕrĕ, escŭ, *to restrain, repress.*
Complērĕ, ēv, ēt, *to fill.*
Comprĕhendĕrĕ, nd, ns, *to arrest.*
Concertārĕ, āv, āt, *to contend, quarrel.*
Concĭliŭm, ī, *council, meeting.*
Condĕrĕ (*con* [cŭm] and *dăre*), dĭd, dĭt, *to build, found.*
Condĭtiŏ, ōnĭs, *condition, terms.*
Confŭgĕrĕ (iŏ), fŭg, *to flee for refuge.*
Conjux, ŭgĭs, *spouse, wife, husband.*
Conservārĕ, āv, āt, *to preserve.*
Consĭliŭm, ī, *advice, instruction.*
Conspĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), spex, spect, *to see, discover.*
Constăt (*impers.*), *it is known, is an admitted fact.*
Constĭtuĕrĕ, u, ūt, *to arrange, appoint.*
Construĕrĕ, strux, struct, *to build, construct.*
Consŭl, ŭlĭs, *consul, the Roman chief magistrate.*
Consŭlĕrĕ, sŭlu, sult, *to consult, ask advice.*
Contemnĕrĕ, ps, pt, *to despise.*
Contentŭs, ă, ŭm, *contented, content.*
Contĭnērĕ, u, tent, *to restrain, confine.*
Contĭnuŭs, ă, ŭm, *successive.*
Contrā (*prep. with acc.*), *against.*
Convĕnīrĕ (*cŏn* [cŭm] and *venīre*), vēn, vent, *to come together.*
Convertĕrĕ, t, s, *to turn, convert.*
Cōpiae, ārŭm, *forces.*
Cŏquĕrĕ, x, ct, *to cook, to bake, to ripen.*
Cŏr, cordĭs, *n., heart.*
Cōrăm (*prep. with abl.*), *before, in presence of;* adv., *openly, in person.*
Cŏrōnă, ae, *crown, garland.*
Corpŭs, ŏrĭs, *body.*
Corrĭgĕrĕ, rex, rect, *to correct.*
Corrumpĕrĕ, rūp, rupt, *to mislead, corrupt.*
Crābrŏ, ōnĭs, *wasp.*
Crēbĕr, bră, brŭm, *frequent.*
Crēdĕrĕ, crēdĭd, crēdĭt, *to believe, put confidence in.*
Crescĕrĕ, crēv, crēt, *to increase, to wax* (as moon).
Culpă, ae, *fault, blame.*
Cŭm (*prep. with abl.*), *with.*
Cunctŭs, ă, ŭm, *all as a whole.*
Cŭpĕrĕ (iŏ), īv (i), īt, *to desire.*
Cŭpĭdĭtās, ātĭs, *desire, passion.*
Cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, *desirous of.*
Cūrārĕ (*cura*), āv, āt, *to take care of.*
Currĕrĕ, cŭcurr, curs, *to run.*
Currŭs, ūs, *chariot.*
Custōdīrĕ (*custos*), īv, īt, *to guard.*

D.

Damnārĕ, āv, āt, *to condemn.*
Dărĕ, dĕd, dăt, *to give.*
Dē (*prep. with abl.*), *from, about, concerning.*
Dĕcĕm, *ten.*
Dēcernĕrĕ, crēv, crēt, *to decree decide.*
Dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm, *tenth.*
Dēcĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, cept, *to deceive.*
Dēdĕrĕ, dēdĭd, dēdĭt, *to surrender.*
Dēfendĕrĕ, d, s, *to defend.*
Dēglūbĕrĕ, ups, upt, *to skin, flay.*
Dēlērĕ, lēv, lēt, *to destroy.*
Dēmonstrārĕ, āv, āt, *to show, demonstrate.*
Dēprĕhendĕrĕ, d, s, *to seize, catch.*
Dēterrērĕ, u, ĭt, *to deter, prevent.*
Dēvincĕrĕ, vīc, vict, *to conquer.*
Dīcĕre, dix, dict, *to say.*
Dīdŏ, ōnĭs, *Dido, the foundress of Carthage.*
Diēs, ēī, *day.*
Diffĭcĭlĭs, ĕ, *difficult.*
Dīgnŭs, ă, ŭm, *worthy.*
Dīlănĭārĕ, āv, āt, *to tear in pieces.*
Dīlĭgens, tĭs, *diligent.*

Dīlĭgentia (*dilĭgens*), ae, *diligence.*
Dīmittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to dismiss.*
Discĕrĕ, dĭdĭc, *to learn.*
Discĭpŭlŭs, ī, *pupil.*
Disjungĕrĕ, x, ct, *to separate.*
Dīvĭdĕrĕ, vīs, vīs, *to divide.*
Dīvīnŭs, ă, ŭm, *divine.*
Divitiăcŭs, ī, *Divitiacus, a man's name.*
Dŏcērĕ, u, t, *to teach.*
Dŏlērĕ, u, ĭt, *to grieve.*
Dŏlŏr, ōrĭs, *pain, grief, sorrow.*
Dŏmĭnŭs, ī, *master or owner.*
Dŏmŭs, ūs or ī, *f., house;* dŏmī *at home.*
Dōnārĕ, āv, āt, *to give, present.*
Dōnŭm, ī, *gift.*
Dormīrĕ, īv, īt, *to sleep.*
Dŭbĭtārĕ, āv, āt, *to doubt.*
Dŭcentī, ae, ă, *two hundred.*
Dūcĕrĕ, dux, duct, *to lead.*
Dŭm, *while.*
Dummŏdŏ, *if, but, provided.*
Duŏ, ae, ŏ, *two.*
Duŏdĕcĭm, *twelve.*
Dūrārĕ, āv, āt, *to last.*
Dux, dŭcĭs, *leader, guide.*

E.

Edĕrĕ, ēd, ēs (420), *to eat.*
Edūcĕrĕ (*e* and *ducĕre*), dux, duct, *to lead forth.*
Effĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fect, *to effect, accomplish.*
Egŏ, meī, &c., *I.*
Elĕgantiă, ae, *elegance.*
Elĕphās, antĭs, *m., elephant.*
Emĕrĕ, ēm, empt, *to buy, purchase.*
Enĭm, *for, indeed.*
Enŭmĕrārĕ, āv. āt, *to enumerate.*
Epistŏlă, ae, *letter, epistle.*
Epĭtŏmē, ēs, *abridgment.*
Equĕs, ĭtĭs, *horseman.*
Equĭtātŭs, ūs, *cavalry.*
Equŭs, ī, *horse.*
Ergā (*prep. with acc.*), *towards.*
Ergŏ (*conj.*), *therefore.*
Errārĕ, āv, āt, *to err.*
Erŭdīrĕ, īv, īt, *to instruct.*
Essĕ, fu, fŭt, *to be;* est, *is, it is.*
Et *and;* ĕt—ĕt. *both—and.*

Etiăm, *also, even;* ĕtiăm atquĕ ĕtiăm, *again and again.*
Evertĕrĕ, rt, rs, *to pull down, to overthrow.*
Evŏlārĕ, āv, āt, *to fly away, to flee from.*
Ex (*prep. with abl.*), *from.*
Excĭtārĕ, āv, āt, *to excite, arouse.*
Exclāmārĕ, āv, āt, *to exclaim, cry out.*
Excrŭciārĕ, āv, āt, *to torture.*
Exercērĕ, u, ĭt, *to practise, exercise.*
Exercĭtŭs, ūs, *army.*
Exōrārĕ, āv, āt, *to supplicate.*
Expellĕrĕ, pŭl, puls, *to expel, banish.*
Expōnĕrĕ, pŏsu, pŏsĭt, *to set forth, explain.*
Expūgnārĕ (*ex* and *pūgnāre*), āv, āt, *to storm.*
Exspectārĕ, āv, āt, *to expect.*

F.

Fābŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm (*fabŭla*), *fabulous.*
Făcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fact, *to do, make, act.*
Făciēs, ēī, *face, appearance.*
Făcĭlĭs, ĕ, *easy.*
Fallax (*fallĕre*), ācĭs, *false, deceptive.*
Fămēs, ĭs, *hunger.*
Faustŭlŭs, ī, *Faustulus, an Italian shepherd.*
Făvērĕ, fāv, faut, *to favor.*
Fēlīcĭtās, ātĭs, *happiness.*
Ferrĕ, tŭl, lāt (414), *to bear.*
Ferrŭm, ī, *iron.*
Fĭdēlĭs, ĕ, *faithful.*
Fĭdēs, ĕī, *faith, fidelity;* fĭdĕm viŏlārĕ, *to break one's word.*
Fiĕrī, fact (416), *to become, be made.*
Fĭgūră, ae, *figure.*
Fīliă, ae (D. pl. *fīliābŭs*), *daughter.*
Fīliŭs, ī, *son.*
Fīnīrĕ (*fīnĭs*), īv, īt, *to finish.*
Fīnĭs, ĭs (*m.* and *f.* sing., *m.* pl.), *end.*
Firmŭs, ă, ŭm, *firm.*
Flāgĭtiŭm, ī, *crime.*
Flērĕ, flēv, flēt, *to weep.*
Flōrērĕ (*flos*), u, *to flourish, bloom.*
Flōrescĕrĕ (*florēre*), *to begin to bloom.*

Flōs, ōrĭs, *flower*.
Fluĕrĕ, x, x, *to flow*.
Flūmĕn, ĭnĭs, *river, stream*.
Foedŭs, ĕrĭs, *treaty*.
Fortĭs, ĕ, *brave*.
Fortĭtĕr (*fortĭs*), *bravely*.
Fortūnă, ae, *fortune*.
Frangĕrĕ, frēg, fract, *to break*.
Frātĕr, trĭs, *brother*.
Fraudārĕ, āv, āt, *to defraud*.
Frētŭs, ă, ŭm, *relying on*.
Frīgŭs, ŏrĭs, *cold*.
Frŭtex, ĭcĭs, *m., shrub*.
Fŭgă, ae, *flight*.
Fŭgārĕ (*fŭgă*), āv, āt, *to put to flight*.
Fŭgĕrĕ (iŏ), fūg, fŭgĭt, *to flee*.
Fundŭs, ī, *estate, farm*.
Fungī, funct, *to discharge, fulfil*.
Furtŭm, ī, *theft*.
Fŭtūrŭs, ă, ŭm, *future*.

G.

Gallĭcŭs (*Gallĭă*), ă, ŭm, *Gallic*.
Gallŭs, ī, *a Gaul*.
Gĕnĕr, ī, *son-in-law*.
Gĕnŭs, ĕrĭs, *kind, nature*.
Gĕrĕrĕ, gess, gest, *to carry on, to wage* (as war).
Germānĭă, ae, *Germany*.
Glădiŭs, ī, *sword*.
Glōriă, ae, *glory*.
Graecī, ōrŭm, *the Greeks*.
Grānŭm, ī, *grain*.
Grātiă, ae, *gratitude, favor;* pl., *thanks*.
Grăvĭs, ĕ, *heavy*.
Grex, ĕgĭs, *m. flock, herd*.

H.

Hăbērĕ, u, ĭt, *to have*.
Hăbĭtārĕ (*habēre*), āv, āt, *to inhabit*.
Haedŭs, ī, *kid*.
Hannĭbăl, ălĭs, *Hannibal*.
Hastă, ae, *spear*.
Hērōs, ōĭs, *hero*.
Hesternŭs, ă, ŭm, *of yesterday*.
Hīc, haec, hōc, *this*.
Hiems, ĕmĭs, *winter*.
Histŏriă, ae, *history*.
Hŏmŏ, ĭnĭs, *man*.
Hŏnŏr, ōrĭs, *honor*.
Hortŭlŭs (*hortŭs*), *little garden*.
Hortŭs, ī, *garden*.
Hostĭs, ĭs, *enemy*.
Hūmānŭs, ă, ŭm, *human, natural to man*.
Hŭmĕrŭs, ī, *shoulder*.

I.

Ibī, *there*.
Idĕm, eădĕm, ĭdem, *same*.
Ideō, *therefore*.
Igĭtŭr, *therefore*.
Ignārŭs, ă, ŭm, *ignorant*.
Ignāvŭs, ă, ŭm, *indolent, cowardly*.
Ignĭs, is, *m., fire, heat*.
Ignōrātiŏ, ōnĭs, *ignorance*.
Ignoscĕrĕ, ōv, ōt, *to pardon*.
Illĕ, illă, illŭd, *that, he, she, it*.
Illustrārĕ, āv, āt, *to illumine, to enlighten*.
Immensŭs, ă, ŭm, *immense*.
Immergĕrĕ, rs, rs, *to plunge into*.
Immōbĭlĭs, ĕ, *immovable*.
Immortālĭs, ĕ, *immortal*.
Impĕdīrĕ, īv, īt, *to impede, hinder*.
Impendērĕ, *to overhang, threaten*.
Impĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to command;* impĕrātă, ōrŭm, *commands*.
Impĕrātŏr (*impĕrāre*), ōrĭs, *commander*.
Impĕtŭs, ūs, *attack*.
Impiŭs, ă, ŭm, *impious*.
Imprŏbŭs, ă, ŭm, *bad, wicked*.
Imprūdens, entĭs, *imprudent*.
In (*prep. with acc.* or *abl.*), with acc., *into, to, against;* with abl., *in*.
Incendĕrĕ, d, s, *to set on fire, to burn*.
Inceptŭm, ī, *beginning*.
Incertŭs, ă, ŭm, *uncertain*.
Incōgnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, *unknown*.
Incŏlă (*in* and *colĕre*), ae, *inhabitant*.
Incŏlŭmĭs, ĕ, *safe, uninjured*.
Incrēdĭbĭlĭs (*in* and *credĕre*), ĕ, *incredible*.
Indīcĕrĕ, dix, dict, *to declare* (as war).
Indīgnŭs, ă, ŭm, *unworthy*.
Indoctŭs, ă, ŭm, *unlearned*.

Indulgērĕ, ls, lt, *to indulge.*
Industriă, ae, *industry.*
Inferrĕ, intŭl, illāt (414), *to wage.*
Infrā (*prep. with acc.*), *below.*
Inflīgĕrĕ, flix, flict, *to inflict.*
Ingĕniŭm, ī, *talent, ability.*
Injūriă, ae, *injury, wrong done.*
Innŏcens, tĭs, *innocent.*
Innoxiŭs, ă, ŭm, *harmless.*
Instruĕrĕ, strux, struct, *to arrange, array.*
Intellīgĕrĕ, lex, lect, *to understand.*
Intĕr (*prep. with acc.*), *between, during.*
Interdŭm, *sometimes.*
Interessĕ, fu, fūt, *to be engaged in.*
Interfĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fect, *to kill.*
Intĕrĭm, *in the mean time, meanwhile.*
Intervallŭm, ī, *distance, space.*
Intrā (*prep. with acc.*), *within.*
Inūtĭlĭs, ĕ, *useless.*
Invādĕrĕ (*in* and *vādĕre*), vās, vās, *to invade.*
Invĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent, *to find.*
Invĭdĕrĕ, vīd, vīs, *to envy.*
Invītŭs, ă, ŭm, *unwilling.*
Ipsĕ, ă, ŭm, *self, he himself.*
Iră, ae, *anger.*
Irĕ, īv, ĭt, *to go.*
Irrītārĕ, āv, āt, *to irritate.*
Is, eă, ĭd, *he, she, it, that.*
Istĕ, ă, ŭd, *that.*
Ităliă, ae, *Italy.*
Ităquĕ, *therefore.*
Itĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, *journey, way*
Itĕrŭm, *again.*

J.

Jŭbērĕ, juss, juss, *to direct, order.*
Jūcundŭs, ă, ŭm, *pleasant, delightful.*
Jūdex, ĭcĭs, *judge.*
Jūdĭcārĕ, āv, āt, *to judge.*
Jūrārĕ, āv, āt, *to swear.*
Justŭs, ă, ŭm, *just, fair.*

L.

Lăbŏr, ōrĭs, *labor.*
Lăbōrārĕ, āv, āt, *to labor.*
Lānă, ae, *wool.*
Lătīnŭs, ī, *Latinus, a king of Latium.*
Laudārĕ, āv, āt, *to praise.*
Laus, dĭs, *praise.*
Lăvārĕ, lāv, laut, *or* lăvāt, *to wash.*
Lāvīniă, ae, *Lavinia, daughter of Latinus.*
Lēgātŭs, i, *ambassador.*
Lĕgĕrĕ, lēg, lect, *to read.*
Lĕgiŏ, ōnĭs, *legion, body of foot.*
Lēnĭs, ĕ, *mild, merciful.*
Leŏ, ōnĭs, *lion.*
Lex, lēgis, *law.*
Lĭbĕr, lĭbrī, *book.*
Lībĕr, ă, ŭm, *free.*
Lībĕrī, ōrŭm, *children.*
Lĭcĕt (impers. v.), *it is lawful.*
Lĭcĕt, *although.*
Lĭquescĕrĕ, lĭcu, *to melt.*
Lĭtĕrae, ārŭm (pl.), *letter, epistle.*
Lŏcŭplēs, ētĭs, *wealthy, rich.*
Lŏcŭs, ī (pl. *lŏcī* or *lŏcă*), *place.*
Lŏquī, lŏcūt, *to speak.*
Lūcĕrĕ, lux, *to shine.*
Luctŭs, ūs, *grief, sorrow.*
Lūcŭs, ī, *grove.*
Lūdĕrĕ, lūs, lūs, *to play.*
Lūdŭs, ī, *play, sport.*
Lūgērĕ, lux, *to grieve, mourn, weep for.*
Lūnă, ae, *moon.*
Lŭpŭs, ī, *wolf.*
Luscĭniă, ae, *nightingale.*
Lux, lūcĭs, *light.*

M.

Măcŭlārĕ, āv, āt, *to stain, to blemish.*
Măgistĕr, trī, *master as teacher.*
Măgnĭtūdŏ (*magnus*), ĭnĭs, *greatness, size.*
Măgnŭs, ă, ŭm, *great, large;* măgnī, *at a great price, highly;* măgnŭm est, *it is a great thing.*
Majŏr, ŭs (*comp. of* magnus), *greater larger.*
Mălĕ (*malus*), *badly.*
Mallĕ, mālu (410), *to prefer.*
Mălŭm, ī, *evil, misfortune.*
Mălŭs, ă, ŭm, *bad.*
Mănērĕ, ns, ns, *to remain.*

Mănŭs, ūs, *f.*, *hand, force.*
Mărĕ, ĭs, *sea.*
Mărīnŭs, ă, ŭm, *marine, of the sea.*
Mātĕr, trĭs, *mother.*
Mātrōnă, ae, *matron.*
Maxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (*superl. of magnus*), *greatest, very great;* maxĭmī, *at a very great price.*
Mĕdĭcŭs, ī, *physician.*
Mĕdiŭs, ă, ŭm, *middle, midst of, middle of,* 267.
Mĕl, mellĭs, *honey.*
Mendācium, *lie, falsehood.*
Mens, tĭs, *mind, the reasoning faculty.*
Mensĭs, ĭs, *m.*, *month.*
Mĕtuĕrĕ, u, *to fear.*
Mĕtŭs, ūs, *fear.*
Meŭs, ă, ŭm (*masc. voc. sing.*, mī), *my.*
Mĭcārĕ, u, *to glitter, shine.*
Mīlĕs, ĭtĭs, *soldier.*
Mīlĭtiă, ae, *military service;* mīlĭtiae (*gen. sing.*), *in war, on service.*
Millĕ, *thousand.*
Mĭnŏr, ŭs (*comp. of* parvus), *smaller.*
Mīrābĭlĭs, ĕ, *wonderful.*
Mĭsĕr, ă, ŭm, *miserable, wretched.*
Mĭsĕrērī, ert *or* ĕrĭt, *to pity.*
Mĭsĕrĕt (impers. verb), *it pities, one pities.*
Mittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to send.*
Mōbĭlĭs, ĕ, *movable.*
Mŏdŏ, *only.*
Mŏnérĕ, u, ĭt, *to advise, admonish.*
Mons, tĭs, *m.*, *mountain.*
Monstrārĕ, āv, āt, *to show.*
Mordērĕ, mŏmord, mors, *to bite.*
Mors, tĭs, *death.*
Mortālĭs (*mors*), ĕ, *mortal.*
Mŏvērĕ, mōv, mōt, *to move.*
Mŭliĕr, ĕrĭs, *woman.*
Multĭtūdŏ (*multŭs*), ĭnĭs, *multitude.*
Multŭs, ă, ŭm, *much, many;* multă (neut. pl.), *many things;* multŭm bŏnī, *much good;* multŭm tempŏrĭs, *much time.*
Mūrŭs, ī, *wall.*
Mūtārĕ, āv, āt, *to change*

N.

Năm, *for*
Namquĕ, *for.*
Nārĕ, nāv, *to swim.*
Narrārĕ, āv, āt, *to relate, narrate.*
Narrātiŏ (*narrārĕ*), *narration, narrative.*
Nascī, nāt, *to be born.*
Nātiŏ, ōnĭs, *nation.*
Nĕ, *interrog. particle,* 287 and 288.
Nē (used with *imperat.* and *subj.*), *not.*
Nĕc, *neither;* nĕc—nĕc, *neither—nor.*
Nĕglĭgĕrĕ, lex, lect, *to disregard.*
Nēmŏ (ĭnĭs, *not in good use*), *nobody, no one.*
Nēquĭdĕm, *not even,* generally with the emphatic word between the two parts; as, *nē pŏpŭlŭs quĭdĕm,* not even the people.
Nērĕ, nēv, nēt, *to spin.*
Nescīrĕ, īv, īt, *not to know, to be ignorant of.*
Nīdŭs, ī, *nest.*
Nihĭl, *nothing.*
Nĭmiŭs, ă, ŭm, *too much, excessive.*
Nix, nĭvĭs, *snow.*
Nŏcērĕ, u, ĭt, *to hurt.*
Nollĕ, nōlu (410), *to be unwilling.*
Nōmĕn, ĭnĭs, *name.*
Nōn, *not;* nōn sōlŭm—sĕd ĕtiăm, *not only—but also.*
Nondŭm, *not yet.*
Nonnĕ, *interrog. particle;* expects ans, *yes.* 288, Rem.
Nostĕr, tră, trŭm, *our.*
Nŏvembĕr, brĭs (*abl.* ī), *November.*
Nox, noctĭs, *night.*
Nūbēs, ĭs, *cloud.*
Nullŭs, ă, ŭm (113, R.), *no, no one.*
Nŭm, *interrog. particle;* expects ans, *no.* 288, Rem.
Nŭmă, ae, *Numa, second king of Rome.*
Nunc, *now.*
Nŭmĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to number.*
Nŭmĕrŭs, ī, *number.*
Nunquăm, *never.*
Nuntiārĕ (*nuntiŭs*), āv, āt, *to announce, report.*
Nuntiŭs, ī, *messenger.*

O.

O (interjection), *O.*
O sī, *O if, would that.*

Obessĕ, fu, fŭt, *to be prejudicial to.*
Oblīviscī, oblīt, *to forget.*
Obsĕs, ĭdĭs, *hostage.*
Obstārĕ, stĭt, stāt, *to oppose, prevent.*
Obtĭnērĕ, ĭnu, ent, *to acquire, obtain.*
Occāsiō, ōnĭs, *occasion.*
Occīdĕrĕ (*ob* and *caedĕre*), cīd, cīs, *to kill.*
Occĭdĕrĕ (*ob* and *cădĕre*), cĭd, cās, *to fall.*
Occultārĕ (*occulĕre*), āv, āt, *to conceal, hide.*
Octō, *eight.*
Ocŭlŭs, ī, *eye.*
Odiŭm, ī, *hatred.*
Offĭciŭm, ī, *duty.*
Olĭm, *once, formerly.*
Omnīnō, *in all.*
Omnĭs, ĕ, *all, every.*
Oportĕt (*impers.*), *it behooves, one ought.*
Optiō, ōnĭs, *choice.*
Opŭs, ĕrĭs, *work.*
Ōrātiō, ōnĭs, *oration.*
Ōrātŏr, ōrĭs, *orator.*
Ornārĕ, āv, āt, *to adorn.*
Ovĭs, ĭs, *sheep.*

P.

Pābŭlārī, āt, *to forage.*
Palliŭm, ī, *cloak.*
Părārĕ, āv, āt, *to prepare.*
Pārērĕ, u, ĭt, *to obey.*
Parcĕrĕ, pĕperc, parcĭt, *to spare.*
Pars, tĭs, *part.*
Parvŭs, ă, ŭm, *small, little;* parvŭm, *little, a little;* parvī, *at a low price;* parvī aestĭmārĕ, *to think little of.*
Pastŏr (*pascĕre*), ōrĭs, *shepherd.*
Pătĕr, trĭs, *father.*
Pătriă, ae, *native country.*
Paucŭs, ă, ŭm, *little, few.*
Paupĕr, ĕrĭs, *a poor man.*
Pausăniās, ae, *Pausanias, a distinguished Spartan general.*
Pāvō, ōnĭs, *peacock.*
Pax, pācĭs, *peace.*
Peccārĕ, āv, āt, *to sin, do wrong.*
Pĕcūniă, ae, *money.*
Pendĕrĕ, pĕpend, *to hang.*
Pĕr (*prep. with acc.*), *through.*
Perdĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt, *to waste.*
Perfĭdiă, ae, *perfidy.*
Perfŭgiŭm, ī, *refuge.*
Pĕrīcŭlōsŭs (*perīcŭlŭm*), ă, ŭm, *dangerous.*
Pĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm, *skilful, skilled in.*
Pernĭciēs, ēī, *destruction.*
Perpĕtuō, *for ever.*
Perspĭcĕrĕ (iō), ex, ect, *to perceive, see.*
Persuādērĕ, s, s, *to persuade.*
Pertĭmescĕrĕ, tĭmu, *to fear greatly.*
Pervĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent, *to arrive at, reach.*
Pēs, pĕdĭs, *foot.*
Pĕtĕrĕ, īv *or* i, īt, *to seek.*
Phĭlŏsŏphŭs, ī, *philosopher.*
Piĕtās, ātĭs, *piety, faithfulness.*
Pĭgĕt (*impers.*), *it irks, one is grieved at;* mē pĭgĕt, *I am grieved.*
Piscĭs, ĭs, *m., fish.*
Piŭs, ă, ŭm, *pious.*
Plācārĕ, āv, āt, *to appease.*
Plăcērĕ, u, ĭt, *to please.*
Plānē, *plainly.*
Plūrĭmŭs, ă, ŭm (*superl. of* multus), *very much* or *great;* pl., *very many.*
Poēmă, ătĭs, *poem.*
Poenĭtĕt (*impers.*), *it repents, one repents.*
Poētă, ae, *poet.*
Pōnĕrĕ, pŏsu, pŏsĭt, *to place.*
Pons, tĭs, *m., bridge.*
Pŏpŭlārĭs (*pŏpŭlŭs*), ĕ, *popular.*
Pŏpŭlŭs, ī, *people.*
Portă, ae, *gate.*
Poscĕrĕ, pŏposc, *to demand.*
Possĕ, pŏtu (irreg., 407), *to be able.*
Possīdērĕ, ēd, ess, *to possess.*
Post (*prep. with acc.*), *after.*
Postĕră, ŭm (*mas. not used*), *next, following.*
Postŭlārĕ, āv, āt, *to demand.*
Pŏtīrī, īt, *to get possession of.*
Prae (*prep. with abl.*), *before, in comparison with.*
Praebērĕ, u, ĭt, *to furnish, offer.*
Praeceptŭm, ī, *precept, instruction.*
Praedă, ae, *booty.*
Praedĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, *endued with.*

Praemittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to send before.*
Praepărārĕ, āv, āt, *to prepare.*
Praesens, tĭs, *present.*
Praestans, tis, *excellent.*
Praestăt (*impers.*), *it is better.*
Praetĕrĭtŭs, ă, ŭm, *past;* neut. pl., *the past.*
Prātŭm, ī, *meadow.*
Prĕtiōsŭs, ă, ŭm, *valuable.*
Prīmŭs, ă, ŭm, *first.*
Princeps (*prīmŭs* and *căpĕre*), ĭpĭs, *chief, leader.*
Prīvārĕ, āv, āt, *to deprive.*
Prīvātŭs, ă, ŭm, *private, personal.*
Prō (*prep. with abl.*), *for, before.*
Prŏbŭs, ă, ŭm, *honest.*
Prōdessĕ, prōfu, prōfŭt, *to profit.*
Prōdĭtiŏ, ōnĭs, *treachery.*
Prōdĭtŏr, ōrĭs, *traitor.*
Prōdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct, *to lead forward,* or *out.*
Proeliŭm, ī, *battle.*
Prŏfĭciscī, fect, *to set out, to march.*
Prōmittĕrĕ, mīs, miss, *to promise.*
Prōmŏvērĕ, mōv, mōt, *to move forward, advance.*
Prōpensŭs, ă, ŭm, *inclined to.*
Prŏpiŏr, ŭs (*comp.*), *nearer.*
Prōvĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, *cautious, prudent.*
Prōvinciă (*pro* and *vincĕre*), ae, *province.*
Proxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm, *nearest, next.*
Prūdens, tĭs, *prudent, cautious.*
Prūdentiă (*prudens*), ae, *prudence.*
Pŭdŏr, ōrĭs, *shame, modesty.*
Puellă, ae, *girl.*
Puĕr, ī, *boy.*
Pūgnārĕ (*pugnă*), āv, āt, *to fight.*
Pulchĕr, chră, chrŭm, *beautiful.*
Pūnīrĕ, īv, īt, *to punish.*
Pŭtārĕ, āv, āt, *to think, regard.*

Q.

Quaestiŏ, ōnĭs, *question.*
Quăm (*adv.*), *how;* quăm multī, *how many;* with superl. intensive, as quăm maxĭmŭs, *as great as possible.*
Quăm (*conj.*), *than.*
Quamvīs, *however, however much.*
Quantŭs, ă, ŭm, *how great.*
Quārĕ, *wherefore.*
Quartŭs, ă, ŭm, *fourth.*
Quăsĭ, *as if.*
Quatuŏr, *four.*
Quĕ (always appended to another word), *and.*
Quī, quae, quŏd, *who, which, that.*
Quī, quae, quŏd (*interrog.*), *who, which, what?*
Quiă, *because.*
Quiescĕrĕ, ēv ēt, *to rest, be quiet.*
Quīn (473), *that not, but that.*
Quinquĕ, *five.*
Quintŭs, ă, ŭm, *fifth.*
Quĭs, quae, quĭd (*interrog. subs.*), *who, which, what?*
Quō, *that, in order that.*
Quōmĭnŭs (472), *that not, from.*
Quŏquĕ, *also.*
Quŭm, *when;* quŭm—tŭm, *both—and.*

R.

Rătiŏ, ōnĭs, *reason.*
Rĕcĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, cept, *to receive.*
Rĕcordārī, āt, *to remember, call to mind.*
Rĕdīrĕ, i, ĭt, *to return.*
Rĕdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct, *to lead back.*
Rĕferrĕ, tŭl, lāt, *to relate.*
Rĕgĕrĕ, rex, rect, *to rule, govern.*
Rēgīnă, ae, *queen.*
Rēgnārĕ, āv, āt, *to reign.*
Rēgnŭm, ī, *kingdom, government.*
Rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm, *remaining, the rest.*
Rĕpĕrīrĕ, rĕpĕr, rĕpert, *to find.*
Rēs, rĕī, *thing, affair.*
Rĕsistĕrĕ, stĭt, *to resist.*
Respondērĕ, d, s, *to answer.*
Responsŭm, ī, *answer, response.*
Respuĕrĕ, pu, *to reject.*
Reŭs, ī, *criminal.*
Rĕvertĕrĕ, vert, vers, *to return, turn back.*
Rex, rēgĭs, *king.*
Rhēnŭs, ī, *Rhine.*
Rīdērĕ, rīs, rīs, *to laugh, laugh at.*
Rōbustŭs, ă, ŭm, *robust, strong.*
Rŏgārĕ, āv, āt, *to ask, entreat.*
Rōmă, ae, *Rome.*
Rōmānŭs (*Rōmă*), ă, ŭm, *Roman.*

Rōmŭlŭs, ī, *Romulus.*
Rŏtundŭs, ă, ŭm, *round.*
Ruĕrĕ, ru, rŭt (ruĭt), *to rush.*
Rūmŏr, ōrĭs, *rumor.*
Rumpĕrĕ, rūp, rupt, *to break, violate.*
Rūs, rūrĭs, *n.*, *country.*

S.

Săcerdōs, ōtĭs, *priest, priestess.*
Saepĕ, *often.*
Saevīrĕ (*saevŭs*), īv (i), īt, *to rage.*
Săgittă, ae, *arrow.*
Saltārĕ, āv, āt, *to dance.*
Sălūs, ūtĭs, *safety.*
Sānārĕ, āv, āt, *to cure, reform.*
Sancīrĕ, x, ct, *to enact, confirm.*
Sanguĭs, ĭnĭs, *m.*, *blood.*
Săpĕrĕ, īv *or* i, *to be wise.*
Săpiens, entĭs, *wise.*
Săpientiă, ae, *wisdom.*
Sătiārĕ, āv, āt, *to satisfy.*
Sătĭs, *enough.*
Sceptrŭm, ī, *sceptre.*
Scientiă, ae, *knowledge.*
Scīpiŏ, ōnĭs, *Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*
Scīrĕ, īv, īt, *to know.*
Scrībĕrĕ, ps, pt, *to write.*
Sĕcundŭs, ă, ŭm, *second.*
Sĕd, *but.*
Sēmĕn, ĭnĭs, *seed.*
Sempĕr, *always.*
Sempĭternŭs, ă, ŭm, *lasting, eternal.*
Sĕnātŏr, ōrĭs, *senator.*
Sĕnātŭs (*senex*), ūs, *senate.*
Sĕnectūs, ūtĭs, *old age.*
Sĕnex, sĕnĭs, *an old man.*
Sensŭs, ūs, *feeling, perception.*
Sententiă, ae, *sentiment.*
Sentīrĕ, s, s, *to perceive, to feel* (as pain).
Sĕpĕlīrĕ, pĕlīv *or* i, pult, *to bury.*
Sermŏ, ōnĭs, *discourse.*
Servārĕ, āv, āt, *to keep, observe, save.*
Servīrĕ, īv, īt, *to serve, be slave to.*
Serviŭs, ī, *Servius, a man's name.*
Servŭs, ī, *slave.*
Seu—seu, *whether—or, either—or.*
Sex, *six.*
Sī, *if.*
Sīc, *so.*
Sīcŭt, *so as, just as.*
Simplex, ĭcĭs, *simple.*
Sĭmŭlātiŏ, ōnĭs, *assumed appearance, pretence.*
Sĭnĕ (*prep. with abl.*), *without.*
Sĭnŭs, ūs, *bosom.*
Sīrēn, ēnĭs, *siren.*
Sitīrĕ, īv, īt, *to thirst.*
Sīvĕ—sīvĕ, *whether—or.*
Sōcrătēs, ĭs, *Socrates, the celebrated Grecian philosopher.*
Sōl, sōlĭs, *m.*, *sun.*
Somnŭs, ī, *sleep.*
Sŏnŭs, ī, *sound.*
Sŏrŏr, ōrĭs, *sister.*
Spargĕrĕ, rs, rs, *to scatter, sow.*
Spĕciōsŭs (*species*), ă, ŭm, *specious, plausible.*
Spectārĕ (*specĕre*), āv, āt, *to look at, behold.*
Spērārĕ, āv, āt, *to hope for.*
Spēs, eī, *hope.*
Splendens, tĭs, *shining.*
Spŏliārĕ, āv, āt, *to rob of, despoil.*
Stăbĭlĭtās, ātĭs, *firmness, stability.*
Stătĭm (*stāre*), *immediately.*
Stellă, ae, *star.*
Stŭdērĕ, u, *to study, strive for.*
Stŭdiōsŭs, ă, ŭm, *studious.*
Stultĭtiă, ae, *folly.*
Suādērĕ, s, s, *to advise.*
Subvĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent, *to aid.*
Succurrĕrĕ, curr, curs, *to aid, succor.*
Suĕrĕ, su, sūt, *to sew, stitch.*
Suī, sĭbĭ (257), *of himself, herself, &c.*
Sullă, ae, *Sulla, a man's name.*
Summŭs, ă, ŭm, *highest, greatest;* sometimes *the top of* (267); summŭs mons, *the top of the mountain.*
Sumptŭs, ūs, *expense.*
Sŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to surpass, conquer, to go over.*
Sŭperfĭciēs, ēī, *surface.*
Sŭpervăcuŭs, ă, ŭm, *unnecessary.*
Supplĭcātiŏ, ōnĭs, *thanksgiving.*

Sŭprā (*adv. and prep. with acc.*), *above.*
Sustĭnērĕ, u, tent, *to sustain, endure.*
Suŭs, ă, ŭm, *his, her, &c.*

T.

Tăcērĕ, u, ĭt, *to be silent, to pass over in silence.*
Tăm, *so;* tăm—quăm, *so—as.*
Tămĕn, *yet.*
Tangĕrĕ, tĕtĭg, tact, *to touch.*
Tanquăm, *as if.*
Tantŭs, ă, ŭm, *so great.*
Tărentŭm, ī, *Tarentum, a town in Italy.*
Tardŭs, ă, ŭm, *slow.*
Tarquĭniŭs, ī, *Tarquin, one of the kings of Rome.*
Tectŭm (*tegĕre*), ī, *roof, house.*
Tĕgĕrĕ, tex, tect, *to cover.*
Tempŭs, ŏrĭs, *time.*
Tĕnērĕ, u, t, *to hold.*
Tentārĕ, āv, āt, *to try, attempt.*
Terră, ae, *the earth.*
Terrērĕ, u, ĭt, *to terrify.*
Tertiŭs, ă, ŭm, *third.*
Tībŭr, ŭrĭs, *Tibur, a town in Italy.*
Tĭmērĕ, u, *to fear.*
Tĭmĭdŭs, ă, ŭm, *timid.*
Tondērĕ, tŏtond, tons, *to shear, shave.*
Tōtŭs, ă, ŭm (118, R.), *the whole, the entire.*
Tranquillŭs, ă, ŭm, *calm, tranquil.*
Transīrĕ, i, ĭt, *to go over.*
Trēs, triă, *three.*
Trojānŭs (*Trojă*), ă, ŭm, *Trojan.*
Tū, tuī, *thou.*
Tullia, ae, *Tullia, a queen of Rome.*
× Turpĭs, ĕ, *base, disgraceful.*
Turrĭs, ĭs (acc., *ĕm* or *ĭm*; abl., *ĕ* or *ī*), *tower.*
Tuŭs, ă, ŭm, *your.*

U.

Ullŭs, ă, ŭm (118, R.), *any.*
Undĕ, *whence.*
Unquăm, *ever.*
Unŭs, ă, ŭm (118, R.), *one, single, single one.*
Urbs, ĭs, *city.*
Ursŭs, ī, *bear.*
Usquĕ, *as far as;* usquĕ ăd, *even to.*
Ut (*conj.*), *that, as.*
Utī, ŭs, *to use.*
Utĭlĭs, ĕ, *useful.*
Utĭlĭtās (*ūtĭlĭs*), ātĭs, *utility, advantage.*
Utĭnăm (*conj.*), *would that.*
Utrŭm (*interrog. part.*), *whether;* utrŭm—ăn, *whether—or.*
Uvă, ae, *grape.*

V.

Văcārĕ, āv, āt, *to have leisure for.*
Vĕl (*conj.*), *or;* vĕl—vĕl, *either—or.*
Vellĕ, vŏlu (410), *to wish, be willing.*
Vēlox, ōcĭs, *swift.*
Vēnārī, āt, *to hunt.*
Vendĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt, *to sell.*
Vĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent, *to come.*
Vēr, vērĭs, *n., spring.*
Verbŭm, ī, *word.*
Vĕrērī, ĭt, *to fear.*
Vērŏ, *indeed, truly.*
Vērŭs, ă, ŭm, *true, real;* vērŭm, *truth.*
Vēruntămĕn, *but yet.*
Vestĕr, tră, trŭm, *your.*
Vestĭs, ĭs, *garment.*
Vĕtustŭs, ă, ŭm, *ancient.*
Viă, ae, *way, road.*
Victĭmă, ae, *victim.*
Victōriă, ae, *Victoria.*
Vĭdērĕ, vīd, vīs, *to see;* pass., vĭdērī, *to seem.*
Vĭgĭlārĕ (*vĭgĭl*), āv, āt, *to watch.*
Vīgintī, *twenty.*
Vincĕrĕ, vīc, vict, *to conquer.*
Vincīrĕ, vinx, vinct, *to bind.*
Vincŭlŭm, ī, *chain.*
Vindĭcārĕ, āv, āt, *to avenge.*
Vĭŏlārĕ, āv, āt, *to violate, wrong, break.*
Vĭr, vĭrī, *man, hero.*
Virgŏ, ĭnĭs, *virgin, maiden.*

Virtūs, ūtĭs, *virtue, manliness.*
Vīs, vīs (*acc.*, vīm), *pl.*, vīrēs, vīriŭm, &c., *force, strength.*
Vītă, ae, *life.*
Vītārĕ, āv, āt, *to shun, avoid.*
Vĭtŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to blame, criticise.*
Vīvĕrĕ, vix, vict, *to live.*
Vŏcārĕ, āv, āt, *to call.*
Vŏlārĕ, āv, āt, *to fly.*
Vŏluptās, ātĭs, *pleasure.*
Vox, vōcĭs, *voice.*
Vulnĕrārĕ, āv, āt, *to wound.*
Vulnŭs, ĕrĭs, *wound.*
Vulpēs, ĭs, *fox.*

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

A.

Ability, ingĕniŭm, ī.
About, dē (*with abl.*).
Above, sŭprā (*adv. and prep. with acc.*).
Abridgment, ĕpĭtŏmē, ēs.
Accept, accĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, cept (550).
Accomplish, effĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fect.
Accuse, accūsārĕ, āv, āt.
Achilles, Achillēs, ĭs.
Acquire, obtĭnērĕ, tĭnu, tent.
Acquit, absolvĕrĕ, v, ūt.
Act, v., făcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fact.
Admiration, admīrātiŏ, ōnĭs.
Admonish, mŏnērĕ, u, ĭt, admŏnērĕ, &c.
Adorn, ornārĕ, āv, āt.
Advance, prōmŏvērĕ, mōv, mōt.
Advantage, ūtĭlĭtās, ātĭs.
Advice, consĭliŭm, ī.
Advise, suādērĕ, s, s; mŏnērĕ, u, ĭt.
Aeneas, Aenēās, ae.
Affair, rēs, rĕī.
After, post (*with acc.*).
Again, ĭtĕrŭm.
Again and again, ĕtiăm atquĕ ĕtiăm.
Against, ĭn (*acc.*); contrā (*acc.*).
Aid, s., adjūmentŭm, ī; auxĭliŭm, ī.
Aid, v., subvĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent, adjŭvārĕ, jūv, jūt.
All (*as a whole*), cunctŭs, ă, ŭm.
All (*every*), omnĭs, ĕ.
Alps, Alpēs, iŭm.
Also, ĕtiăm, quŏquĕ.
Altar, ārā, ae.
Although, lĭcĕt.
Always, sempĕr.
Ambassador, lēgātŭs, ī.
American, Amĕrĭcānŭs, ă, ŭm.
Amphibious animal, amphĭbiŭm, ī.
Ample, amplŭs, ă, ŭm.
Anchises, Anchīsēs, ae.
Ancient, vĕtustŭs, ă, ŭm.
And, ĕt, quĕ (*enclitic*), āc.
Anger, īră, ae.
Animal, ănĭmăl, ālĭs.
Announce, nuntiārĕ, āv, āt (540).
Answer, s., responsŭm, ī.
Answer, v., respondērĕ, d, s.
Any, ullŭs, ă, ŭm (113, R.).
Any one, ălĭquĭs, ă, quĭd.
Appearance, făciēs, ēī.
Appease, plācārĕ, āv, āt.
Appoint, constĭtuĕrĕ, u, ūt.
Approach, s., adventŭs, ūs (521).
Approach, v., apprŏpinquārĕ, āv, āt; accēdĕrĕ, cess, cess.
Arm, brāchiŭm, ī.
Armor-bearer, armĭgĕr, ī.
Army, exercĭtŭs, ūs.
Arouse, excĭtārĕ, āv, āt.
Arrange, constĭtuĕrĕ, u, ūt.
Arrange, array, instruĕrĕ, ux, uct.
Arrest, comprĕhendĕrĕ, d, s.
Arrival, adventŭs, ūs (521).
Arrive at, pervĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent.
Arrow, săgittă, ae.
Art, ars, artĭs.
As, ŭt.
As far as, usquĕ.
As if, quăsĭ, tanquăm.
As possible, quăm with superl. (309).
Ascanius, Ascănius, ī.
Ascertain, cōgnoscĕrĕ, nōv, nĭt.
Ask, rŏgārĕ, āv, āt.
Ask advice, consŭlĕrĕ, lu, lt.
Ass, asĭnŭs, ī.
Assemble, convĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent (550).
Assent, give assent, annuĕrĕ, u, ūt.
Assumed appearance, sĭmŭlātiŏ, ōnĭs.

At a high price, magnī; *at a very high price*, maximī.
At a low price, parvī.
At home, dŏmī.
Athenian, Athēniensĭs, ĕ.
Athens, Athēnae, ārŭm.
Attack, impĕtŭs, ūs.
Attain, attingĕrĕ, tĭg, tact.
Attempt, tentārĕ, āv, āt.
Audacious, audax, ācĭs.
Author, auctŏr, ōrĭs.
Autumn, auctumnŭs, ī.
Avarice, ăvārĭtiă, ae.
Avaricious, ăvārŭs, ă, ŭm.
Avenge, vindĭcārĕ, āv, āt.
Avoid, vītārĕ, āv, āt.

B.

Bad, imprŏbŭs, ă, ŭm; mălŭs, ă, ŭm.
Badly, mălĕ.
Bake, cŏquĕrĕ, cox, coct.
Balbus, Balbŭs, ī.
Banish, expellĕrĕ, pŭl, puls.
Base, turpĭs, ĕ.
Battle, proeliŭm, ī.
Be, essĕ, fu, fūt.
Be able, possŏ, pŏtu.
Be born, nascī, nāt.
Be engaged in, intĕressĕ, fu, fūt.
Be ignorant of, nescīre, īv (i), īt.
Be made, fĭĕrī, fact.
Be on one's guard against, căvērĕ, cāv, caut.
Be prejudicial to, ŏbessĕ, fu, fūt.
Be present, ădessĕ, fu, fūt.
Be quiet, quiescĕrĕ, quiēv, quiēt.
Be silent, tăcērĕ, u, ĭt.
Be slave to, servīrĕ, īv, īt.
Be unwilling, nollĕ, nōlu.
Be willing, vellĕ, vŏlu.
Be wise, săpĕrĕ, īv *or* i.
Bear, s., ursŭs, ī.
Bear, v., ferrĕ, tŭl, lāt.
Beard, barbă, ae.
Beautiful, pulchĕr, chră, chrŭm.
Because, quiă.
Become, fĭĕrī, fact.
Before (adv.), anteā.
Before (prep.), antĕ, cōrăm, prae, prŏ.
Beg for, sue for, pĕtĕrĕ, īv (i), īt.
Begin to bloom, flōrescĕrĕ (544).
Beginning, inceptŭm, ī.
Behold, spectārĕ, āv, āt.
Believe, crēdĕrĕ, crēdĭd, crēdĭt.
Below, infrā (with acc.).
Benefit, bĕnĕfĭciŭm, ī.
Between, intĕr (with acc.).
Bind, vincīrĕ, vinx, vinct.
Bird, ăvĭs, ĭs, *f*.
Bite, mordēre, mŏmord, mors.
Blame, s., culpă, ae.
Blame, v., vĭtŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Blind, caecŭs, ă, ŭm.
Blood, sanguĭs, ĭnĭs, *m*.
Bloom, flōrērĕ, u.
Body, corpŭs, ŏrĭs.
Book, lĭbĕr, lĭbrī.
Booty, praedă.
Bosom, sĭnŭs, ūs.
Both—and, ĕt—ĕt; quŭm—tŭm.
Boy, puĕr, ī.
Brave, fortĭs, ĕ.
Bravely, fortĭtĕr.
Break, frangĕrĕ, frēg, fract; rumpĕrĕ, rūp, rupt; viŏlārĕ, āv, āt: *break one's word*, fĭdĕm viŏlārĕ.
Bribery, ambĭtŭs, ūs.
Bridge, pons, tĭs, *m*.
Bring, bring to, afferrĕ, attŭl, allāt.
Bring water, ăquārī, āt.
Brother, frātĕr, trĭs.
Brutus, Brūtŭs, ī.
Build, aedĭfĭcārĕ, āv, āt; construĕrĕ, x, ct; condĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt.
Building, aedĭfĭciŭm, ī.
Burn, incendĕrĕ, d, s.
Bury, sĕpĕlīrĕ, īv (i), pult.
But, sĕd, ăt, autĕm.
But, now (in reasoning), atquī.
But, but yet, attămĕn, vēruntămĕn.
But that, quīn.
Buy ĕmĕrĕ, ēm, empt.
By (with voluntary agent), ā, ăb, abs, *in other cases indicated by abl.*

C.

Caesar, Caesăr, ărĭs.
Caius, Caiŭs, ī.
Calamity, călămĭtās, ātis.
Call, vŏcārĕ, āv, āt.
Call to mind, rĕcordārī, āt.
Calm, tranquillŭs, ă, ŭm.

Camp, castrā, ōrŭm.
Captive, captīvŭs, ī.
Card, carpĕrĕ, ps, pt.
Carry, ferrĕ, tŭl, lāt.
Carry on (*as war*), gĕrĕrĕ, gess, gest.
Carthage, Carthāgŏ, ĭnĭs.
Carthaginian, Carthāgĭniensĭs, ĕ.
Catch, dēprĕhendĕrĕ, d, s.
Cautious, prūdens, tĭs; prōvĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.
Cavalry, equĭtātŭs, ūs.
Cave, antrŭm, ī.
Celebrated, cĕlĕbĕr, brĭs, brĕ.
Censure, vĭtŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Certain, certŭs, ă, ŭm.
Chain, vincŭlŭm, ī; cătēnă, ae.
Change, mūtārĕ, āv, āt.
Chariot, currŭs, ūs.
Chastise, castīgārĕ, āv, āt.
Chief, princeps, cĭpĭs.
Children, līberī, ōrŭm.
Choice, optiŏ, ōnĭs.
Christian, Christiānŭs, ī.
Cicero, Cĭcĕrŏ, ōnĭs.
Citadel, arx, arcĭs.
Citizen, cīvĭs, ĭs.
City, urbs, urbĭs.
Civil, cīvīlĭs, ĕ (528).
Clemency, clēmentiă, ae.
Cloak, palliŭm, ī.
Cloud, nūbēs, is.
Cold, frīgŭs, ŏrĭs.
Collect, compărārĕ, āv, āt.
Color, cŏlŏr, ōrĭs.
Come, vĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent.
Come together, convĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent.
Command, v., impĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Commands, s., impĕrātă, ōrŭm.
Commander, impĕrātŏr, ōrĭs (521).
Compel, compellĕrĕ, pŭl, puls.
Conceal, occultārĕ, āv, āt.
Concerning, dē (*with abl.*).
Condemn, damnārĕ, āv, āt.
Condition, condĭtiŏ, ōnĭs.
Conference, collŏquiŭm, ī.
Confine, contĭnērĕ, tĭnu, tent.
Confirm, sancīrĕ, sanx, sanct.
Conquer, sŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt; vincĕrĕ, vīc, vict; dēvincĕrĕ, vīc, vict.
Construct, construĕrĕ, x, ct.
Consul, consŭl, ŭlĭs.
Consult, consŭlĕrĕ, lu, lt.
Contend, concertārĕ, āv, āt.
Contented, contentŭs, ă, ŭm.
Contest, certāmĕn, ĭnĭs.
Convert, convertĕrĕ, t, s.
Cook, cŏquĕrĕ, cox, coct.
Correct, corrĭgĕrĕ, rex, rect.
Corrupt, corrumpĕrĕ, rūp, rupt.
Council, concĭliŭm, ī.
Country, rūs, rūrĭs.
Cover, tĕgĕrĕ, tex, tect.
Cowardly, ignāvŭs, ă, ŭm.
Crime, flāgĭtiŭm, ī.
Criminal, reŭs, ī.
Criticise, vĭtŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Crown, s., cŏrōnă, ae.
Crown, crown with a garland, cŏrōnā cingĕrĕ, nx, nct.
Cry out, exclāmārĕ, āv, āt.
Cultivate, cŏlĕrĕ, cŏlu, cult.
Cure, sānārĕ āv, āt.

D.

Dance, saltārĕ, āv, āt.
Dangerous, pĕrīcŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm.
Daring, audax, ācĭs.
Daughter, fīliă, ae.
Day, diēs, ēī.
Death, mors, tĭs.
Deceive, dēcĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, cept.
Deceptive, fallax, ācĭs.
Decide, dēcernĕrĕ, crēv, crēt.
Declare, indīcĕrĕ, dix, dict; *declare war*, bellŭm indīcĕrĕ.
Decree, dēcernĕrĕ, crēv, crēt.
Defend, dēfendĕrĕ, d, s.
Defile, angustiae, ārŭm.
Defraud, fraudārĕ, āv, āt.
Delightful, jūcundŭs, ă, ŭm.
Demand, poscĕrĕ, pŏposc; postŭlārĕ, āv, āt.
Demonstrate, dēmonstrare, āv, āt.
Depart, abīrĕ, i, ĭt.
Deprive, prīvārĕ, āv, āt.
Derive, *have*, hăbērĕ, u, ĭt.
Desire, s., cŭpĭdĭtās, ātĭs.
Desire, v., cŭpĕrĕ (iŏ), īv *or* i, īt.
Desirous of, cŭpĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.
Despoil, spŏliārĕ, āv, āt.
Destroy, dēlērĕ, ēv, ēt.
Destruction, pernĭciēs, ēī.
Deter, dēterrērĕ, u, ĭt.

Dido, Dīdō, ōnis.
Difficult, diffĭcĭlĭs, ĕ.
Diligence, dīlĭgentiă, ae.
Diligent, dīlĭgens, tĭs.
Direct, *order*, jŭbērĕ, juss, juss.
Discharge, fungī, funct.
Discourse, sermŏ, ōnĭs.
Discover, conspĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), spex, spect.
Disgraceful, turpĭs, ĕ.
Dismiss, dīmittĕrĕ, mīs, miss.
Disregard, nĕglĭgĕrĕ, lex, lect.
Distance, intervallŭm, ī.
Divide, dīvĭdĕrĕ, vīs, vīs.
Divine, dīvīnŭs, ă, ŭm.
Divitiacus, Divitiăcŭs, ī.
Do, făcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fact.
Do good to, prōdessĕ, prōfu, prōfŭt.
Do wrong, peccārĕ, āv, āt.
Dog, cănĭs, ĭs.
Doubt, dŭbĭtārĕ, āv, āt.
Dove, cŏlumbă, ae.
Drink, bĭbĕrĕ, bĭb, bĭbĭt.
Drive, ăgĕrĕ, ēg, act; compellĕrĕ, pŭl, puls.
During, inter (*with acc.*).
Duty, offĭciŭm, ī.
Dwell, hăbĭtārĕ, āv, āt.

E.

Eagle, aquĭlă, ae.
Earth, terră, ae.
Easy, făcĭlĭs, ĕ.
Eat, ĕdĕrĕ, ēd, ēs.
Edifice, aedĭfĭciŭm, ī.
Effect, effĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fect.
Eight, octŏ.
Either—or, aut—aut.
Elegance, ēlĕgantiă, ae.
Elephant, ĕlĕphās, antĭs;
Enact, sancīrĕ, x, ct.
End, fīnĭs, ĭs, *m.* and *f.*
Endued with, praedĭtŭs, ă, ŭm.
Endure, sustĭnērĕ, tĭnu, tent; ferrĕ, tŭl, lāt.
Enemy, hostĭs, ĭs, *c.*
Engage (*as battle*), committĕrĕ, mīs, miss; *engage battle*, proeliŭm committĕrĕ.
Enjoy, fruī, fruct (fruĭt).
Enlighten, illustrārĕ, āv, āt.
Enough, sătĭs.
Entire, tōtŭs, ă, ŭm (113, R.).
Entreat, rŏgārĕ, āv, āt.
Enumerate, ēnŭmĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Envy, invĭdērĕ, vīd, vīs.
Epistle, ĕpistŏlă, ae; lītĕrae, ārŭm.
Equity, aequĭtās, ātĭs.
Err, errārĕ, āv, āt.
Estate, fundŭs, ī.
Eternal, sempĭternŭs, ă, ŭm.
Even, ĕtiăm.
Even to, usquĕ ăd.
Ever, unquăm.
Every, omnĭs, e.
Evil, mălŭm, ī.
Excellent, praestans, tĭs.
Excessive, nĭmiŭs, ă, ŭm.
Excite, excĭtārĕ, āv, āt.
Exclaim, exclāmārĕ, āv, āt.
Exercise, exercērĕ, u, ĭt.
Expect, exspectārĕ, āv, āt.
Expel, expellĕrĕ, pŭl, puls.
Expense, sumptŭs, ūs.
Explain, expōnĕrĕ, pŏsu, pŏsĭt.
Eye, ŏcŭlŭs, ī.

F.

Fabulous, făbŭlōsŭs, ă, ŭm.
Face, făciēs, ēī.
Faith, fĭdēs, ĕī.
Faithful, fĭdēlĭs, ĕ.
Faithfulness, piĕtās, ātĭs.
Fall, cădĕrĕ, cĕcĭd, cās; occĭdĕrĕ, cĭd, cās.
False, fallax, ācĭs (535).
Falsehood, mendāciŭm, ī.
Farm, fundŭs, ī.
Father, pătĕr, pătrĭs.
Fault, culpă, ae.
Faustulus, Faustŭlŭs, ī.
Favor, s., grātiă, ae.
Favor, v., făvērĕ, fāv, faut.
Fear, s., mĕtŭs, ūs.
Fear, v., tĭmērĕ, u; mĕtuĕrĕ, u, ūt; vĕrērī, ĭt.
Fear greatly, pertĭmescĕrĕ, mu.
Feast, coenă, ae.
Feel (*as pain, &c.*), sentīrĕ, s, s.
Feeling, sensŭs, ūs.
Few, paucī, ae, ă.
Fidelity, fĭdēs, ĕī.
Field, ăgĕr, ăgrī.

Fifth, quintŭs, ă, ŭm.
Fight, pūgnārĕ, āv, āt.
Figure, fĭgūră, ae.
Fill, complērĕ, ēv, ēt.
Find, invĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent; rĕpĕrīrĕ, rĕpĕr, rĕpert.
Fine, beautiful, pulchĕr, chră, chrŭm.
Finish, fīnīrĕ, īv, ĭt (540).
Fire, ignĭs, ĭs, *m.*
Firm, firmŭs, ă, ŭm.
Firmness, stăbĭlĭtās, ātĭs.
First, prīmŭs, ă, ŭm.
Fish, piscĭs, ĭs, *m.*
Five, quinquĕ.
Flatterer, ădūlātŏr, ōrĭs.
Flattery, ădūlātiŏ, ōnĭs.
Flay, dēglūbĕrĕ, ps, pt.
Flee, fŭgĕrĕ (iŏ), fūg, fŭgĭt.
Flee for refuge, confŭgĕrĕ (iŏ), fūg.
Flee from, ēvŏlārĕ, āv, āt.
Flight, fŭgă, ae.
Flock, grex, grĕgĭs, *m.*
Flourish, flōrērĕ, u.
Flow, fluĕrĕ, x, x.
Flower, flōs, ōrĭs.
Fly, vŏlārĕ, āv, āt.
Fly away, ēvŏlārĕ, āv, āt.
Following, postĕră, ŭm (*masc. nom. not used*).
Folly, stultĭtiă, ae.
Food, cĭbŭs, ī.
Foot, pēs, pĕdĭs.
For (*conj.*), ĕnĭm, năm, namquĕ.
For (*prep.*), prō (*with abl.*).
For ever, perpĕtuŏ.
Forage, pābŭlārī, āt.
Force, mănŭs, ūs vĭs, vis (*pl.* vīrēs).
Forces, cōpiae, ārŭm.
Forget, oblīviscī, oblīt.
Formerly, ōlĭm.
Fortune, fortūnă, ae.
Found, condĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt (550).
Four, quătuŏr.
Fourth, quartŭs, ă, ŭm.
Fox, vulpēs, ĭs.
Free, lībĕr, ă, ŭm.
Frequent, crēbĕr, bră, brŭm.
Friend, ămīcŭs, ī.
Friendship, ămīcĭtiă, ae.
Frighten, terrērĕ, u, ĭt.
From, ā, ăb, abs, dē, ex, *and sometimes before participial nouns*, quōmĭnŭs.
Fulfil, fungī, funct.
Furnish, praebērĕ, u, ĭt.
Further, ampliŭs.
Future, fŭtūrŭs, ă, ŭm.

G.

Gallic, Gallĭcŭs, ă, ŭm.
Game, lūdŭs, ī.
Garden, hortŭs, ī.
Garland, cŏrōnă, ae.
Garment, vestĭs, ĭs.
Gate, portă, ae.
Gather, carpĕrĕ, ps, pt.
Gaul, a Gaul, Gallŭs, ī.
Germany, Germāniă, ae.
Get possession of, pŏtīrī, ĭt.
Gift, dōnŭm, ī.
Girl, puellă, ae.
Give, dărĕ, dĕd, dăt; dōnārĕ, āv, āt.
Glitter, mĭcārĕ, u.
Glory, glōriă, ae.
Go, īrĕ, īv *or* ī, ĭt.
Go away, ăbīrĕ, i, ĭt.
Go over, transīrĕ, i, ĭt; sŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Gold, aurŭm, ī.
Golden, aureŭs, ă, ŭm.
Good, bŏnŭs, ă, ŭm.
Govern, rĕgĕrĕ, rex, rect.
Government, rēgnŭm, ī
Grain, grānŭm, ī.
Grape, ūvă, ae.
Gratitude, grātiă, ae.
Great, māgnŭs, ă, ŭm; *at a great price*, māgnī; *it is a great thing*, māgnŭm est.
Greater, majŏr, ŭs.
Greatest, highest, summŭs, ă, ŭm.
Greatest, very great, maxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm; *at a very great price*, maxĭmī.
Greatness, māgnĭtūdŏ, ĭnĭs.
Greeks, Graecī, ōrŭm.
Grief, dŏlŏr, ōrĭs; luctŭs, ūs.
Grieve, dŏlērĕ, u, ĭt; lūgērĕ, lux.
Grove, lūcŭs, ī.
Guard, custōdīrĕ, īv, ĭt (540).
Guide, dux, dŭcĭs.

H.

Hand, mănŭs, ūs.
Hang, pendērĕ, pĕpend.
Hannibal, Hannĭbăl, ălĭs.
Happily, beātē.
Happiness, fēlīcĭtās, ātĭs.
Happy, beātŭs, ă, ŭm.
Harmless, innoxiŭs, ă, ŭm.
Hatred, ŏdiŭm, ī.
Have, hăbērĕ, u, ĭt.
Hawk, accĭpĭtĕr, trĭs.
He himself, ipsĕ, ă, ŭm.
He, she, it, illĕ, ă, ŭd.
He, she, or *it is*, est.
Head, căpŭt, ĭtĭs.
Hear, audīrĕ, īv, īt.
Heart, cŏr, cordĭs, *n.*
Heat, īgnĭs, ĭs, *m.*
Heaven, the heavens, coelŭm, ī.
Heavy, grăvĭs, ĕ.
Help, *s.*, adjūmentŭm, ī.
Help, *v.*, adjŭvārĕ, jūv, jūt.
Herd, grex, grĕgĭs, *m.*
Hero, vĭr, vĭrī; hērōs, ōĭs.
Hide, occultāre, āv, āt.
High, altŭs, ă, ŭm.
Highest, summŭs, ă, ŭm.
Hinder, impĕdīrĕ, īv (i), īt.
His, her, its, &c., suŭs, ă, ŭm.
History, hĭstŏriă, ae.
Hold, tĕnērĕ, u, tent.
Home, dŏmŭs, ūs *or* ī, *f.*
Honest, prŏbŭs, ă, ŭm.
Honey, mĕl, mellĭs.
Honor, hŏnŏr, ōrĭs.
Hope, *s.*, spēs, ĕī.
Hope, hope for, spērārĕ, āv, āt.
Horse, ĕquŭs, ī.
Horseman, ĕquĕs, ĭtĭs.
Hostage, obsĕs, ĭdĭs.
House, tectŭm, ī; dŏmŭs, ūs *or* ī, *f.*
How, quăm; *how many*, quăm multī.
How great, quantŭs, ă, ŭm; *how much*, quantŭm (*with gen.*).
However, however much, quamvīs.
Human, hūmānŭs, ă, ŭm.
Hunger, fămēs, ĭs.
Hunt, vēnārī, āt.
Hurt, nŏcērĕ, u, ĭt.
Husband, conjux, ŭgĭs.
Husbandman, ăgrĭcŏlă, ae.

I.

I, ĕgŏ, meī.
If, sī, dummŏdŏ.
Ignorance, īgnōrātiŏ, ōnĭs.
Ignorant, īgnārŭs, ă, ŭm.
Illumine, illustrārĕ, āv, āt.
Immediately, stătĭm.
Immense, immensŭs, ă, ŭm.
Immortal, immortālĭs, ĕ.
Immovable, immōbĭlĭs, ĕ.
Impede, impĕdīrĕ, īv (i), īt.
Impious, impiŭs, ă, ŭm.
Imprudent, imprūdens, tĭs.
In, ĭn (*with abl.*).
In all, omnīnŏ.
In comparison with, præ.
In order that, quō.
In person, in presence of, cōrăm.
In the mean time, intĕrĭm.
In such a manner, ădeō.
Inclined to, prōpensŭs, ă, ŭm.
Increase, augērĕ, aux, auct; crescĕrĕ crēv, crēt.
Incredible, incrēdĭbĭlĭs, ĕ. (535).
Indeed, ĕnĭm, vērŏ.
Indolent, īgnāvŭs, ă, ŭm.
Indulge, indulgērĕ, ls, lt.
Industry, industriă, ae.
Inflict, inflīgĕrĕ, x, ct.
Inhabit, hăbĭtārĕ, āv, āt
Inhabitant, incŏlă, ae, (560.)
Injury, injūriă, ae.
Innocent, innŏcens, tĭs.
Instruct, ērŭdīrĕ, īv, īt.
Instruction, consĭliŭm, ī: præceptŭm, ī.
Into, ĭn (*with acc.*).
Invade, invādĕrĕ, vās, vās, (550.)
Invite, call, vŏcārĕ, āv, āt.
Iron, ferrŭm, ī.
Irritate, irrītārĕ, āv, āt.
It behooves, ŏportĕt.
It is better, præstăt.
It is well known, is an admitted fact, constăt.
It is lawful, lĭcĕt.
It pities, one pities, mĭsĕrĕt.
It repents, one repents, pœnĭtĕt.
Italy, Ităliă, ae.

J.

Journey, ĭtĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, *n.*
Judge, *s.*, jūdex, ĭcĭs.
Judge, *v.*, jūdĭcārĕ, āv, āt.
Just, justŭs, ă, ŭm.
Just as, sīcŭt.
Justice, æquĭtās, ātĭs.

K.

Keep, servārĕ, āv, āt.
Kid, hædŭs, ī.
Kill, occīdĕrĕ, cīd, cīs; interfĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fect.
Kind, *sort*, *s.*, gĕnŭs, ĕrĭs.
Kind, *a.*, bĕnīgnŭs, ă, ŭm.
King, rex, rēgĭs.
Kingdom, rēgnŭm, ī.
Know, scīrĕ, scīv, scīt.
Knowledge, scientĭă, ae.
Known, cōgnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm.

L.

Labor, *s.*, lăbŏr, ōrĭs.
Labor, *v.*, lăbōrārĕ, āv, āt.
Lamb, āgnŭs, ī.
Large, māgnŭs, ă, ŭm; amplŭs, ă, ŭm.
Larger, majŏr, ŭs.
Last, dūrārĕ, āv, āt.
Lasting, sempĭternŭs, ă, ŭm.
Latinus, Lătīnŭs, ī.
Laugh, *laugh at*, rīdērĕ, rīs, rīs.
Lavinia, Lāvīnĭă, ae.
Law, lex, lēgĭs.
Lead, dūcĕrĕ, dux, duct; ăgĕrĕ, ēg, act.
Lead back. rĕdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct.
Lead forth, ēdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct.
Lead forward or *out*, prōdūcĕrĕ, dux, duct.
Lead to, addūcĕrĕ, dux, duct.
Leader, dux, dŭcĭs.
Learn, discĕrĕ, dĭdĭc.
Legion, lĕgiŏ, ōnĭs.
Letter, lĭteræ, ārŭm: ĕpistŏlă, ae.
Levy, compărārĕ, āv, āt.
Lie, a falsehood, mendācĭŭm, ī.
Life, vītă, ae.
Light, lux, lūcĭs.
Line of battle, ăciēs, ēī.
Lion, leŏ, ōnĭs.
Listen to, audīrĕ, īv, īt.
Little, parvŭs, ă, ŭm; *a little*, parvŭm: paucŭs, ă, ŭm.
Little garden, hortŭlŭs, ī. (515).
Live, vīvĕrĕ, vix, vict.
Lofty, altŭs, ă, ŭm.
Look at, spectārĕ, āv, āt.
Lose, āmittĕrĕ, mīs, miss.
Love, ămārĕ, āv, āt.

M.

Maiden, virgŏ, ĭnĭs.
Make, făcĕrĕ (iŏ), fēc, fact: *make a reply*, responsŭm dărĕ.
Man, hŏmŏ, ĭnĭs: vĭr, ī.
Manliness, virtūs, ūtĭs.
Many, multŭs, ă, ŭm; *many things*, multă.
March, prŏfĭciscī, fect.
Marine, *of the sea*, mărīnŭs, ă, ŭm.
Master as teacher, măgistĕr, trī.
Master as owner, dŏmĭnŭs, ī.
Matron, mātrōnă, ae.
Meadow, prātŭm, ī.
Meanwhile, intĕrĭm.
Meeting, concĭlĭŭm, ī.
Melt, lĭquescĕrĕ, lĭcu.
Merciful, clēmens, tĭs: lēnĭs, ĕ.
Messenger, nuntiŭs, ī.
Middle, *midst of*, *middle of*, mĕdiŭs, ă, ŭm, (267.)
Mild, lēnĭs, ĕ: clēmens, tĭs.
Mildness, clēmentiă, ae.
Military service, mīlĭtiă, ae.
Mind, ănĭmŭs, ī; *mind, the reasoning faculty*, mens, tĭs.
Miserable, mĭsĕr, ă, ŭm.
Misfortune, călămĭtās, ātĭs: mălŭm, ī.
Mislead, corrumpĕrĕ, rūp, rupt.
Modesty, pŭdŏr, ōrĭs.
Money, pĕcūniă, ae.
Month, mensĭs, ĭs, *m.*
Moon, lūnă, ae.
More, ampliŭs, (*adv.*).
Mortal, mortālĭs, ĕ.
Mother, mātĕr, trĭs.
Mountain, mons, tĭs, *m.*
Mourn, *wear mourning for*, lūgērĕ, x, ct.

Movable, mōbĭlĭs, ĕ.
Move, mŏvērĕ, mōv, mōt.
Move forward, prōmŏvērĕ, mōv, mōt.
Much, multŭs, ă, ŭm; *much good*, multŭm bŏnī; *much time*, multŭm tempŏrĭs.
Multitude, multĭtūdŏ, ĭnĭs.
My, meŭs, ă, ŭm.

N.

Name, nōmĕn, ĭnĭs.
Narrate, narrārĕ, āv, āt.
Narration, narrative, narrātiŏ, ōnĭs, (521.)
Narrow pass, angustiæ, ārŭm.
Nation, nātiŏ, ōnĭs.
Native country, pătriă, ae.
Natural to man, hūmānŭs, ă, ŭm.
Nature, gĕnŭs, ĕrĭs.
Nearer, prŏpiŏr, ŭs.
Neither, nĕc; *neither—nor*, nĕc—nĕc.
Nest, nīdŭs, ī.
Never, nunquăm.
Next, nearest, proxĭmŭs, ă, ŭm; *next following*, postĕră, ŭm (*masc. nom. not used*).
Night, nox, noctĭs.
Nightingale, luscĭniă, ae.
No, no one (*adj.*), nullŭs, ă, ŭm (113, R.).
No one, nobody, (*sub.*), nēmŏ, (ĭnĭs).
Not, nōn; *with imperat. or subj.*, nē; *not only—but also*, nōn sōlŭm—sĕd ĕtiăm.
Not even, nēquĭdĕm.
Not to know, nescīrĕ, īv, īt.
Not yet, nondŭm.
Nothing, nihĭl (*indec.*).
November, Nŏvembĕr, brĭs (abl. ī),
Numa, Nŭmă, ae.
Number, *s.*, nŭmĕrŭs, ī.
Number, *v.*, nŭmĕrārĕ, āv. āt.

O.

O, O.
O if, o sī.
Obey, pārērĕ, u, ĭt.
Observe, servārĕ, āv, āt.
Obtain, obtĭnērĕ, u, tent.
Occasion, occāsiŏ, ōnĭs.
Of himself, suī.
Of yesterday, hesternŭs, ă, ŭm.
Offend-against, viŏlārĕ, āv, āt.
Offer, præbērĕ, u, ĭt.
Often, saepĕ.
Old age, sĕnectūs, ūtĭs.
Old man, sĕnex, sĕnĭs.
On service, mīlĭtiae.
On this side, cĭs.
One, single one, ūnŭs, ă, ŭm (113. R.).
One is grieved at, pĭgĕt; *I am grieved at*, mē pĭgĕt.
One ought, ŏportĕt.
Only, mŏdŏ.
Open, ăpĕrīrĕ, u, t.
Openly, cōrăm.
Opportunity, occāsiŏ, ōnĭs.
Oppose, obstārĕ, stĭt, stāt.
Or, aut, vĕl; *either—or*, vĕl—vĕl.
Or, in double questions, ăn.
Oration, ōrātiŏ, ōnĭs.
Orator, ōrātŏr, ōrĭs.
Order, jŭbērĕ, juss, juss.
Other, ăliŭs, ă, ŭd (113. R.).
Our, nostĕr, tră, trŭm.
Overhang, impendērĕ.
Overthrow, ēvertĕrĕ, rt, rs.

P.

Pain, dŏlŏr, ōris.
Pardon, ignoscĕrĕ, nōv, nōt.
Parent, părens, entĭs.
Part, pars, tĭs.
Pass over in silence, tăcērĕ, u, ĭt.
Passion, cŭpĭdĭtās, ātĭs.
Past, praetĕrĭtŭs, ă, ŭm; *the past*, praetĕrĭtă.
Pausanias, Pausăniās, ae.
Peace, pax, cĭs.
Peacock, pāvŏ, ōnĭs.
People, pŏpŭlŭs, ī.
Perceive, sentīrĕ, s. s; perspĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), spex, spect.
Perception, sensŭs, ūs.
Perfidy, perfĭdiă, ae.
Personal, prīvātŭs, ă, ŭm.
Persuade, persuādērĕ, s. s.
Philosopher, phĭlŏsŏphŭs, ī.
Physician, mĕdĭcŭs, ī.
Piety, piĕtās, ātĭs.

Pious, pĭŭs, ă, ŭm,
Pity, mĭsĕrērī, ĭt.
Place, *s.*, lŏcŭs, ī. (*pl.* ī, *or* ă.)
Place, *v.*, pōnĕrĕ, pŏsu, pŏsĭt.
Plainly, plānē.
Plausible, spĕcĭōsŭs, ă, ŭm.
Play, *s.*, lūdŭs, ī.
Play, *v.*, lūdĕrĕ, s. s.
Pleasant, jūcundŭs, ă, ŭm.
Please, plăcērĕ, u, ĭt.
Pleasure, vŏluptās, ātĭs.
Plough, ărārĕ, āv, āt.
Pluck, carpĕrĕ, ps, pt.
Plunge into, immergĕrĕ, rs, rs.
Poem, poēmă, ătĭs.
Poet, poētă, ae.
Poor man, paupĕr, ĕrĭs.
Popular, pŏpŭlārĭs, ĕ (528).
Possess, possĭdērĕ, ēd, ess.
Practise, cŏlĕrĕ, u, cult; exercērĕ, u, ĭt.
Praise, *s.*, laus, dĭs.
Praise, *v.*, laudārĕ, āv, āt.
Precept, praeceptŭm, ī.
Prefer, mallĕ, mālu.
Prepare, părārĕ, āv, āt; praepărārĕ.
Present (*adj.*), praesens, tĭs.
Present, *to make a present*, dōnārĕ, āv, āt.
Preserve, conservārĕ, āv, āt.
Pretence, sĭmŭlātiŏ, ōnĭs.
Prevent, dēterrērĕ, u, ĭt; obstārĕ, stĭt, stāt.
Priest, *priestess*, săcerdōs, ōtĭs.
Private, prīvātŭs, ă, ŭm.
Prize, aestĭmārĕ, āv, āt; *prize highly*, māgnī aestĭmārĕ.
Procure, compărārĕ, āv, āt.
Profit, prōdessĕ, prōfu, prōfŭt.
Promise, prōmittĕrĕ, mīs, miss.
Provided, dummŏdŏ.
Province, prōvincia, ae.
Prudence, prūdentiă, ae.
Prudent, prūdens, tĭs; prōvĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.
Pull down, ēvertĕrĕ, t, s.
Punish, pūnīrĕ, īv, īt.
Pupil, discĭpŭlŭs, ī.
Purchase, ĕmĕrĕ, ēm, empt.
Put confidence in, crēdĕrĕ, crēdĭd, crēdĭt.
Put to flight, fŭgārĕ, āv, āt, (540).

Q.

Quarrel, concertārĕ, āv, āt.
Queen, rēgīnă, ae.
Question, quaestiŏ, ōnĭs.
Quickly, cĕlĕrĭtĕr.

R.

Rage, saevīrĕ, īv, īt.
Raise, compărārĕ, āv, āt.
Reach, attingĕrĕ, tĭg, tact; pervĕnīrĕ, vēn, vent.
Read, lĕgĕrĕ, lēg, lect.
Real, vērŭs, ă, ŭm.
Reason, rătiŏ, ōnĭs.
Receive, accĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, cept; rĕcĭpĕrĕ (iŏ); căpĕrĕ (iŏ), cēp, capt.
Reform, sānārĕ, āv, āt.
Refuge, perfŭgiŭm, ī.
Regard, pŭtārĕ, āv, āt.
Reign, rēgnārĕ, āv, āt.
Reject, respuĕrĕ, pu.
Relate, narrārĕ, āv, āt; rĕferrĕ, tŭl, lāt.
Relying on, frētŭs, ă, ŭm.
Remain, mănērĕ, mans, mans.
Remaining, rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm.
Remember, rĕcordārī, āt.
Render thanks, grātiās ăgĕrĕ.
Repent, *one repents*, poenĭtēt (485).
Report, *s.*, rūmŏr, ōrĭs.
Report, nuntiārĕ, āv, āt.
Repress, compescĕrĕ, cu.
Resist, rĕsistĕrĕ, stĭt, stĭt.
Response, responsŭm, ī.
Rest, *the rest*, rĕlĭquŭs, ă, ŭm.
Rest, quiescĕrĕ, quiēv, quiēt.
Restrain, contĭnērĕ, u, tent; compescĕrĕ, cu.
Return, rĕdīrĕ, i, ĭt; rĕvertĕrĕ, t, s (551.)
Rhine, Rhēnŭs, ī.
Rich, lŏcuplēs, ētĭs.
Ring, ānŭlŭs, ī.
Ripen, cŏquĕrĕ, cox, coct.
River, flūmĕn, ĭnĭs.
Road, viă, ae.
Rob of, spŏliārĕ, āv, āt.
Robust, rōbustŭs, ă, ŭm.
Roman, Rōmānŭs, ă, ŭm.
Rome Rōmă, ae.

Romulus, Rōmŭlŭs, ī.
Roof, tectŭm, ī.
Round, rŏtundŭs, ă, ŭm.
Rule, rĕgĕrĕ, rex, rect.
Rumor, rūmŏr, ŏrĭs.
Run, currĕrĕ, cŭcurr, curs.
Rush, ruĕrĕ, ru, rŭt.

S.

Safe, incŏlŭmĭs, ĕ.
Safety, sălūs, ūtĭs.
Same, īdĕm, eădĕm, ĭdĕm.
Satisfy, sătiārĕ, āv, āt.
Save, servārĕ, āv, āt.
Say, dīcĕrĕ, dix, dict.
Scatter, spargĕrĕ, spars, spars.
Sceptre, sceptrŭm, ī.
Scipio, Scīpiŏ, onis.
Sea, mărĕ, ĭs.
Second, sĕcundŭs, ă, ŭm.
See, vīdērĕ, vīd, vīs; conspĭcĕrĕ (iŏ), spex, spect.
Seed, sēmĕn, ĭnĭs.
Seek, pĕtĕrĕ, īv *or* i, īt.
Seem, vĭdērī, vīs.
Seize, arrĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), ĭpu, ept; dēprĕhendĕrĕ, hend, hens.
Self, ipsĕ, ă, ŭm.
Sell, vendĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt.
Senate, sĕnātŭs, ūs, (517.)
Senator, sĕnātŏr, ōrĭs.
Send, mittĕrĕ, mīs, miss.
Send before, praemittĕrĕ, mīs, miss.
Sentiment, sententiă, ae.
Separate, disjungĕrĕ, x, ct.
Serve, servīrĕ, īv (i), īt.
Servius, Serviŭs, ī.
Set forth, expōnĕrĕ, pŏsu, pŏsĭt.
Set on fire, incendĕrĕ, d, s.
Set out, prŏfĭciscī, fect.
Severe, ăcĕr, ăcrĭs, ăcrĕ.
Sew, stitch, suĕrĕ, su, sūt.
Shame, pŭdŏr, ōrĭs.
Sharp, ăcĕr, ăcrĭs, ăcrĕ.
Shave, tondērĕ, tŏtond, tons.
Shear, tondērĕ, tŏtond, tons.
Sheep, ŏvĭs, ĭs.
Shepherd, pastŏr, ōrĭs. (520.)
Shield, clĭpeŭs, ī.
Shine, mĭcārĕ, u; lūcērĕ, x.
Shining, splendens, tĭs.
Short, brĕvĭs, ĕ.
Shoulder, hŭmĕrŭs, ī.
Show, monstrārĕ, āv, āt; dēmonstrārĕ, āv, āt.
Shrub, frŭtex, ĭcĭs, *m.*
Shun, vītārĕ, āv, āt.
Shut, claudĕrĕ, s, s.
Silver, argentŭm, ī.
Simple, simplex, ĭcĭs.
Sin, peccārĕ, āv, āt.
Since, cŭm, quŭm.
Sing, cănĕrĕ, cĕcĭn, cant; cantārĕ, āv, āt.
Single, single one, ūnŭs, ă, ŭm (118, R.).
Siren, sīrēn, ēnĭs.
Sister, sŏrŏr, ōrĭs.
Six, sex.
Size, māgnĭtūdŏ, ĭnĭs.
Skilful, skilled in, pĕrītŭs, ă, ŭm.
Skin, dēglūbĕrĕ, ps, pt.
Slave, servŭs, ī.
Sleep, *s.*, somnŭs, ī.
Sleep, dormīrĕ, īv, īt.
Slow, tardŭs, ă, ŭm.
Small, parvŭs, ă, ŭm.
Smaller, mĭnŏr, ŭs.
Snake, anguĭs, ĭs, *m.*
Snatch, arrĭpĕrĕ (iŏ), ĭpu, ept.
Snow, nix, nĭvĭs.
So, sīc, ădeō, tăm; *so—as*, tăm—quăm, sīcŭt.
So great, tantŭs, ă, ŭm.
Socrates, Sōcrătēs, ĭs.
Soldier, mīlĕs, ĭtĭs.
Some, ălĭquĭs, quă, quĭd (quŏd); *some time*, ălĭquĭd tempŏrĭs.
Some time, some time or other, ălĭquandŏ.
Sometimes, intĕrĭm.
Son, fīliŭs, ī.
Son-in-law, gĕnĕr, ī.
Sorrow, dŏlŏr, ōrĭs; luctŭs, ūs.
Soul, ănĭmŭs, ī.
Sound, sŏnŭs, ī.
Sow, spargĕrĕ, rs, rs.
Space, intervallŭm, ī.
Spare, parcĕrĕ, pĕperc (pars), parsūr (pars).
Speak, lŏquī, lŏcūtŭs.
Spear, hastă, ae.
Specious, spĕciōsŭs, ă, ŭm (580)

Spin, nērĕ, nēv, nēt.
Sport, lūdŭs, ī.
Spouse, conjux, gĭs.
Spring, vēr, vēris, *n.*
Sprinkle, aspergĕrĕ, rs, rs.
Stability, stăbĭlĭtās, ātĭs
Stain, măcŭlārĕ, āv, āt.
Star, stellă, ae.
State, cīvĭtās, ātĭs.
Storm, expūgnārĕ, āv, āt.
Stream, flūmĕn, ĭnĭs.
Strength, vīs, vis (*pl.*, vīrēs).
Strive for, stŭdērĕ, u.
Strong, rōbustŭs, ă, ŭm.
Studious, stŭdiōsŭs, ă, ŭm.
Study, stŭdērĕ, u.
Successive, contĭnuŭs, ă, ŭm
Succor, succurrĕrĕ, rr, rs.
Sue for, pĕtĕrĕ, īv (i), īt.
Sulla, Sullă, ae.
Summer, aestās, ātĭs.
Sun, sōl, sōlĭs, *m.*
Supper, coenă, ae.
Supplicate, exōrārĕ, āv, āt.
Surface, sŭperfĭciēs, ēī.
Surpass, sŭpĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Surrender, dēdĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt.
Surround, circumdărĕ, dĕd, dăt; cingĕrĕ, x, ct.
Sustain, sustĭnērĕ, u, tent.
Swear, jūrārĕ, āv, āt.
Swift, vēlox, ōcĭs.
Swim, nārĕ, āv, āt.
Sword, glădiŭs, ī.

T.

Take, căpĕrĕ (iō), cep, capt.
Take care, căvērĕ, cāv, caut.
Take care of, cūrārĕ, āv, āt.
Take by storm, expūgnārĕ, āv, āt (550).
Talent, ingĕniŭm, ī.
Tarentum, Tărentŭm, ī.
Tarquin, Tarquĭniŭs, ī.
Teach, dŏcērĕ, u, doct.
Tear in pieces, dīlăniārĕ, āv, āt.
Ten, dĕcĕm.
Tenth, dĕcĭmŭs, ă, ŭm.
Terms, condĭtiō, ōnĭs.
Terrify, terrērĕ, u, ĭt.
Than, quăm.
Thanks, grātiae, ārŭm.
Thanksgiving, supplĭcātiō, ōnĭs.
That (*pron.*), illĕ, ă, ŭd; is, eă, ĭd; istĕ, ă, ŭd.
That (*conj.*), ŭt, *with comp.* (469). quō.
That not, quōmĭnŭs, quīn.
The entire, tōtŭs, ă, ŭm (113, R.).
Theft, furtŭm, ī.
There, ĭbī.
Therefore, ergō, ĭtăquĕ, ĭdeō, ĭgĭtŭr.
Thing, rēs, rĕī.
Think, pŭtārĕ, āv, āt; *think about*, cōgĭtārĕ, āv, āt; *think little of* parvī aestĭmārĕ, āv, āt.
Third, tertiŭs, ă, ŭm.
Thirst, sĭtīrĕ, īv, īt.
This, hīc, haec, hōc.
Thou, you, tū, tuī.
Thousand, millĕ.
Threaten, impendērĕ.
Three, trēs, triă.
Through, pĕr.
Tibur, Tībŭr, ŭrĭs.
Till, cŏlĕrĕ, u, cult.
Time, tempŭs, ŏrĭs.
Timid, tĭmĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.
To, ăd, ĭn (*with acc.*).
To death, căpĭtĭs.
Too much, nĭmiŭs, ă, ŭm.
Top, the top, summŭs, ă, ŭm; *agreeing with the noun, as*, summŭs mons, *the top of the mountain.*
Torture, excrŭciārĕ, āv, āt.
Touch, tangĕrĕ, tĕtĭg, tact.
Towards, ergā (*with acc.*).
Tower, arx, cĭs; turrĭs, ĭs (*acc.*, ĕm *or* ĭm, *abl.* ĕ *or* ī).
Traitor, prōdĭtŏr, ōrĭs.
Tranquil, tranquillŭs, ă, ŭm.
Treachery, treason, prōdĭtiō, ōnĭs.
Treaty, foedŭs, ĕrĭs.
Tree, arbŏr, ŏrĭs, *f.*
Trojan, Trojānŭs, ă, ŭm.
True, vērŭs, ă, ŭm.
Truly, vērō.
Truth, vērŭm, ī.
Try, tentārĕ, āv, āt.
Tullia, Tulliă, ae.
Turn, convert, convertĕrĕ, t, s.
Turn back, rĕvertĕrĕ, t, s.
Twelve, duŏdĕcĭm.
Twenty, vīgintī.

Two, duŏ, duae, duŏ.
Two hundred, dŭcentī, ae, ă.
Two years, space of two years, bienniŭm.

U.

Uncertain, incertŭs, ă, ŭm (550).
Uncover, ăpĕrīrĕ, ru, rt.
Understand, intellĭgĕrĕ, lex, lect.
Uninjured, incŏlŭmĭs, ĕ.
Unknown, incŏgnĭtŭs, ă, ŭm.
Unlearned, indoctŭs, ă, ŭm.
Unnecessary, sŭpervăcuŭs, ă, ŭm.
Unwilling, invītŭs, ă, ŭm.
Unworthy, indīgnŭs, ă, ŭm.
Use, *v.*, ūtī, ūs.
Useful, ūtĭlĭs, ĕ.
Useless, ĭnūtĭlĭs, ĕ.
Utility, ūtĭlĭtās, ātĭs.

V.

Valuable, prĕtiōsŭs, ă, ŭm.
Value, aestĭmārĕ, āv, āt.
Very (*before a noun or pronoun, sometimes*), ipsĕ, ă, ŭm.
Very fond, stŭdiōsŭs, a, um.
Very much or *great*, plūrĭmŭs, ă, ŭm; *very many*, plūrĭmī.
Victim, victĭmă, ae.
Victoria, Victōriă, ae (*prop. name*).
Victory, victōriă, ae.
Violate, viŏlārĕ, āv, āt; rumpĕrĕ, rūp, rupt.
Virgin, virgŏ, ĭnĭs.
Virtue, virtūs, ūtĭs.
Voice, vox, vŏcĭs.

W.

Wage (*as war*), gĕrĕrĕ, gess, gest; inferrĕ, tŭl, lāt.
Walk, ambŭlārĕ, āv, āt.
Wall, mūrŭs, ī.
War, bellŭm, ī.
Warn, admŏnērĕ, u, ĭt.
Wash, lăvārĕ, lāv, laut, *and* lăvāt.
Wasp, crābrŏ, ōnĭs.
Waste, perdĕrĕ, dĭd, dĭt.
Watch, vĭgĭlārĕ, āv, āt.
Water, ăquă, ae.
Wax (*as moon*), crescĕrĕ, crēv, crēt.
Way, viă, ae; ĭtĕr, ĭtĭnĕrĭs, *n.*
Wealthy, lŏcuplēs, ētĭs.
Weep, flērĕ, ēv, ēt.
Weep for, lūgērĕ, lux.
Well, bĕnĕ.
When, quŭm.
Whence, undĕ.
Wherefore, quārē.
Whether, utrŭm; *whether—or, in double questions*, utrŭm—ăn, *in other cases*, seu—seu; sīvĕ—sīvĕ.
While, dŭm; *while walking*, intĕr ambŭlandŭm.
White, candĭdŭs, ă, ŭm.
Who, which, that (*rel.*), quī, quae, quŏd.
Who, which, what? (*interrog.*), quĭs, quae, quĭd? (*subs.*); quī, quae, quŏd? (*adj.*).
Whole, tōtŭs, ă, ŭm (113, R.).
Wicked, imprŏbŭs, ă, ŭm.
Wife, conjux, gĭs.
Winter, hiems, ĭs.
Wisdom, săpientiă, ae.
Wise, săpiens, tĭs.
Wish, vellĕ, vŏlu.
With, cŭm.
Within, intrā (*with acc.*).
Without, sĭnĕ (*with abl.*).
Witness, spectārĕ, āv, āt (543).
Wolf, lŭpŭs, ī.
Woman, mŭliĕr, ĭs.
Wonderful, mīrābĭlĭs, ĕ.
Wool, lānă, ae.
Word, verbŭm, ī.
Work, ŏpŭs, ĕrĭs.
World, mundŭs, ī; orbĭs terrārŭm.
Worthy, dīgnŭs, ă, ŭm.
Would that, ŭtĭnăm, o sī.
Wound, *s.*, vulnŭs, ĕrĭs.
Wound, *v.*, vulnĕrārĕ, āv, āt.
Wretched, mĭsĕr, ă, ŭm.
Write, scrībĕrĕ, ps, pt.
Wrong, *v.*, viŏlārĕ, āv, āt.

Y.

Year, annŭs, ī.
Yesterday, hesternō diē.
Yet, tămĕn.
You, tū, tuī.
Your, thy, tuŭs, ă, ŭm; *your*, vestĕr, tră, trŭm.

THE END.

Latin Classical Works.

Virgil's Æneid.

WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES.

BY HENRY S. FRIEZE,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE STATE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

12mo. Illustrated. 598 pages. $1 50.

The appearance of this edition of Virgil's Æneid will, it is believed, be hailed with delight by all classical teachers. Neither expense nor pains have been spared to clothe the great Latin epic in a fitting dress. The type is unusually large and distinct, and errors in the text, so annoying to the learner, have been carefully avoided. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, costumes, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustration. The great feature of this edition is the scholarly and judicious commentary furnished in the appended Notes. The author has here endeavored, not to show his learning, but to supply such practical aid as will enable the pupil to understand and appreciate what he reads. The notes are just full enough, thoroughly explaining the most difficult passages, while they are not so extended as to take all labor off the pupil's hands. Properly used, they cannot fail to impart an intelligent acquaintance with the syntax of the language. In a word, this work is commended to teachers as the most elegant, accurate, interesting, and practically useful edition of the Æneid that has yet been published.

From JOHN H. BRUNNER, *Pres. Hiwassee Coll.*

The typography, paper, and binding of Virgil's Æneid, by Prof. Freize, are all that need be desired; while the learned and judicious notes appended, are very valuable indeed.

From PRINC. OF PIEDMONT (VA.) ACADEMY.

I have to thank you for a copy of Prof. Frieze's edition of the Æneid. I have been exceedingly pleased in my examination of it. The size of the type from which the text is printed, and the faultless execution leave nothing to be desired in these respects. The adherence to a standard text throughout, increases the value of this edition.

From D. G. MOORE, *Princ. U. High S. Rutland.*

The copy of Frieze's "Virgil" forwarded to me was duly received. It is so evidently superior to any of the other editions, that I shall unhesitatingly adopt it in my classes.

Greek Classical Works.

A First Greek Book and Introductory Reader.

BY PROF. A. HARKNESS, PH. D.,

OF BROWN UNIVERSITY, AUTHOR OF "ARNOLD'S FIRST LATIN BOOK," ETC.,

12mo. 276 pages. $1 00.

This work embraces, in one small volume, the leading features of the author's two Latin books. It is designed to conduct the pupil in a series of Lessons and Exercises through the Forms and Syntax of the language, and to give him sufficient practice in translating, first classified sentences and then easy connected discourses in the form of fables, anecdotes, and legends, to prepare him to enter with ease and success upon the consecutive study of such a work as the Anabasis of Xenophon.

A Greek Grammar FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY JAMES HADLEY,

PROFESSOR IN YALE COLLEGE

12mo. 366 pages. $1 50.

Professor Hadley's long-expected Grammar is presented to the public in the confident belief that it will, in every respect, meet the wants of Academies and Colleges. It displays a thorough acquaintance with the labors of English and German critics, while the original researches of its author, with special reference to the wants of American students, impart to it a peculiar value. Its masterly treatment of the Greek particles, as variously construed with the different moods and tenses of the verb, is worthy of particular attention. It will be found clear in its language, accurate in its definitions, judicious in its arrangement, and sufficiently comprehensive for all purposes, while it is free from that cumbrous array of details so repulsive to the student.

Latin Classical Works.

Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero

WITH NOTES, FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY E. A. JOHNSON,

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NEW YORK.

12mo. 459 pages. Price $1.

This edition of Cicero's Select Orations possesses some special advantages for the student which are both new and important. It is the only edition which contains the improved text that has been prepared by a recent careful collation and correct deciphering of the best manuscripts of Cicero's writings. It is the work of the celebrated Orelli, Madvig, and Klotz, and has been done since the appearance of Orelli's complete edition. The Notes, by Professor Johnson, of the New York University, have been mostly selected, with great care, from the best German authors, as well as the English edition of Arnold.

From THOMAS CHASE, *Tutor in Latin in Harvard University.*

"An edition of Cicero like Johnson's has long been wanted; and the excellence of the text, the illustrations of words, particles, and pronouns, and the explanation of various points of construction and interpretation, bear witness to the Editor's familiarity with some of the most important results of modern scholarship, and entitle his work to a large share of public favor."

"It seems to us an improvement upon any edition of these orations that has been published in this country, and will be found a valuable aid in their studies to the lovers of classical literature."—*Troy Daily Whig,*

Cicero de Officiis,

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, MOSTLY TRANSLATED FROM ZUMPT AND BONNELL,

BY THOMAS A. THACHER,

OF YALE COLLEGE.

12mo. 194 pages. Price 90 Cents.

In this edition, a few historical notes have been introduced in cases where the Dictionary in common use have not been found to contain the desired information; the design of which is to aid the learner in understanding the contents of the treatises, the thoughts and reasoning of the author, to explain grammatical difficulties, and inculcate a knowledge of grammatical principles. The Editor has aimed throughout to guide rather than carry the learner through difficulties; requiring of him more study, in consequence of his help, than he would have devoted to the book without it.

From M. L. STOEVER, *Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Penn. College.*

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Thacher's edition of Cicero de Officiis, and am convinced of its excellence. The Notes have been prepared with great care and good judgment. Practical knowledge of the wants of the student has enabled the Editor to furnish just the kind of assistance required; grammatical difficulties are removed, and the obscurities of the treatise are explained, the interest of the learner is elicited, and his industry directed rather than superseded. There can be but one opinion with regard to the merits of the work, and I trust that Professor Thacher will be disposed to continue his labors so carefully commenced, in this department of classical learning."

Latin Classical Works.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, CRITICAL AND EXPLANATORY; A LEXICON GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL INDEXES, A MAP OF GAUL, &c.

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, D.D.

12mo. 408 pages. Price $1.

In the preparation of this volume, great care has been taken to adapt it in every respect to the wants of the young student, to make it a means at the same time of advancing him in a thorough knowledge of Latin, and inspiring him with a desire for further acquaintance with the classics of the language. Dr. Spencer has not, like some commentators, given an abundance of help on the easy passages, and allowed the difficult ones to speak for themselves. His notes are on those parts on which the pupil wants them, and explain, not only grammatical difficulties, but allusions of every kind in the text. A well-drawn sketch of Cæsar's life, a map of the region in which his campaigns were carried on, and a Vocabulary, which removes the necessity of using a large dictionary and the waste of time consequent thereon, enhance the value of the volume in no small degree.

Quintus Curtius:

LIFE AND EXPLOITS OF ALEXANDER THE GREAT.

EDITED AND ILLUSTRATED WITH ENGLISH NOTES,

BY WM. HENRY CROSBY.

12mo. 385 pages. Price $1.

Curtius' History of Alexander the Great, though little used in the schools of this country, in England and on the Continent holds a high place in the estimation of classical instructors. The interesting character of its subject, the elegance of its style, and the purity of its moral sentiments, ought to place it at least on a par with Cæsar's Commentaries or Sallust's Histories. The present edition, by the late Professor of Latin in Rutgers College, is unexceptionable in typography, convenient in form, scholarly and practical in its notes, and altogether an admirable text-book for classes preparing for college.

From PROF. OWEN, *of the New York Free Academy.*

"It gives me great pleasure to add my testimonial to the many you are receiving in favor of the beautiful and well-edited edition of Quintus Curtius, by Prof. Wm Henry Crosby. It is seldom that a classical book is submitted to me for examination, to which I can give so hearty a recommendation as to this. The external appearance is attractive; the paper, type, and binding being just what a text-book should be, neat, clean, and durable. The notes are brief, pertinent, scholarlike neither too exuberant nor too meagre, but happily exemplifying the golden mean desirable and yet so very difficult of attainment."

Greek Classical Works.

Xenophon's Anabasis.

WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES IN THE UNITED STATES.

BY JAMES R. BOISE,

PROFESSOR OF GREEK IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN.

12mo. 393 pages. Price $1 25.

A handsome and convenient edition of this great classic, really adapted to the wants of schools, has long been needed; the want is here met by Professor Boise in manner that leaves nothing to be desired. Decidedly the best German editions, whether text or commentary be considered, have appeared within the last few years; and of these Mr. Boise has made free use; while, at the same time, he has not lost sight of the fact that the classical schools of this country are behind those of Germany, and that simpler and more elementary explanations are therefore often necessary in a work prepared for American schools. Nothing has been put in the notes for the sake of a mere display of learning,—pedantry is out of place in a school-book; and nothing has been introduced by way of comment except what can be turned to practical use by the reader.

An historical introduction, which will enable the pupil to enter on his task intelligently, is prefixed. An abundance of geographical information, embodying the latest discoveries of travellers, is supplied; and the whole is illustrated with Kiepert's excellent map, showing the entire route of the ten thousand on their retreat.

From DR. WILLIAM SMITH, *London, Author of "History of Greece," "Dictionary of Antiquities," &c. &c.*

"I am very much obliged to you for a copy of your edition of Xenophon's Anabasis, which I have carefully inspected, and think to be decidedly the best edition of the work I have hitherto seen, for school and college purposes."

Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates

WITH NOTES AND AN INTRODUCTION.

BY R. D. C. ROBBINS,

PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN MIDDLEBURY COLLEGE, VERMONT.

12mo. 421 pages. Price $1 25.

This will be found an exceedingly useful book for College classes. The text is large and distinct, the typography accurate, and the notes judicious and scholarly. Instead of referring the student to a variety of books, few of which are within his reach, the editor has wisely supplied whatever is necessary. An admirable treatise on the Life of Socrates introduces the work, and English and Greek Indexes render it easy to refer to the text and notes.

From PROF. HARRISON, *University of Virginia.*

"The Notes contain, in much detail, the grammatical and other explanations which it would be convenient for the learner to have placed before him, instead of having to refer to various books. I have no doubt that the Notes are very carefully prepared, and in accordance with the best authorities."

Greek Classical Works.

Selections from Herodotus;

COMPRISING MAINLY SUCH PORTIONS AS GIVE A CONNECTED HISTORY OF THE EAST TO THE FALL OF BABYLON AND THE DEATH OF CYRUS THE GREAT.

BY HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D.,

PROFESSOR OF PHILOSOPHY AND ENGLISH LITERATURE IN DICKINSON COLLEGE.

12mo. 185 pages. Price 75 Cents.

The present selection embraces such parts of Herodotus as give a connected history of Asiatic nations. These portions are not only particularly interesting in themselves, but open to the student a new field, inasmuch as the other Greek and Roman authors commonly put into his hands leave this period of history untouched.

Herodotus is peculiarly adapted to academical reading. It has charms for the student which no other text-book possesses, on account of the simple elegance of the style and the liveliness of the narrative. In preparing his notes, the editor has borne in mind that they are intended for learners in the earlier part of their classical course; he has therefore made the explanations in the former part of the work quite full, with frequent references to such grammars as are in the hands of most students.

The notes proper are purely explanatory and grammatical. Other remarks, in the way of criticism or investigation, are appended to the several chapters, for the sake of awakening reflection and inciting to further inquiry.

A condensed treatise on the Ionic Dialect and the peculiar forms of declension and conjugation used by Herodotus, removes one of the most serious difficulties that has heretofore embarrassed the student in reading this author. If this chapter is learned in advance, the dialectic forms, otherwise so troublesome, will be recognized without the slightest difficulty.

The text is printed in large, bold type, and accompanied with a Map of the regions described.

SOPHOCLES'

Œdipus Tyrannus.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, FOR THE USE OF STUDENTS IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY HOWARD CROSBY, A. M.,

PROFESSOR OF THE GREEK LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IN THE NEW YORK UNIVERSITY.

12mo. 138 pages. Price 75 Cents.

The object had in view in this publication is to furnish to college-students the masterpiece of the greatest of Greek tragic poets in a convenient form. No learned criticism on the text was needed or has been attempted. The Tauchnitz edition has been chiefly followed, and such aid is rendered, in the way of notes, as may assist, not render needless, the efforts of the student. Too much help begets indolence. too little, despair: the author has striven to present the happy mean.

The inviting appearance of the text and the merit of the commentary have made this volume a favorite wherever it has been used.

Latin Classical Works.

Arnold's Latin Course.

FIRST AND SECOND LATIN BOOK AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR
REVISED AND CAREFULLY CORRECTED, BY J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo 359 pages. Price 75 cents.

II PRACTICAL INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION
REVISED AND CAREFULLY CORRECTED, BY J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo 356 pages. Price $1.

III. CORNELIUS NEPOS. WITH QUESTIONS AND ANSWERS, AND AN IMITATIVE EXERCISE ON EACH CHAPTER. WITH NOTES BY E. A. JOHNSON, PROF. OF LATIN IN UNIV. OF NEW YORK. NEW EDITION, ENLARGED, WITH A LEXICON, HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX, &c. 12mo. 350 pages. Price $1.

Arnold's Classical Series has attained a circulation almost unparalleled, having been introduced into nearly all the leading educational institutions in the United States. The secret of this success is, that the author has hit upon the true system of teaching the ancient languages. He exhibits them not as dead, but as living tongues, and by imitation and repetition, the means which nature herself points out to the child learning his mother tongue, he familiarizes the student with the idioms employed by the elegant writers and speakers of antiquity.

The First and Second Latin Book should be put in the hands of the beginner, who will soon acquire from its pages a better idea of the language than could be gained by months of study according to the old system. The reason of this is, that every thing has a practical bearing, and a principle is no sooner learned than it is applied. The pupil is at once set to work on exercises.

The Prose Composition forms an excellent sequel to the above work, or may be used with any other course. It teaches the art of writing Latin more correctly and thoroughly, more easily and pleasantly, than any other work. In its pages Latin synonymes are carefully illustrated, differences of idiom noted, cautions as to common errors impressed on the mind, and every help afforded towards attaining a pure and flowing Latin style.

From N. WHEELER, *Principal Worcester County High School.*

"In the skill with which he sets forth the *idiomatic peculiarities*, as well as in the directness and simplicity with which he states the facts of the ancient languages, Mr. Arnold has no superior. I know of no books so admirably adapted to awaken an *interest* in the study of language, or so well fitted to lay the foundation of a correct scholarship and refined taste."

From A. B. RUSSELL, *Oakland High School.*

"The style in which the books are got up is not their only recommendation. With thorough instruction on the part of the teacher using these books as text-books, I am confident a much more ample return for the time and labor bestowed by our youth upon Latin must be secured. The time certainly has come when an advance must be made upon the old methods of instruction. I am glad to have a work that promises so many advantages as Arnold's First and Second Latin Book to begin."

From C. M. BLAKE, *Classical Teacher, Philadelphia.*

"I am much pleased with Arnold's Latin Books. A class of my older boys have just finished the First and Second Book. They had studied Latin for a long time before, but never *understood* it, they say, as they do now."

Italian Text-Books.

Ollendorff's Italian Grammars.

PRIMARY LESSONS IN LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE. INTRODUCTORY TO THE LARGER GRAMMAR. BY G. W. GREENE.

18mo. 238 pages. Price 63 cents.

OLLENDORFF'S NEW METHOD OF LEARNING TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE. WITH ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS. BY E. FELIX FORESTI, LL.D.

12mo. 533 pages. Price $1 50. KEY—Price 75 cents. Separate vol.

In Ollendorff's grammars is for the first time presented a system by which the student can acquire a conversational knowledge of Italian. This will recommend them to practical students; while at the same time there is no lack of rules and principles for those who would pursue a systematic grammatical course with the view of translating and writing the language.

Prof. Greene's Introduction should be taken up by youthful classes, for whom it is specially designed, the more difficult parts of the course being left for the larger volume.

The advanced work has been carefully revised by Prof. Foresti, who has made such emendations and additions as the wants of the country required. In many sections the services of an Italian teacher cannot be obtained; the Ollendorff Course and Key will there supply the want of a master in the most satisfactory manner.

Italian Reader.

A COLLECTION OF PIECES IN ITALIAN PROSE, DESIGNED AS A READING-BOOK FOR STUDENTS OF THE ITALIAN LANGUAGE.

BY E. FELIX FORESTI, LL.D.

12mo. 298 pages. Price $1 25.

In making selections for this volume, Prof. Foresti has had recourse to the modern writers of Italy rather than to the old school of novelists, historians, and poets; his object being to present a picture of the Italian language as it is written and spoken at the present day. The literary taste of the compiler, and his judgment as an instructor, have been brought to bear with the happiest results in this valuable Reader.

Chemical Chart:

BY E. L. YOUMANS.

On Rollers, 5 feet by 6 in size. New Edition. Price $6 00.

This popular work accomplishes for the first time, for Chemistry, what maps and charts have for geography, geology, and astronomy, by presenting a new and valuable mode of illustration. Its plan is to represent chemical composition to the eye by colored diagrams, so that numerous facts of proportion, structure, and relation, which are the most difficult in the science, are presented to the mind through the medium of the eye, and may thus be easily acquired and long retained. The want of such a chart has long been felt by the thoughtful teacher, and no other scientific publication that has ever emanated from the American press has met with the universal favor that has been accorded to this Chart. In the language of a distinguished chemist, "Its appearance marks an era in the progress of the popularization of Chemistry."

It illustrates the nature of elements, compounds, affinity, definite and multiple proportions, acids, bases, salts, the salt-radical theory, double decomposition, deoxidation, combustion and illumination, isomerism, compound radicals, and the composition of the proximate principles of food. It covers the whole field of Agricultural Chemistry, and is invaluable as an aid to public lecturers, to teachers in class-room recitation, and for reference in the family. The mode of using it is explained in the class-book.

From the late HORACE MANN, *President of Antioch College.*

I think Mr. Youmans is entitled to great credit for the preparation of his Chart, because its use will not only facilitate acquisition, but, what is of far greater importance, will increase the exactness and precision of the student's elementary ideas.

From DR. JOHN W. DRAPER, *Professor of Chemistry in the University of N. Y.*

Mr. Youmans' Chart seems to me well adapted to communicate to beginners a knowledge of the definite combinations of chemical substances, and as a preliminary to the use of symbols, to aid them very much in the recollection of the examples it contains. It deserves to be introduced into the schools.

Fron JAMES B. ROGERS, *Professor of Chemistry in the University of Pennsylvania.*

We cordially subscribe to the opinion of Professor Draper concerning the value to beginners of Mr. Youmans' Chemical Chart.

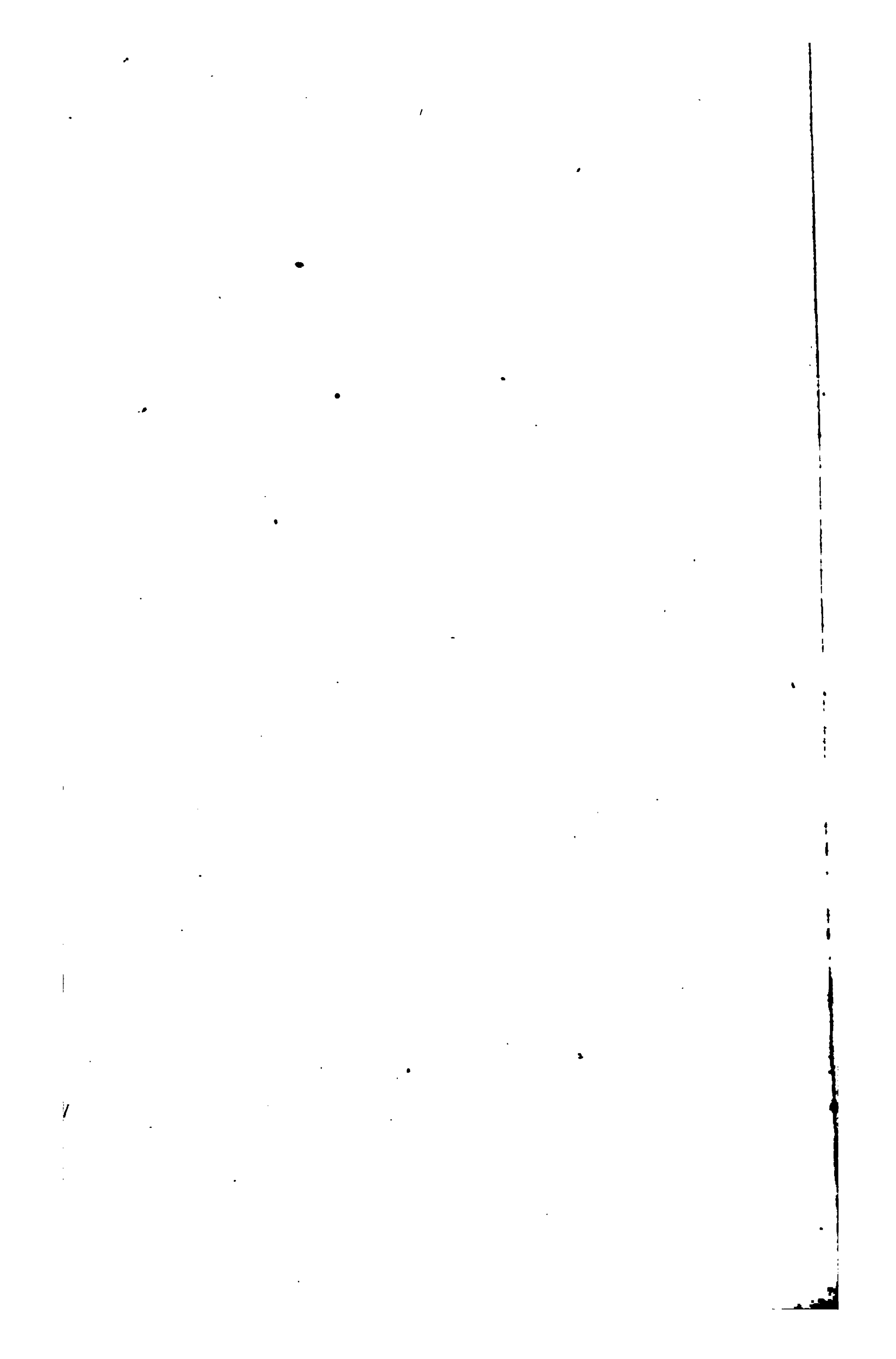
JOHN TORREY,
Professor of Chemistry in the College of Physicians & Surgeons, N. Y.

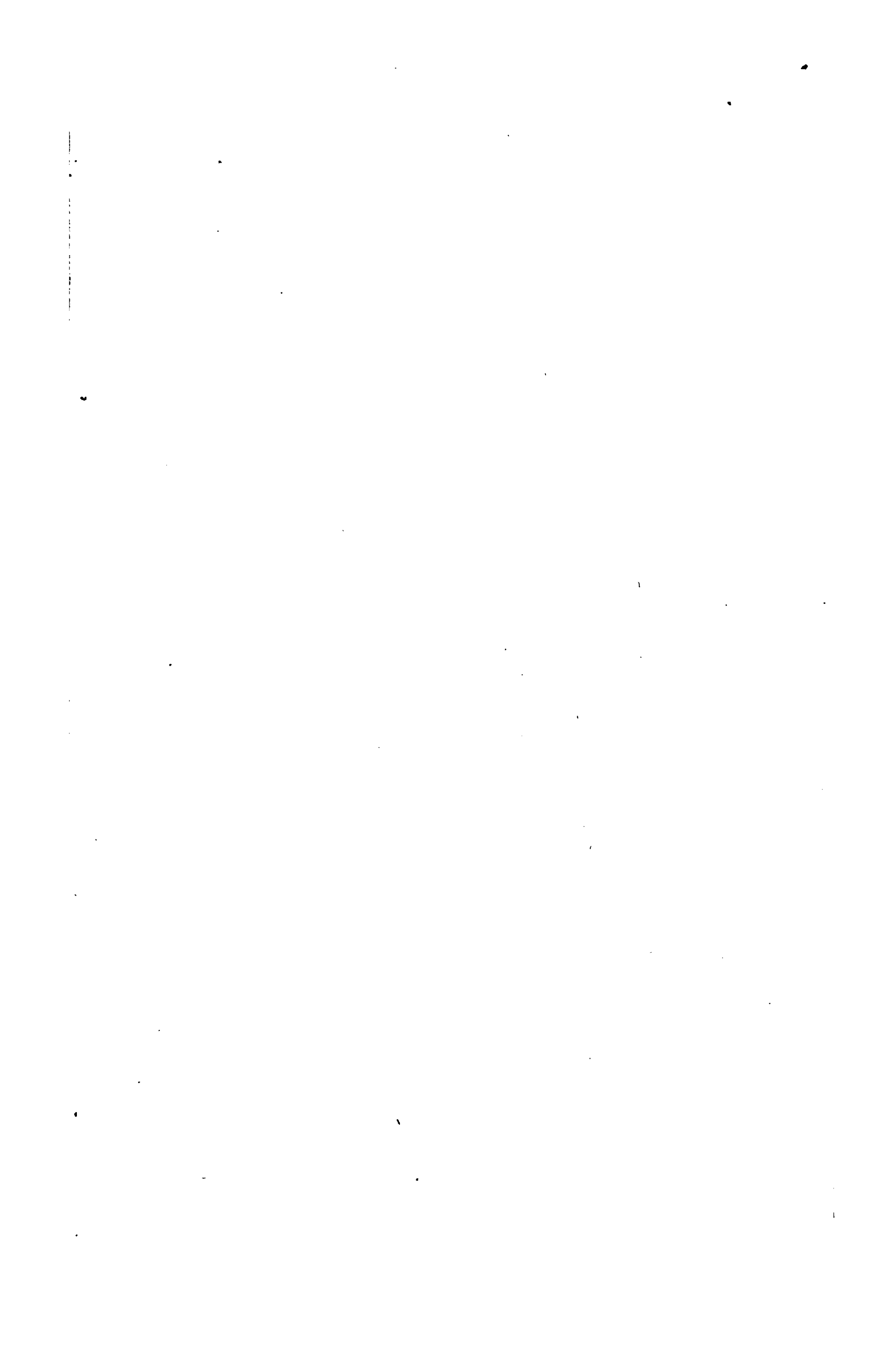
WM. H. ELLET,
Late Professor of Chemistry in Columbia College, S. C.

JAMES B. ROGERS,
Professor of Chemistry in the University of Pennsylvania.

From BENJAMIN SILLIMAN, LL. D., *Professor of Chemistry in Yale College.*

I have hastily examined Mr. Youmans' New Chemical Diagrams or Chart of chemical combinations by the union of the elements in atomic proportions. The design appears to be an excellent one.





Standard Classical Works.

Kendr
hibiti
KENN
Roch

Plato's
Grav
pages

Xenop
and
Midd

Xenop
of Sc
in the

Sophoc
of Sc
in the

Gesen
Corre
J. C
inary

Uhlem
man.
Syri
by th

PUBLISH
20
Includin

Wi

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus*, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any *Teacher* remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage* ...etail price.

